

LIBRARY OF CONGRESS



00003609923



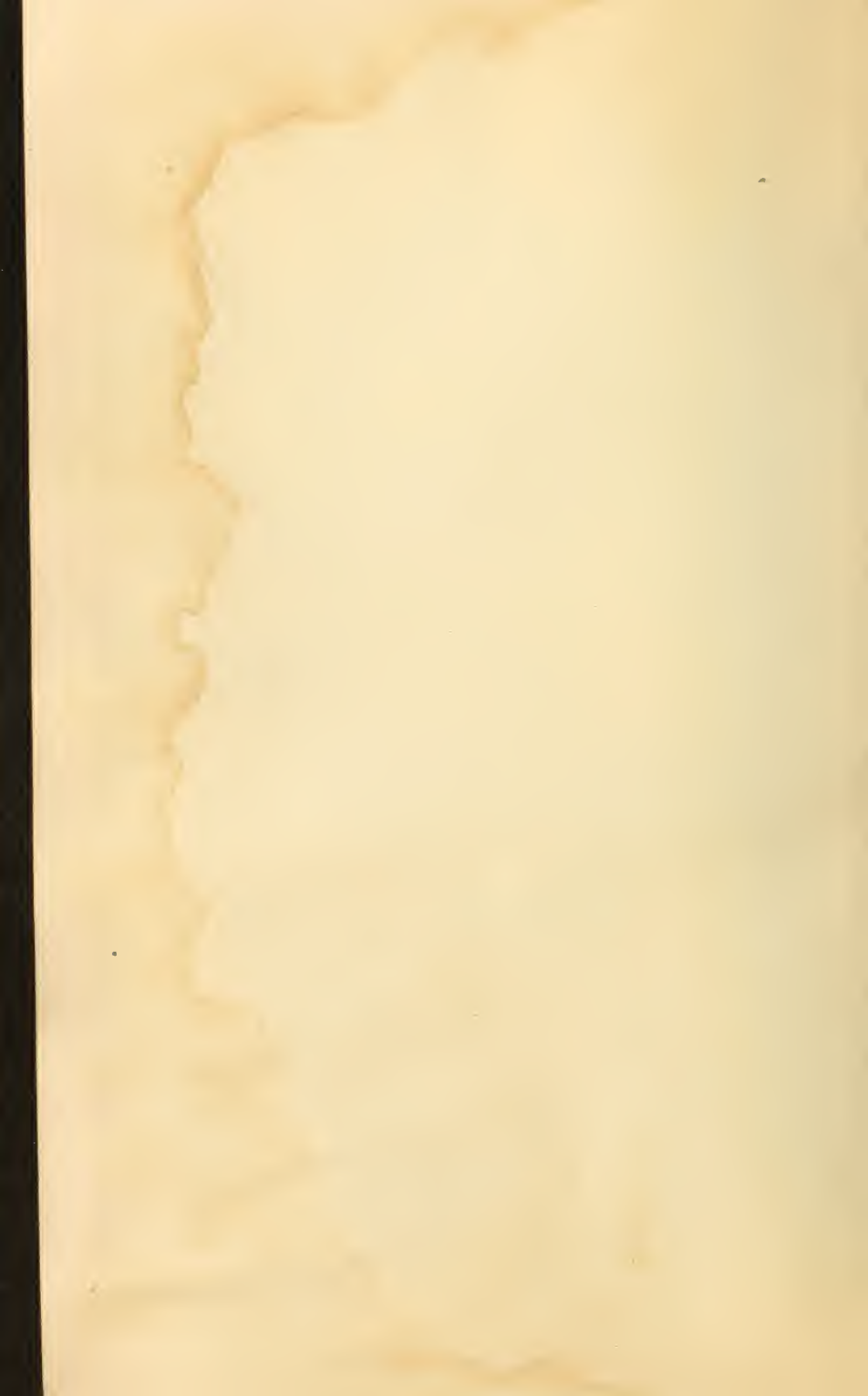
Class PA2087

Book B92

Copyright N<sup>o</sup> 1908

COPYRIGHT DEPOSIT.







# A LATIN GRAMMAR

BY  
**FREDERICK J. BUNSE, S. J.**  
TEACHER OF LATIN IN CANISIUS COLLEGE

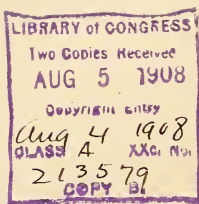
SECOND EDITION  
FOR PRIVATE CIRCULATION



**BUFFALO, N. Y.**

1908

PA 2087  
B92  
1908



29/  
11941  
B

COPYRIGHT, 1908,  
BY  
CHARLES JOSEPH WEBER,  
BUFFALO, N. Y.

—  
ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

E.W.F. m. 22-10.

## PREFACE TO THE SECOND EDITION

Since most of our grammars seemed to be more adapted to the study of Latin philology than of the Latin language, the need of a practical handbook for the study of the language suggested itself.

In view of this purpose the accustomed scientific treatment of the *declensions* according to stems, which, in the opinion of many, has proved time-wasting and by far more irksome than profitable, was abandoned. A practical definition of the stem (21), made it possible to group the words of the third declension, which in other grammars requires between 20 and 30 paradigms, around four paradigms (41).

The "*cāsus vocātivus*," which properly is no case (18), has been omitted from the paradigms; in its place the "*form of address*" has been introduced where it was thought necessary (19; 35).

The "*Rules of Gender*" which are often either neglected or made so "complete" as to contain long lists of exceptions which never or rarely occur in school authors, have been carefully adapted to the needs of high school students.

The *infinitive*, as the most important verbal form, (pointing out the conjugation and, except in the verbs in *iō-ere*, the present stem), has been placed first among the principal parts in the list of verbs; throughout this list the verbs are accompanied by short *examples* illustrative of their construction.

The uses of the *cases* and the *subjunctive*, on whose proper classification philologists disagree (484), were so grouped as to fulfil the modest demands of the schoolroom; namely, of teaching the facts of the language and giving, at the same time, some insight into its organization.

In the paradigms *no translation of the subjunctive*, has been given; for, as widely varying translations are attached to the different persons and tenses of the independent and the different constructions of the dependent subjunctive, any single translation or translations would be misleading and result in the most mechanical composition as well as rendering of the Latin authors, and moreover any attempt to give all is evidently impossible. (It seems preferable, therefore, to drill the meanings of the subjunctive separately, beginning with *cum* and *ut laudem*.)

The paragraphs on *pronunciation* (4; 5) are intended to give a general idea of that pronunciation of Latin which was in use at the time of the classical Latin authors.

Those vowels which are *long by nature* (8) have been marked throughout the book; short vowels have been left unmarked. An exception has been made in regard to e, a, u in such words as p̄ior, ēius, māior, cūius; these vowels, though short by nature, were marked long, because they were pronounced as diphthongs: peiior, eiius, maiior, cuiius; similarly o in hōc was marked long, because, though short by nature, it is part of a syllable which was commonly pronounced long by position: hocce from hodge; "*hidden quantity*" questioned by scholars, as the length of vowels before gn and gm in most cases, has not been marked. Finally, the distinction of quantity between the ī of the 2d ps. sg. and the 1st and 2d ps. pl. of the Perfect subjunctive and the i of the corresponding form of the Future Perfect, demanded by the evidence collected by Neue-Wagener, 3, 428-430, Hale and Buck, Lane and others, and introduced into our foremost grammars, has been admitted.

The author considers it a duty to acknowledge his obligation to the literature on the subject treated, especially to *Seelmann*, Aussprache des Latein, *Stolz*, Lautlehre, Stammbildungslehre (1st volume of the Historische Grammatik), *Neue*, Formenlehre der lateinischen Sprache; to the grammars and other works of *Stolz and Schmalz*, *Gildersleeve-Lodge*, *Hale and Buck*, *Lane*, *Ben nett*, *Allen and Greenough*, and *Harkness*; to the Lexicons of *Merguet*, *Nizolius* and others; to articles in the various journals, and to a number of school-grammars used in this country and elsewhere.

He acknowledges his indebtedness to the *Rev. C. Harzheim*, S. J., Professor of Latin in St. Stanislaus' Novitiate, Brooklyn, O., for his accurate criticism and selfless assistance in the preparation of the work, to the *Rev. Gerard Gietmann*, S. J., Professor of Poetry in the Collegium Canisianum Exatense, Exaten, Holland, and the *Rev. Francis S. Betten*, S. J., Professor of Latin in Canisius College, Buffalo, N. Y., for their cheering encouragement and valuable advice, and in particular to *Mr. Dominic E. Hammer*, S. J., of Canisius College, Buffalo, N. Y., for proof-reading and many important suggestions, for the writing of the index, various single paragraphs and many notes and examples to the list of verbs. His thanks are also due to many other friends who have given him the benefit of their scholarship and experience.

# PART I : PHONOLOGY

## 1. CHARACTERS

The Latin language contains the following characters ;

A B C D E F G H I K L M N O P Q R S T U V X Y Z.  
a b c d e f g h i k l m n o p q r s t u v x y z.

It does not contain : j, w.

## 2. Capitals are used only:

1. for the first letter of a sentence;
2. for the first letter of a proper name: Graecia;
3. for the first letter of adjectives and adverbs derived from proper names: linguā Graecā, the Greek language.

## 3. SOUNDS

Cōnsonantēs	Labi- ālēs	Guttu- rālēs	Den- tālēs	Lin- guālēs	Palā- tālīs
Mūtae tenuēs (hard)	p	c, k, q	t		
“ mediae (soft)	b	g	d		
“ aspirātae (fol- lowed by h)	ph	ch	th		
Sēmivōcālēs liquidāe				l, r	
“ nāsālēs	m	ng	n		
“ spīrantēs	f, v	(h)	s, z		i = j
Vōcālēs	a, e, i, o, u, y				
Cōnsonāns duplex	x = (cs, or gs.)				
Diphthongi: vocālēs duplicēs	ae, oe, au, eu.				



## 4.

## APPROXIMATE PRONUNCIATION

The following list contains the main points of that pronunciation of Latin which was in use at the time of the classical Latin authors.

ā	a	as in father, fatigue
ē	e	as in obey, bet : see note 1.
ī	i	as in fatigue, fit
ō	o	as in holy, obey : see note 1.
ū	u	as in rude, put
y		like German ü : see note 2.
ae	oe	} Both elements of these diphthongs were pronounced in the same breath-impulse : see notes 3 and 4.
au	ue	
b, d, f, l,	}	as in English
m, n, p, q,		
c and k		as in cat, kin
g		as in get
h		a sign of aspiration, no letter : see note 6.
r		trilled with the tip of the tongue
s		as in see
t		as in tit
z		like a lisped soft s.
consonant i		like y in yet : see notes 10 and 11.
consonant v		like w in win : see note 12.
bs	bt	like ps, pt
x (=cs, gs)		as in extra; not soft as in exact
nc, nq; ng		like nk and ng in rank, rang
n before s		was usually not pronounced as a consonant, but lengthened and nasalized the preceding vowel : cōsul, cēsor were pronounced cōsul, cēsor with nasalized ō and ē.
qu	ngu	as in quick, sanguine
su		like sw; (in suādeō, -suēscō, suāvis)

## 5. NOTES :

1. The Latin words and diphthongs are pure, without the vanishing sound of some English vowels.
2. The vowel *y* occurs in foreign words only : syllaba, *syllable*.
3. The *e*-element in *ae* and *oe* seems to have been more pronounced at the time of Cicero than the preceding *a* and *o* ; the diphthongal pronunciation of *ae* and *oe* was gradually becoming monophthongal, the *a*- and *o*-sounds disappearing.

4. The diphthong *eu* is found in foreign words and, perhaps, in some interjections : Eurōpa, *Europe*; heu, *alas*.

*Eu* in neuter, *neither of the two*, and in neutiquam, *by no means*, is no diphthong : né-u-ter, ne-û-ti-quam.

5. The sign of diaeresis (¨) is sometimes used to distinguish *ae* and *oe* as two separate vowels each from the diphthongs *ae* and *oe* :

*aër* : *ãër, air*; *aes*, *brass*; *poëta* : *poëta; poet*; *foedus*, *league*.

6. The Latin *h*, generally, was not an independent sound or letter, as our *h*; it was a sign of aspiration (nota aspiratiōnis), intended to denote that the vowel following it should be uttered with a stronger aspiration than other vowels, or that *c*, *p*, *t* in *ch*, *ph*, *th* should be aspirated (followed by or joined with a breath-element). By careful speakers, especially on the stage, this *h* was, indeed, expressed; sometimes, even as an independent sound; as a rule, however, it was neglected; hence the variation in spelling :

*harēna* or *arēna*, *sand*, *havē* or *avē*, *hail! farewell!*

In some words it was a mere sign of diaeresis :

*ahēneus* or *aëneus*, *of bronze*.

7. Consonants preceding any other consonant except *l*, *r*, *u* (=v), were so fully pronounced as though they were a short syllable of their own. Following a short vowel, they, indeed, did form, together with it, a long syllable (positiōne longa). Thus in *an-nus*, *year*, *a* is long, *nus*, short; while in *a-nus*, *old woman*, both *a* and *nus* are short.
8. *K* is rare : *Kalendae*, *Kaeso*, *Karthāgō* = *Carthāgō*.
9. *Z* occurs in foreign words only : *Zama*, *Zephyrus*.
10. *I* is both a vowel and a consonant; a consonant, *a*) when it stands at the beginning of a word before a vowel : *iūs*; *b*) between two vowels : *māior*, *iciūnus*.

In Greek words *i* always is a vowel : *Iōnēs* = *I-ō-nēs*.

11. Instead of *ii* only one *i* is written :
- a) in the compounds of *iaciō* :  
e. g. write *abiciō*, but pronounce *abyikiō*.
  - b) in the declension of words in *āius*, *ēius*, *ōius* :  
e. g. write *Grāī*, *Grāīs*, *Vēī*, *Bōī*, but pronounce *Grā - yī.....*
12. Also *v* denoted but both a vowel and a consonant; now, when a vowel, it is usually written *u*.
13. **Final vowels** and **m** followed by a vowel or *h* were, in ordinary speech as well as in poetry, **slurred**, not entirely dropped. In versification their quantity was neglected. Besides **est**, *is*, and **es**, *you are*, after a final vowel or *m* lost their vowel : Thus *magnum esse* was pronounced in three syllables, *um - e* forming one sound : *magnum<sup>u</sup>esse*; *magna est* and *magnum est* were pronounced *magnast* and *magnust* respectively.

## 6.

## SYLLABLES

A word has as many syllables as it contains vowels and diphthongs:

*ae-ris*, 2 syllables; *ā-ē-ris*, 3 syllables

7. Separation of syllables in both speaking and writing:

a. Of consonants occurring between two vowels the following go with the second:

1. Single consonants : *su-pe-rī*, *pē-ius*, *dī-vi-dō*

2. *gu*, *qu* : *san-guis*, *se-quor*

3. Combinations of *p*, *c*, *t*, (*b*, *g*, *d*) with *l*, *r*:

*cas-tra*, *mōns-trum*, *qua-dru-plus*, *a-la-cris*; but: *Al-pēs*,  
*ar-gu-ō*

4. The second of doubled consonants : *an-nus*, *sic-cus*

5. In other combinations the separation is made before the last consonant : *om-nēs*, *ap-tus*, *fac-tus*, *is-te*, *nōs-cō*,  
*sānc-tus*, *rēx-ī* or *rē-xī*

b. Compound words in writing usually divide into their etymological parts:

*ab-rogo*; *post-eā*; *prōd-est*; *ex-trahō*,  
in ordinary speech, however, we separate:  
*ab-rogo*; *pos-teā*; *prō-dest*; *ex-trahō*

8. Quantity of syllables:

a. The quantity of syllables is the relative time taken in sounding them, a long syllable requiring about twice the time of a short one.

*b.* A long syllable may be long by nature or by position; it is long by nature, if it contains a diphthong or a long vowel: foe-dus, fī-dus.

*NOTE:* Long vowels are usually marked: ā, ē, ī, ō, ū;  
short vowels are not marked: a, e, i, o, u.

A syllable is long by position, if its vowel, even when it is short, is followed by two consonants, except p, c, t, (b, g, d) with l, r: qu being considered as a simple consonant: thus in the words an-nus, dux: x=cs, cón-co-quō, the syllables an, dux, con are long by position.

In poetry, however, a mute followed by a liquid may make a syllable long: vó-lu-cris or vo-lúc-ris.

*NOTE:* Vowels before n f, n s, n x, n c t are long (by nature),  
vowels before n t, n d, are short:  
infāns, sānxī, sānctus; but infāntis, laudandus.

## 9.

## ACCENT

- a.* In words of two syllables the accent is on the first:  
laúdāns, éō, séquor.
- b.* In words of more than two syllables, the accent is on the paenultima (next to the last), if that is long:  
infāntis, collaúdās;  
on the antepaenultima (second from the last), if the paenultima is short:  
súperī, quádruplus, medíocris.

*NOTE:* Words with appended que, ve, ne, as well as Greek words follow the same rules:

útraque, tríave, tíbine;  
Iónes, Eúmenēs, philosóphia, Acadēmía.

## EXCEPTIONS.

1. Compounds of facio which keep the a of facio, retain also the accent on facio: benefácis, calefácit, but: réfcis.
2. Words which have lost a final syllable after a long penult, kept the accent in its former place:  
ēdúc, illíc from ēdúce, illíce; Arpínás from Arpínātis.
3. Genitives and forms of address and substantives in ius and ium: Vergíli, ingéní.

10.

## PART II : INFLECTION

Nouns: {substantives, adjectives, } are inflected by declension.  
 {numerals, pronouns }

Verbs are inflected by conjugation.

Particles: {adverbs, prepositions, } are not inflected.  
 {conjunctions, interjections }

11.

## DECLENSION OF NOUNS

Declension is that inflection which indicates gender, number and case.

12.

## GENDERS

The genders of nouns are determined by general and particular rules.

The particular rules (stated in the single declensions) are applied only, when the general rules cannot decide the gender.

13.

## GENERAL RULES OF GENDER

1. **Men and rivers** are masculine (**m.**): masculīna.
2. **Women and trees** are feminine (**f.**): fēminīna.
3. **Indeclinables** are neuter (**n.**): néutra.
4. Nouns denoting **either sex** are common (**c.**): commūnia.

Genus masculīnum;  
 genus fēminīnum;

genus néutrum : neither m. nor f.  
 genus commūne : either m. or f.



## EXAMPLES :

- |   |                                |
|---|--------------------------------|
| 1. nauta, ae, m., <i>sailor</i>                                 | Persa, ae, m., <i>Persian</i>  |
| Tiberis, is, m., <i>the Tiber</i>                               | Albis, is, m., <i>the Elbe</i> |
| 2. pōpus, ī, f., <i>poplar</i>                                  | īlex, icis, f., <i>holmoak</i> |
| quercus, ūs, f, <i>oak</i>                                      | soror, ōris, f., <i>sister</i> |
| 3. fās, n., <i>divine right</i>                                 | valē, n., <i>farewell</i>      |
| Also phrases, clauses, quotations etc., are neuter.             |                                |
| 4. parēs, entis, c. (i. e., m. and f.) <i>father or mother.</i> |                                |
| īnfāns, antis, c., <i>child (boy or girl)</i>                   |                                |
| comes, itis, c., <i>companion (male or female)</i>              |                                |

**15.** Some names of men and animals have a masculine and a feminine ending (substantīva mōbilia):

filius, ī, m., <i>son</i>	fīlia, ae, f., <i>daughter</i>
nepōs, ōtis, m., <i>grandson</i>	neptis, is, f., <i>granddaughter</i>
puer, ī, m., <i>boy</i>	puella, ae, f., <i>girl</i>
victor, ōris, m., <i>conqueror</i>	victrix, icis, f., <i>conqueror</i>
rēx, rēgis, m., <i>king</i>	rēgīna, ue, f., <i>queen</i>
gallus, ī, m., <i>rooster</i>	gallīna, ae, f., <i>hen</i>

NOTE : No name of an animal is neuter.

**16.** EXCEPTIONS :

to 13, 1. a: COLLECTIVE NOUNS follow the particular rules of gender.(12.):

- |                                  |                                       |
|----------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| cōpiae, ārum, f., <i>troops</i>  | auxilia, ōrum, n., <i>auxiliaries</i> |
| operae, ārum, f., <i>workmen</i> | manus, ūs, f., <i>troop</i>           |
- b. mancipium, ī, n., *slave, (chattel).*
- c. Elaver, eris, n., *Allier (river in Gaul);* Allia, ae, f., *Allia (river near Rome)*

NOTE : Names of rivers in **a** are of variable and uncertain gender, as Sēquana, ae, *Scine*

to 13, 2 : acer, aceris, n., *maple-tree*

**17.** NUMBERS

There are two numbers in the Latin declension:

- Numerus singulāris, the Singular,  
Numerus plūrālis, the Plural.

## 18.

## CASES

Case is that form or use of a noun by which its relation to other words in a sentence is denoted.

There are five cases :

Nōminātivus, answering the question : Who? or what?  
 Genetivus, answering the question : Whose? or of what?  
 Dativus, answering the question : To or for whom, or what?  
 Accūsātivus, answering the question : Whom? or what?  
 Ablātivus, answering the question : By what means?

NOTE: The nominative is called cāsus rēctus, independent case;  
 the other cases are called cāsus obliqui, dependent cases.

## 19.

## FORM OF ADDRESS

When used to name a person or thing addressed, the noun is in no case, as the address has no relation to any part of a sentence (18); a special form of address, (usually called the Vocative,) is used only for the singular of words in us of the second declension; the nominative serves that purpose for all other words.

## 20.

## TABLE OF DECLENSIONS

Declension	I.	II.	III.	IV.	V.
Nom. sing :	mēnsa	servus	lēx	fructus	diēs
Gen. sing :	mēnsae	servī	lēgis	fructūs	diēi
<b>Stem:</b>	mēns	serv	lēg	fruct	di
<b>Ending</b> of Gen. sing :	<b>ae</b>	<b>i</b>	<b>is</b>	<b>ūs</b>	<b>eī</b> or <b>ēi</b>

NOTE: The ending of the Gen. sg. shows to which declension a word belongs.

21. The stem of a noun (substantive or adjective) is found by cutting off the ending of the Genitive singular (20).

## 22.

## GENERAL RULES OF DECLENSION

a. The nominative and accusative of all neuters are alike, both in the singular and in the plural.

b. The dative and ablative of all nouns are alike in the plural.

NOTE: There is **no article** in Latin.

23.

## FIRST DECLENSION

Gen. sg. -ae.

	Singular		Plural	
Nom.	mēns- <b>a</b>	<i>the table</i>	mēns- <b>ae</b>	<i>the tables</i>
Gen.	mēns- <b>ae</b>	<i>of the table</i>	mēns- <b>ārum</b>	<i>of the tables</i>
Dat.	mēns- <b>ae</b>	<i>to or for the table</i>	mēns- <b>is</b>	<i>to or for the tables</i>
Acc.	mēns- <b>am</b>	<i>the table</i>	mēns- <b>ās</b>	<i>the tables</i>
Abl.	mēns- <b>ā</b>	<b>by means</b> <i>of the table</i>	mēns- <b>is</b>	<b>by means</b> <i>of the tables</i>

24. The **nominative** is used to name

- a. the subject : mēnsa est rotunda  
 b. the predicate subst. or adj. : Italia est terra, est pulchra  
 c. the person or thing addressed : nauta! *O sailor!*

25. The **accusative** is used for the object of

- a. a transitive verb : mēnsam habet, *he has a table*  
 b. a preposition governing the Accusative:  
     ante mēnsam, *before the table*  
     in aquam, *into the water*

26. The **ablative** is used

- a. to express "by means of = by, through, with a thing"  
     mēnsā, *by means of a table*  
 b. for the object of a preposition governing the ablative:  
     sub mēnsā, *under the table*  
     in aquā, *in the water*

27. "By" (i. e. by means of the action of a living being), is expressed by ā, (before vowels or h : ab,) with the ablative:

ā nautā, *by the sailor*; ab agricolā, *by the husbandman*

"With" (i. e. accompanied by a person) is expressed by cum with the ablative:

cum nautā, *with a sailor*Similarly: cum ūvā, *with a grape (having, holding it.)*

28.

## GENDER

Words in a are feminine

(See exceptions n. 13 and 16)

Perfuga, ae, m, *deserter*regīna, ae, f., *queen*Mosa, ae, m, *Maas (Meuse)*terra, ae, f., *earth, land*

## 29.

## SECOND DECLENSION

<i>Nomin. sing. -us, -er, -ir; -um.</i>			
<i>Gen. sing. -ī.</i>			
<i>Singular</i>		<i>Plural</i>	
<i>Nom.</i>	serv- <b>us</b> <i>the slave</i>	serv- <b>ī</b> <i>the slaves</i>	
<i>Gen.</i>	serv- <b>ī</b> <i>of the slave</i>	serv- <b>ōrum</b> <i>of the slaves</i>	
<i>Dat.</i>	serv- <b>ō</b> <i>to or for the</i> <i>slave</i>	serv- <b>īs</b> <i>to or for the</i> <i>slaves</i>	
<i>Acc.</i>	serv- <b>um</b> <i>the slave</i>	serv- <b>ōs</b> <i>the slaves</i>	
<i>Abl.</i>	ā serv- <b>ō</b> <i>by the slave</i>	ā serv- <b>īs</b> <i>by the slaves</i>	
<i>Nom.</i>	bell- <b>um</b> <i>the war</i>	bell- <b>a</b> <i>the wars</i>	
<i>Gen.</i>	bell- <b>ī</b> <i>of the war</i>	bell- <b>ōrum</b> <i>of the wars</i>	
<i>Dat.</i>	bell- <b>ō</b> <i>to or for the war</i>	bell- <b>īs</b> <i>to or for the</i> <i>wars</i>	
<i>Acc.</i>	bell- <b>um</b> <i>the war</i>	bell- <b>a</b> <i>the wars</i>	
<i>Abl.</i>	bell- <b>ō</b> <i>by means of the</i> <i>war</i>	bell- <b>īs</b> <i>by the wars</i>	
<i>Nom.</i>	liber <i>the book</i>	libr- <b>ī</b> <i>the books</i>	
<i>Gen.</i>	libr- <b>ī</b> <i>of the book</i>	libr- <b>ōrum</b> <i>of the books</i>	
<i>Dat.</i>	libr- <b>ō</b> <i>to or for the</i> <i>book</i>	libr- <b>īs</b> <i>to or for the</i> <i>books</i>	
<i>Acc.</i>	libr- <b>um</b> <i>the book</i>	libr- <b>ōs</b> <i>the books</i>	
<i>Abl.</i>	libr- <b>ō</b> <i>by means of the</i> <i>book</i>	libr- <b>īs</b> <i>by the books</i>	
<i>Nom.</i>	puer <i>the boy</i>	puer- <b>ī</b> <i>the boys</i>	
<i>Gen.</i>	puer- <b>ī</b> <i>of the boy</i>	puer- <b>ōrum</b> <i>of the boys</i>	
<i>Dat.</i>	puer- <b>ō</b> <i>to or for the boy</i>	puer- <b>īs</b> <i>to or for the</i> <i>boys</i>	
<i>Acc.</i>	puer- <b>um</b> <i>the boy</i>	puer- <b>ōs</b> <i>the boys</i>	
<i>Abl.</i>	ā puer- <b>ō</b> <i>by the boy</i>	ā puer- <b>īs</b> <i>by the boys</i>	

30. There is only one noun in -ir, **vir**, virī, m., *man*:

**Sing.:** vir, virī, virō, virum, ā virō.

**Plur.:** virī, virōrum, virīs, virōs, ā virīs

### 31. Like **puer** are declined :

1. Compound substantives in -fer and -ger; as,  
signifer, -ferī m., *standard-bearer*;  
armiger, -gerī, m., *armor-bearer*;
2. gener, erī, m., *son-in-law*; vesper, erī, m., *evening*  
socer, erī, m., *father-in-law*; Līber, erī, m., *god of wine*,  
līberī, erōrum, m., *children*

#### Like **liber**:

all other substantives of the 2d decl. ending in -er; as,  
ager, agrī, m., *field*; magister, trī, m., *teacher, master*.

### 32. ADJECTIVES OF THE I. AND II. DECLENSIONS

1. Adjectives in **-us, m., -a, f., -um, n.** } are declined like  
as bonus, bona, bonum, *good* } **servus**, mēnsa, bellum
2. Adjectives in **-er, m., -a, f., -um, n.** } like  
as sacer, sacra, sacrum, *sacred* } **liber**, mēnsa, bellum;
3. Adj. in **-er, m., -era, f., -erum, n.** } like  
as asper, aspera, asperum, *rough* } **puer**, mēnsa, bellum;

Like asper: a. miser, misera, miserum, *wretched*

tener, tenera, tenerum, *tender, soft*

līber, lībera, līberum, *free, independent*

b. Compound adjectives in **-fer** and **-ger**; as,

frūgifer, frūgifera, frūgiferum, *fruitful*

corniger, cornigera, cornigerum, *horned*

4. Dexter, dextra, or dextera, dextrum or dexterum, *on the right side*
5. Satur, satura, saturum, *satiated*, is declined like **vir**, mēnsa, bellum

### 33. Remember that **e** is kept by

puer, vesper, socer, gener,

asper, līber, miser, tener,

compound words in -fer and -ger.



## 34.

## AGREEMENT

**Rule:** The adjectives (both predicative and attributive) must agree with their substantives in **gender, number** and **case**:

mēnsa mea, *my table*    hortus tuus,    *your garden*  
 poēta clārus, *a famous poet*    populus liber,    *a free people*  
 puer aeger, *a sick boy*    aedificium sacrum, *a sacred bldg.*

Singular			Plural	
<i>Nom.</i>	mēns-a	me-a	mēns-ae	me-āe
<i>Gen.</i>	mēns-ae	me-ae	mēns-ārum	me-ārum
<i>Dat.</i>	mēns-ae	me-ae	mēns-īs	me-īs
<i>Acc.</i>	mēns-am	me-am	mēns-ās	me-ās
<i>Abl.</i>	mēns-ā	me-ā	mēns-īs	me-īs
<i>Nom.</i>	poēt-a	clār-us	poēt-ae	clār-ī
<i>Gen.</i>	poēt-ae	clār-ī	poēt-ārum	clār-ōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	poēt-ae	clār-ō	poēt-īs	clār-īs
<i>Acc.</i>	poēt-am	clār-um	poēt-ās	clār-ōs
<i>Abl.</i>	ā poēt-ā	clār-ō	ā poēt-īs	clār-īs

**35.** The **form of address** (19) of all words of the 2d declension is like the nominative. However, words in **us** have **e**:

servus-**serve**, Darēus-**Darēe**, bonus-**bone**

Exceptions: *a.* Proper nouns in *ius*, *ēius*, *āius* drop *us*, *i* becoming *ī*: Vergilius-Vergilī, Pompēius-Pompēī, Gāius-Gāī.

*b.* fīlius has filī;  
 meus has mī.

Mi filī, *O my son!* Poēta impie, *O ungodly poet!*  
 Mea filia, *O my daughter!* Serve piger, *O lazy slave!*

**NOTE:** The usual position of the form of address is after the first word or words.

**36.** The **gen. sg.** of **proper** (and common) nouns in **-ius**, and **-ium** is often **ī**, instead of **īī** :

Vergilī = Vergiliī; ingenium, ingenī = ingeniī, *talents.*(8 c. )

**37. Declension of deus, deī, m., god:**

*Sing.:* deus, deī, deō, deus, ā deō,

*Plur.:* dī (diī), deōrum, dīs (diīs) deōs, ā dīs (diīs)

NOTE: The form of address in Christian writers is *Deus*; in other writers only the plural *dī* occurs.

Dī and diīs are pronounced dī, dīs.

**38.**

GENDER (12, 13.)

Words in **--um** are *néutra*,

**--us --er** *masculīna*.

EXCEPTIONS:

**Feminine** are **islands, lands** and **towns** in **us**, and **humus**;

**Neuter: vīrus, vulgus.**

Corinthus clāra, *famous Corinth*

vīrus mortiferum, *deadly poison*

pōpulī altae, *high poplars* (13).

**39.** mālus, ī, m., *mast; upright beam*

populus, ī, m., *people*

Aegyptius, ī, m., *Egyptian*

Peloponnēsus, ī, f., *Peloponnesus*

Corinthus, ī, f., *Corinth*

mālum, ī, n., *apple*

vīrus, ī, n., *poison*

mālus, ī, f., *apple-tree*

pōpulus, ī, f., *poplar*

Aegyptus, ī, f., *Egypt*

Cyprus, ī, f., *Cyprus*

humus, ī, f., *ground, soil*

malum, ī, n., *evil, misfortune*

vulgus, ī, n., *crowd, rabble*

Note: Virus and vulgus form no plural.

**40.** Pontus, Hellēspontus and Isthmus remain masculine.

The gender of islands, lands, and towns **not** ending in **us** is determined by their ending (in all declensions):

Saguntum, ī, **n.**, *Sagunt*; Leuctra, ōrum, **n.**, *Leuctra*.

Delphī, ōrum., **m.**, *Delphi*.

## THIRD DECLENSION (20.)

41. A word is **parisyllabic**, if the number of its syllables in the nominative and the genitive singular is **equal** : p̄ar;  
but **imparisyllabic**, if the number is **unequal** : i m p̄ar :

## IMPARISYLLABA :

- a) rēx, rēgis, *king*: the stem rēg ends in one consonant : g. (21).  
b) ars, artis, *art*: the stem art ends in two consonants : rt.

## PARISYLLABA :

- c) nūbēs, nūbis, *cloud*: the stem nūb ends in one consonant : b.  
d) linter, lintris, *skiff*: the stem lintr ends in three consonants : ntr.

## 42.

## Masculīna et Fēminīna :

	Rule: <i>Masculines and females form the genitive plural in</i> <b>um</b>		<i>But in ium,</i> 1) if parisyllabic (c, d,) 2) if the stem ends in two consonants (b, d,)	
	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
Nom.	rēx, <i>king</i>	rēg-ēs	ars, <i>art</i>	art-ēs
Gen.	rēg- <b>is</b>	rēg- <b>um</b>	art- <b>is</b>	art- <b>ium</b>
Dat.	rēg- <b>ī</b>	rēg- <b>ibus</b>	art- <b>ī</b>	art- <b>ibus</b>
Acc.	rēg- <b>em</b>	rēg- <b>ēs</b>	art- <b>em</b>	art- <b>ēs</b> (art-īs)
Abl.	ā rēg- <b>e</b>	ā rēg- <b>ibus</b>	art- <b>e</b>	art- <b>ibus</b>

## 43.

## Nēutra

	Rule: <i>All neuters have</i> <b>e, a, um</b>		<i>But neuters ending in</i> <b>e, al, ar</b> (with gen. āris) and p̄ar (with gen. paris): <b>ī, ia, ium</b>	
	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
Nom.	nōmen <i>name</i>	nōmin- <b>a</b>	mar- <b>e</b> , sea	mar- <b>ia</b>
Gen.	nōmin- <b>is</b>	nōmin- <b>um</b>	mar- <b>is</b>	mar- <b>ium</b>
Dat.	nōmin- <b>ī</b>	nōmin- <b>ibus</b>	mar- <b>ī</b>	mar- <b>ibus</b>
Acc.	nōmin- <b>a</b>	nōmin- <b>a</b>	mar- <b>e</b>	mar- <b>ia</b>
Abl.	nōmin- <b>e</b>	nōmin- <b>ibus</b>	mar- <b>ī</b>	mar- <b>ibus</b>

## IRREGULAR CASE ENDINGS.

44.

1. Acc. sg. **--im**; Abl. sg. **ī**:  
 Sitis, puppis, turris,  
 Febris and secūris,  
 Cum parisyllabīs  
 Of streams and towns in is.

2. Gen. pl. **-um**:

Senex, pater, also māter;  
 Canis, iuvenis and frāter.

3. Gen. pl. **-ium**:

Faucēs, līs and optimātēs;  
 Then Quīrītēs and penātes,  
 With Samnītēs, Arpīnātēs.

4. Abl. sg. **-ī** and **-e**:

Civis, ignis, also nāvis,  
 Imber and supellex, clāvis.

5. Gen. pl. **-um** (aud **-ium**):

Mēnsis, civitās, parentēs;  
 Sēdēs, fraus and also vātēs.

6. Abl. sg. of rēte is rēte.

7. Os, ossis, n., bone, has ossium,

8. Abl. sg. **-e**.

Neuter names of towns in e,  
 As Bibracte and Praeneste.

45. 1. sitis, is, im, ī; f., *thirst*

puppis, is, im, ī; f., *stern*  
 turris, is, im, ī; f., *tower*  
 febris, is, im, ī; f., *fever*  
 secūris, is, im, ī; f., *axe*  
 Tiberis, is, im, ī; m., *Tiber*  
 Neāpolis, is, im, ī; f., *Naples*  
 Elis, idis, **em**, e, f., *Elis*.

2. senex, **senis**, m., *old man*  
 pater, patris, m., *father*  
 māter, mātris, f., *mother*  
 canis, is; c., *dog*  
 iuvenis, is; m., *(young)*  
man

frāter, frātris, m., *brother*

3. faucēs, (pl.) ium, f., *throat*  
 līs, litīs, ium, f., *strife*  
 optimātēs, (pl.) ium, m., *aristocrats*  
 Quīrītēs, (pl.) ium, m., *Quirites*  
 penātēs, (pl.) ium, m., *household*  
gods

Samnītēs, (pl.) ium, m., *Samnites*  
 Arpīnātēs, (pl.) ium, m., *Arpinates*

4. civis, is; c., *citizen*  
 ignis, is; m., *fire*  
 nāvis, is; f., *ship*  
 imber, **bris**; m., *heavy rain*  
 supellex, **supellec-**  
**tilis**, f., (*plu. not*  
*used*). *furniture*  
 clāvis, is; f., *key*

5. mēnsis, is; m., *month*  
 civitās, ātis, f., *state;*  
*citizenship*  
 parentēs, um; m., *parents*  
 sēdēs, is; f., *seat*  
 fraus, **fraudis**, f., *deceit*  
 vātēs, is; m., *seer; bard*

6. rēte, is; n., *net*

## 46.

## RULES OF GENDER

I. **Masculine are -ō, -or, -er, sōl, sāl.***Exceptions*

**Feminine** are carō, -dō,  
arbor, linter, -iō, -gō.

**Masculine** stay pugiō,  
ōrdō and septentriō.

**Neuter:** fruits and plants in -er,  
aequor, marmor, cor and vēr,  
iter, verbera, cadāver.

II. **Feminine are -s and -x.***Exceptions*

**Masculine** is pēs,  
as and pariēs;  
dēns and fōns and mōns,  
lepus, mūs and pōns;  
collis, orbis, ēnsis,  
pulvis, lapis, mēnsis;  
words in -nis, -guis, -cis,  
and in -ex, (icis);  
grex and words in -ōs.—

**Feminine:** cōs, dōs;

**Neuter:** aes, vās, ōs,  
-us (with-ris) and os.

III. **Neuter are**

-e, -al, -ar;  
-ma, -men, caput, fel,  
-ur and lāc and mel.  
**Masculine** stays vultur.





#### 49. GENDER OF ADJECTIVES AND PARTICIPLES USED AS SUBSTANTIVES

continēns, entis, f., ( = continēns terra ), *continent, main-*  
 occidēns, entis, m., ( usu. occidēns sōl ), *West [land*  
 oriēns, entis, m., ( usu. oriēns sol ), *East*  
 torrēns, entis, m., ( = fluvius torrēns ), *torrent*  
 annālis,, is, m., ( = liber annālis ), *usu. pl.: annals\**  
 Aprīlis, is, m., (usu. mēnsis Aprīlis ), *April*  
 September, bris, m., (usu. mēnsis September). *September*  
 (Declension: 60, 63.)

#### 50. VOCABULARY TO RULES OF GENDER

(See also 45, 47, 48, 49.)

##### RULE FOR MASCULINES

aquilō, ōnis, m., <i>northwind</i>	dolor, ōris, m., <i>pain</i>
carbō, ōnis, m., <i>coal</i>	agger, eris, m., <i>mound, dam</i>
leō, ōnis, m., <i>lion</i>	mūnitiō, ōnis, f., <i>intrenchment</i>
mucrō, ōnis, m., <i>point of a sword</i>	ratiō, ōnis, f., <i>reason, plan</i>
pāvō, ōnis, m., <i>peacock</i>	cōnsuētūdō, inis, f., <i>custom</i>
pulmō, ōnis, m., <i>lung</i>	testūdō, inis, f., <i>tortoise, shelter</i>
sermō, ōnis, m., <i>conversation</i>	soror, ōris, f., <i>sister</i>
Sulmō, ōnis, m., <i>Sulmo (40.)</i>	mulier, íeris, f., <i>woman</i>
turbō, inis, m., <i>whirlwind</i>	imāgō, inis, f., <i>picture</i>
Vesontiō, ōnis, m., (exc. to 40.)	orīgō, inis, f., <i>origin</i>
amor, ōris, m., <i>love</i>	acer, áceris, n., <i>maple-tree (46)</i>
color, ōris, m., <i>color</i>	papāver, eris, n., <i>poppy</i>
	piper, eris, n., <i>pepper</i>
ōrdō plēbēius	<i>class of the common people</i>
sermō patrius	<i>mothertongue</i>
carō ferīna	<i>game</i>
arbor prōcēra	<i>tall tree</i>
cadāver cruentum	<i>bloody corpse</i>
cor hūmānum	<i>human heart</i>

## 51.

## RULE FOR FEMININES

anas,	atis, f., <i>duck</i>	salūs,	ūtis, f., <i>welfare</i>
aetās,	ātis, f., <i>age</i>	senectūs,	ūtis, f., <i>old age</i>
aestās,	ātis, f., <i>summer</i>	servitūs,	ūtis, f., <i>slavery</i>
crūdēlitās,	ātis, f., <i>crudelty</i>	virtūs,	ūtis, f., <i>manly</i>
gravitās,	ātis, f., <i>heaviness</i>		<i>excellence,</i>
levitās,	ātis, f., <i>fickleness,</i>		<i>bravery, etc.</i>
	<i>frivolity</i>	palūs,	ūdis, f., <i>swamp</i>
abiēs,	etis, f., <i>fir (13)</i>	pecus,	udis, f., <i>single head</i>
seges,	etis, f., <i>crop</i>		<i>of cattle; sheep</i>
compedēs,	um, f., <i>shackles</i>	gēns, gentis,	f., <i>race,</i>
mercēs,	ēdis, f., <i>reward, pay</i>		<i>nation</i>
quiēs,	ētis, f., <i>rest</i>	mēns, mentis,	f., <i>mind</i>
nūbēs,	is, f., <i>cloud</i>	frōns, frontis,	f., <i>forehead</i>
vulpēs,	is, f., <i>fox</i>	frōns, frondis,	f., <i>foliage</i>
fēlēs or fēlis,	is, f., <i>cat</i>	pars, partis,	f., <i>part</i>
		urbs, urbis,	f., <i>city</i>
auris,	is, f., <i>ear</i>	pāx, pācis,	f., <i>peace</i>
avis,	is, f., <i>bird</i>	lēx, lēgis,	f., <i>law</i>
classis,	is, f., <i>fleet, class</i>	nex, necis,	f., <i>murder</i>
vītis,	is, f., <i>vine</i>	nix, nivis,	f., <i>snow</i>
laus, laudis,	f., <i>praise</i>	nox, noctis,	f., <i>night</i>
iuventūs,	ūtis, f., <i>youth(age)</i>	lūx, lūcis,	f., <i>(day)light</i>
	<i>young men</i>		
	dux callidus, a		<i>experienced leader (13)</i>
	nāvis longa		<i>man-of-war</i>
	virtūs summa		<i>perfect manhood, manliness</i>
	vōx magna		<i>loud voice</i>

## 52.

vas, vadis,	m., <i>bail</i>	piscis,	is, m., <i>fish</i>
cinis, cineris,	m., <i>ashes</i>	hostis,	is, m., <i>enemy (in</i>
	<i>(of a corpse)</i>		<i>war)</i>
crīnis,	is, m., <i>hair</i>	codex,	icis, m., <i>book, ledger</i>
fīnis,	is, m., <i>boundary</i>	cortex,	icis, m., <i>bark</i>
pānis,	is, m., <i>bread</i>	vertex,	icis, m., <i>top; whirl</i>
anguis,	is, m., <i>serpent</i>	flōs, flōris,	m., <i>flower</i>
unguis,	is, m., <i>nail</i>	mōs, mōris,	m., <i>manner</i>
	<i>of a finger</i>	rōs, rōris,	m., <i>dew</i>
	pānis cibārius		<i>coarse bread</i>
	collis arduus		<i>steep hill</i>

## 53.

fās, indecl., n., <i>divine right</i> (13)	tūs, tūris, n., <i>frankincense</i>
nefās, indecl., n., <i>wrong, sin</i>	genus, eris, n., <i>descent; race</i>
crūs, crūris, n., <i>leg</i>	latus, eris, n., <i>side, flank</i>
iūs, iūris, n., <i>right; justice</i>	vulnus, eris, n., <i>wound</i>
rūs, rūris, n., <i>country (opp. to city; pl. has n. and acc. only.)</i>	corpus, oris, n., <i>body</i>
	pecus, oris, n., <i>herd of small cattle</i>
	tempus, oris, n., <i>time</i>

aes aliēnum	<i>debt</i>
ōra dūra	<i>brazen faces</i>
rūs suburbānum	<i>country-seat</i>
latus apertum	<i>exposed flank</i>
mātūtīna tempora	<i>morning-hours</i>

## 54.

## RULE FOR NEUTERS

conclāve, is, n., <i>room; cage</i>	flūmen, inis, n., <i>river</i>
hastile, is, n., <i>shaft of a spear</i>	fulmen, inis, n., <i>striking lightning</i>
animal, ālis, n., <i>living being; beast</i>	lūmen, inis, n., <i>light, luminous object</i>
tribūnal, ālis, n., <i>tribunal</i>	fulgur, uris, n., <i>flashing lightning</i>
vectīgal, ālis, n., <i>tax; rents</i>	murmur, uris, n., <i>humming; roaring</i>
calcar, āris, n., <i>spur</i>	rōbur, oris, n., <i>oakwood, strength</i>
fār, farris, n., <i>spelt (farra)</i>	Tibur, uris, n., <i>City in Latium</i>
pār, paris, n., <i>pair (paria)</i>	
poēma, atis, n., <i>poem</i>	
agmen, inis, n., <i>army (on the march)</i>	
certāmen, inis, n., <i>contest</i>	

mare internum	<i>Mediterranean Sea</i>
animālia domestica	<i>domestic animals</i>
flūmina lāta	<i>broad rivers</i>
fulmen sinistrum	<i>favorable lightning</i>
capita cāna	<i>gray heads</i>

ācer, ācris, ācere,	<i>keen</i>	equester, equestris, equestre,	
ālacer, ālacrī, ālacre,	<i>lively</i>	<i>equestrian, cavalry-</i>	
céleber, célebris, célebre,		palūster, palūstris, palūstre,	
<i>much frequented; renowned</i>		<i>swampy</i>	
céler, céleris, célere,	<i>swift</i>	pedester, pedestris, pedestre,	
		<i>foot-</i>	
salūber } salūbris }	-bris, -bre, <i>wholesome</i>	September, Septembris,	
		Septembre, <i>of September</i>	
(campester) } campestris, }	-tris, -tre, <i>level</i>	vólucer } vólucris }	vólucris, vólucres { <i>fly-</i> <i>ing</i>
	céleber, celer, pedester; ālacer, ācer, equester.		



## 57.

## ADJECTIVES OF 2 ENDINGS

brevis, breve, <i>short</i>	lūgubris, bre, <i>mourning</i>
dulcis, dulce, <i>sweet</i>	mediocris, cre, <i>middling</i>
fortis, forte, <i>strong, manly</i>	suāvis, suāve, <i>pleasant, sweet</i>
inlūstris, inlūstre, <sup>1)</sup> <i>full of light</i>	silvestris, tre, <i>woody</i>
<sup>2)</sup> <i>famous</i>	terrestris, tre, <i>land -</i>

## 58.

## ADJECTIVES OF 1 ENDING

anceps, ancipitis, <i>doubtful;</i> <i>two-sided</i>	fēlīx, īcis, <i>lucky, fortunate</i>
audāx, audācis, <i>bold</i>	iners, ertis, <i>unskillful; inactive</i>
clēmēns, entis, <i>forbearing</i>	locuplēs, ētis, <i>opulent</i>
ōrdō equester,	pār, paris, <i>equal</i>
ōrātor mediocris,	<i>order of knights</i>
lamentātiō lūgubris,	<i>an ordinary speaker</i>
mel dulce,	<i>mourning over the dead</i>
proelium anceps,	<i>sweet honey</i>
remedia celeria,	<i>a double battle</i>
	<i>efficacious remedies</i>

## 59.

## SECOND CLASS

The following adjectives of one ending belong to this class:

1. Prīnceps, compos, pau- } Abl. sg., N. and Acc. nt. pl., Gen. pl.  
per, dīves } **e** wanting, **um**  
Also particeps, superstes }
2. Memor, inops : ī wanting, um
3. Vetus, : vetere, vetera, veterum

Singular			Plural	
	m., f.	n.	m., f.	n.
Nom.	dīves	dīves	dīvītēs	—
Gen.		dīvītis	dīvītum	
Dat.		dīvītī	dīvītibus	
Acc.	dīvitem	dīves	dīvītēs	—
Abl.	dīvite		dīvītibus	

prīnceps, cipis, *chief*  
 compos, potis, *master of*  
 pauper, peris, *not wealthy;*  
*of small income*

dīves, vitis, *rich*

particeps, cipis, *sharing*  
 superstes, stitis, *surviving*  
 memor, oris, *mindful*  
 inops, inopis, *without re-*  
*sources*  
 vetus, veteris, *old*



60. Some adjectives in **is** and **er**, used as appellatives or as names of months, are declined like adjectives: Ablative singular **ī**:

aequālis, is, m., *contemporary*  
 affīnīs, is, c., *relation by marriage*  
 annālis, is, m., (usu. pl.), *annals*  
 Athēniēnsis, is, m., *Athenian*  
 Aprilis, is, m., *April* (49.)

cōsulāris, is, m., *ex-consul*  
 familiāris, is, c., *friend, intimate*  
 nātālis, is, m., *birthday*  
 sodālis, is, m., *comrade*  
 September, bris, m., *September*

**Abl.:** aequālī, nātālī, Septembrī.

61. Adjectives used as **proper names** have **e** in the ablative singular:

Martiālis, ā Martiāle;      Fēlix, cum Fēlice  
 Metellus Celer,              ā Metellō Celere

62. Adjectives in **ās**, **ātis**, and **īs**, **ītis**, have **e**, when denoting persons;  
**ī**, when denoting things:

in Arpinātī (fundō), *on the estate in Arpinum*;  
 ab Arpināte (homine), *by an inhabitant of Arpinum*, (9, c.)

### 63. DECLENSION OF PARTICIPLES IN NS

Abl. sg. **e ī** } ; Nom. pl. neut. **ia**; Gen. pl. **ium**.

When used as adjectives, participles in ns have **ī**

When used as participles or substantives, they have **e**

ā mīlite vigilantī,	<i>by a watchful soldier</i>
mīlite vigilante,	<i>while the soldier was watching;</i>
ā sapientī sene,	<i>by a discreet old man,</i>
ā sapiente,	<i>by a judicious person.</i>

### 64. FOURTH DECLENSION

fructus, ūs, m., <i>fruit</i> :			cornū, ūs, n., <i>horn</i> :	
	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	fruct- <b>us</b>	fruct- <b>ūs</b>	corn- <b>ū</b>	corn- <b>ua</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	fruct- <b>ūs</b>	fruct- <b>uum</b>	corn- <b>ūs</b>	corn- <b>uum</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	fruct- <b>ui</b> , (ū)	fruct- <b>ibus</b>	corn- <b>ū</b>	corn- <b>ibus</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	fruct- <b>um</b>	fruct- <b>ūs</b>	corn- <b>ū</b>	corn- <b>ua</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	fruct- <b>ū</b>	fruct- <b>ibus</b>	corn- <b>ū</b>	corn- <b>ibus</b>

- 65. Ubus**, instead of *ibus*, is taken by  
*artus, ūs, joint*, (pl.: *limbs*,) and *tribus, ūs, tribe*:  
**artubus, tribubus.**

The same ending is occasionally found in other words, as in  
*lacus, ūs, lake*; *portus, ūs, harbor*.  
*lacibus* and *lacubus*.

Distinguish *arcibus* from *arcubus*:  
*arx, arcis, f., stronghold*; *arcus, ūs, m., bow*.

- 66. Domus, ūs, house**, has forms of both the 4th and 2nd declensions:

*Singular*: *domus, domūs, domuī domum, domō,*  
*Plural*: *domūs, domuum, domibus, domōs, domibus,*  
*domī, at home (Locative)*  
*domum, home, homeward*  
*domō, from home.*

## 67.

## GENDER

*Us* is masculine: *u* is neuter.

*Exceptions*

*Fēminīna* are in **us**

*Īdūs, tribus, porticus*;

*acus, domus, manus.*

- 68. artus, ūs, m., joint**,  
 (pl. *limbs*)  
*exercitus, ūs, m., (discip-  
 lined) army*  
*fructus, ūs, m., fruit*  
*quercus, quercubus, ūs, f.,*  
*oak (13)*  
*anus, ūs, f., old woman*  
*acus, ūs, f., needle*  
*domus, ūs, f., house*  
*Īdūs, uum, f., Ides (13th*  
*or 15th of the month*  
*cornū, ūs, n., horn*

*lacus, ūs, m., lake*  
*portus, ūs, m., harbor*

*sēnsus, ūs, m., feeling; tact*  
*nurus, ūs, f., daughter-in-law*  
*socrus, ūs, f., mother-in-law*  
*manus, ūs, f., hand*  
*porticus, ūs, f., colonnade,*  
*porch*

*tribus, ūs, f., tribe*

*portus celeberrimus, vīsus acer,*  
*domus ampla,*  
*tribus rŭstica,*  
*Īdus Martiae,*  
*genū sinistrum*

*genū, ūs, n., knee*  
*much-frequented harbor*  
*keen sight*  
*spacious house*  
*country-tribe*  
*Ides of March*  
*the left knee*

## 69. FIFTH DECLENSION

diēs, diēī, m., <i>day</i>			rēs, reī, f., <i>thing</i>	
	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	di-ēs	di-ēs	r-ēs	r-ēs
<i>Gen.</i>	di-ēī	di-ēbus	r-eī	r-ērum
<i>Dat.</i>	di-ēī	di-ērum	r-eī	r-ēbus
<i>Acc.</i>	di-em	di-ēs	r-em	r-ēs
<i>Abl.</i>	di-ē	di-ēbus	r-ē	r-ēbus

70. Fidēs, spēs, rēs have eī: fīdeī, speī, reī;  
the rest have ēī: pernīciēī, speciēī, aciēī, faciēī etc.

**Note:** a. Only diēs and rēs form a *complete* plural.

Speciēs forms the **nominative** and **accusative** plural.

b. The other cases of the plural are supplied by synonyms :

Plural : speciēs, speciēs, fōrmārum, fōrmīs, fōrmīs.

## 71. GENDER

Ēs of the fifth is feminine.

*Exceptions*

Masculine are diēs, *day*,  
and meridiēs, *mid day*;  
diēs, an appointed day  
feminine does mostly stay.

aciēs, ēī, f., *keenness*, speciēs, ēī, f., *outward appearance*  
*battle-array*

faciēs, ēī, f. *face*, fidēs, ēī, f., *trust, faithfulness*

perniciēs, ēī, f., *ruin, bane* spes, ēī, f., *hope*

rēs pūblica, } *the common-wealth*  
reī pūblīcae, f., } *a common-wealth*

diēs fēstus *feast-day*

diēs dicta, cōstitutā *appointed day*

## NOMINA DEFECTIVA

## 72. Indēclinābilia: Indeclinable words (13;53)

māne, *morning*

īnstār, *like; as much as* (gen.)

frūgī, *honest*

nēquam, *naughty*

homō frūgī, *an honest man*

espistula volūminis īnstār, *a letter like a volume*



## 76. Other defective substantives

a. Sg.:  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{— } \text{ōnis, } \text{ōnī, } \text{diciōnem, } \text{ōne, f., } \text{sway} \\ \text{fors, — — — forte, f., } \text{chance} \end{array} \right\} : \text{no pl.}$

b. Sg.:  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{— opis, — opem, ope, f., } \text{help} \\ \text{— — — — prece, f., } \text{prayer; request} \\ \text{vīs, — — vim, vī, f., } \text{violence; power} \end{array} \right\}$

Pl.  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{opēs, opum, opibus, } \text{riches; influence} \\ \text{precēs, precum, precibus, } \text{prayers} \\ \text{virēs, virium, viribus, } \text{forces; strength} \end{array} \right\}$

c. Some substantives form the ablative singular only :

iussū imperātōris, *by command of the leader*

iniussū mēo, *without my order*

meā, tuā, suā (refl.)  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{spon te, of my, your, his, etc. free will} \\ \text{nostrā, vestrā} \end{array} \right\}$

grandis nātū, *advanced in age*

## 77. SUBSTANTIVA ABUNDANTIA

(Substantives abounding in forms)

I. a. luxuria = luxurēs, luxuriam = luxriem, f., *riotous living*  
māteria = māteriēs, māteriam = materiem, f., *building material*

b. The old genitive singular in ās is sometimes used instead of ae :

pater famili ās or pater famil iae, *head of the household*

māter famili ās or māter famil iae, *mistress of the house*

c. The old dative and ablative plural -ābus, instead of īs, is used in the expressions :

dīs et deābus *to the gods and goddesses*

filiīs et fībiābus *to the sons and daughters*

NOTE: When ambiguity is excluded, the dative and ablative plural are dis, filiīs; ambābus dis, filiīs.

78. II. a. The genitive plural often has **um** instead of ōrum in words denoting money, and measure, in the compounds of vir and in other words :

nummus, i, m., *coin*

modius, ī, m., *peck*

duumvir, ī, m., *one of the*  
*Board of Two*

sestertium decem milia

decemvirum potestas

praefectus fabrum

liberum = liberōrum; deum = deōrum.

sestertius, ī, m., *sesterce (silver-coin of*

*about 5c)*

triumvir, ī, m.,  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{one of the Board of} \\ \text{decemvir, ī, m., } \end{array} \right\}$

*Three, Ten*

*ten thousand sesterces*

*the authority of the College of Ten*

*leader of workmen-troops*





## GREEK FORMS

82.

## FIRST DECLENSION

Nom. -ē, f.; -ās and -ēs, m.

Antigonē,	ae,	ae,	am,	ā,	f.,	<i>Antigone</i>
Aenēās,	ae,	ae,	am,	ā,	m.,	<i>Aeneas</i>
Spartiātēs,	ae,	ae,	am,	ā,	m.,	<i>the Spartan</i>
Spartiātae,	ārum,	īs,	āg,	īs,	m.,	<i>the Spartans</i>

Note: Also other forms occur.

83.

## SECOND DECLENSION

Nom. sg. -eus, m.; form of address -eu

Orpheus, eī, eō, eūm, eō; m., *Orpheus*(The **eu** in the nom. and in the form of address is a diphthong.)

84.

## THIRD DECLENSION

Nom. sg. -ēs, m.; -is, (parisyll.) f.; -ma, n.

a. Periclēs is or ī, ī, em or ēn, e, m., *Pericles*

Form of address: Pericles or Periclē

basis is, ī, im or in, ī, f., *pedestal*poēma, matis, matī, ma, mate, n., *poem*poēmata, { matōrum poēmatīs, mata, n., *poems*  
{ matumb. āēr, āēris, m., air : acc.: āēra  
aethēr, aetheris, m., ether : acc.: aethera

85.

## VOCABLES

Penelopē, ae, f., *Penelope* Persēs, ae, m., *Persian*Note: All **patronymics** in dēs have **ae**:Atridēs, ae, m., *scion of Atreus*Aristidēs, is, m., *Aristides* poēsis, is, f., *work of poetry*epigramma, atis, n., 1) *inscription*, 2) *epigram*Note: **Proper nouns** in is, ys, as, like those in eus, es, drop the s in the form of address:

Alexis, Alexi; Cotys, Coty; Atlās, Atl a, (Gen. Atlantis)

Names of nations often take es and as (instead of ēs)

Nom. pl.: Arcades, Acc. pl.: Arcadas

Macedones

Macedonas

## 86.

## COMPARISON

In Latin, as in English, there are three degrees of comparison (gradūs comparātiōnis),

the Positive, - Comparative and Superlative  
positīvus, comparātīvus, superlātīvus.

## 87. The comparative is formed by adding

**ior** (m. and f.) and **ius** (n.)

the superlative, by adding

**issimus, -a, -um, to the stem** (21).

sevērus, severe;		sevēr-ior, -ius, 1) more severe 2) too severe;	sevēr-issimus, a, um most severe very severe
levis, e,	light;	lev-ior;	lev-issimus
tenuis, e,	thin;	tenu-ior;	tenu-issimus
loquāx,	talkative;	loquāc-ior;	loquāc-issimus

## 88. Also participles when used as adjectives:

vigilāns,	watchful;	vigilant-ior;	vigilant-issimus
egēns,	poor;	egent-ior;	egent-issimus
ōrnātus	adorned;	ōrnāt-ior;	ōrnāt-issimus

89. NOTE: aethēr tenuior est **quam** āēr,  
the ether is thinner **than** the air;  
senectūs loquācior est, old age is **rather** talkative.

## 90. DECLENSION OF THE COMPARATIVE (55, 59.)

The **abl. sg.** ends in **e**;  
the **nom. neut. pl.** ends in **a**;  
the **gen. pl.** ends in **um**.

Singular			Plural	
	m. and f.	n.	m. and f.	n.
Nom.	sevērior	sevērius	sevēriōrēs	sevēriōra
Gen.	sevēriōris	sevēriōris	sevēriōrum	sevēriōrum
Dat.	sevēriōrī	sevēriōrī	sevēriōribus	sevēriōribus
Acc.	sevēriōrem	sevērius	sevēriōrēs	sevēriōra
Abl.	sevēriōre	sevēriōre	sevēriōribus	sevēriōribus

## PECULIARITIES

- 91.** Adjectives in **er** form their superlative by adding **rimus**,  
-a, -um to the **nom. sg. m.**:

pulcher,	<i>beautiful</i> ;	pulchr-ior,	pulcher- <b>rimus</b>
liber,	<i>free</i> ;	liber-ior,	liber- <b>rimus</b>
acer,	<i>keen</i> ;	acr-ior,	acer- <b>rimus</b>
celer,	<i>swift</i> ;	celer-ior,	celer- <b>rimus</b>

- 92.** Adjectives in **ilis** from their superlative **variously**:

**Five** form it regularly in **issimus**, -a, -um:

fertilis, utilis, mobilis,  
amabilis and nobilis;  
*fertile, useful, movable,*  
*amiable, noble.*

- 93.** **Five** adjectives change **ilis** into **illimus**:

facilis, difficilis, *easy, difficult*,  
similis, dissimilis *like, unlike*,  
and humilis: *and low.*

**facillimus, simillimus, humillimus.**

**NOTE:** The other adjectives in **ilis** usually form no superlative in **issimus** (95).

- 94.** Adjectives in **us** with **preceding vowel** form their degrees by means of **magis** and **maximē**:

idōneus,	<i>fit</i> ,	<b>magis</b> idōneus,	<b>maximē</b> idōneus
pīus,	<i>pious</i> ,	<b>magis</b> pīus,	<b>maximē</b> pīus
ardūus,	<i>steep, hard</i> ,	<b>magis</b> ardūus,	<b>maximē</b> ardūus
but <b>aequus</b> ,	<i>fair, just</i> ,	<b>aequior</b> ,	<b>aequissimus</b>
antīquus,	<i>ancient</i> ,	antīquior,	antīquissimus

- 95.** Adjectives whose comparatives or superlatives are not used, and adjectives with unusual endings, may take **magis** and **maximē** (103):

a. laudābilis,	{ laudābilior,	maximē laud. (93, Note)
praiseworthy		
alacer, lively,	{ alacrior,	maximē alacer
b. hospitālis, hospitable,	magis hospitālis	{ hospitālissimus
		{ maximē hospitālis
c. rudis, unwrought,	magis rudis	maximē rudis
d. sēdulus, diligent,	magis sēdulus,	maximē sēdulus

## ANOMALA: IRREGULAR FORMATIONS

96. Adjectives in **dicus, ficus, volus** (-dīcēns, faciēns, volēns).

maledicus, *slanderosus*, maledīc-**entior**, maledīc-**entissimus**  
 magnificus, *magnificent*, magnific-entior, magnific-entissimus  
 benevolus, *benevolent*, benevol-entior, benevol-entissimus

97. bonus,	<i>good</i> ;	<b>melior</b> ,	melius	<b>optimus</b>
malus,	<i>bad</i> ;	<b>pēior</b> ,	pēius	<b>pessimus</b>
magnus,	<i>great</i> ;	<b>māior</b> ,	māius	<b>maximus</b>
parvus,	<i>small</i> ;	<b>minor</b> ,	minus	<b>minimus</b>

98. Sing.:	multus,	<i>much</i> ;	no compar.,	plūrimus
	multa,	"	no compar.,	plūrima
	multum,	"	<b>plūs</b> ,	plūrimum
Plur.:	multī,	<i>many</i> ;	plūrēs,	plūrimī
	multae,	"	plūrēs,	plūrimae
	multa,	"	plūra,	plūrima

99. NOTE: a. The singular plūs, a larger amount, is a **substantive** only:

plūs aurī, *more gold*

b. Of plūs no other forms than plūs and plūris are used:  
 plūris hōc faciō, *I esteem this more highly* (457)

c. The genitive of plurēs and plūs is plurium (90):  
 plurēs            plūra,            plūrium,            *more*  
 complūrēs, complūra, complūrium,            *several*

d. plūrimī = plērique; **gen. only** plūrimōrum  
 plūrimae = plēraequē, " " plūrimārum  
 plūrima = plēraque, " " plūrimōrum

## 100.

## ABUNDANTIA

exterior,	<i>outer</i>	extrēmus (extimus),	<i>outermost</i>
inferior,	<i>lower</i>	īnimus-īmus,	<i>lowermost</i>
posterior,	<i>next in</i>	postrēmus,	<i>hindmost, last</i>
	<i>order, time; place</i> ;	(postumus,	<i>lateborn</i> )
superior,	<i>higher</i> ;	<b>summus</b> ,	<i>highest</i>
		(suprēmus,	<i>last</i> )
		(diēs suprēmus,	<i>day of death</i> )

The positive forms of the preceding adjectives are rare :

exterae nātiōnēs (gentēs)	<i>foreign nations</i>
inferī,	<i>those below</i>
apud inferōs,	<i>in the infernal regions</i>
mare inferum,	<i>Tyrrhene Sea</i>
mare superum,	<i>Adriatic Sea</i>
posterī.	<i>descendants</i>
posterō diē,	<i>on the following day</i>
superī dī,	<i>gods on high</i>
omnia supra, infera etc.	
Distinguish : <b>superior,</b>	<i>higher in place</i>
<b>altior,</b>	<i>higher in extent upward</i>

### DEFECTIVE COMPARISON

#### 102. Dēfectīva gradū positīvō : without a positive (308):

a. citior, <i>hither</i> , (adj.)	citimus, <i>nearest on this side</i>
interior, <i>inner</i>	intimus, <i>inmost, intimate</i>
<b>prior</b> , <i>first of two; former</i>	<b>prīmus</b> , <i>foremost, first</i>
propior, <i>nearer</i>	proximus, <i>nearest</i>
ulterior, <i>farther</i>	ultimus, <i>farthest</i>
b. dēterior, <i>less good; inferior</i> ,	dēterrimus, <i>meanest</i>
potior, <i>preferable</i>	potissimus, <i>most important</i>
Distinguish; pēior,	worse = <i>more bad</i>
dēterior,	worse = <i>less good</i>

#### 103. Comparative or superlative supplied by synonyms or different forms of the same adjectives :

alacer,	<i>lively;</i>	alacrior,	laetissimus (95, a.)
ferus,	<i>wild;</i>	ferōcior,	ferōcissimus
frūgī,	<i>worthy. honest;</i>	frūgālīor,	frūgālissimus
gnārus,	<i>acquainted</i>		
	<i>with a thing; skilful;</i>	perītior,	perītissimus
nēquam,	<i>naughty;</i>	nēquior,	nēquissimus
novus,	<i>new;</i>	recentior,	recentissimus
<b>novissimus</b> ,	<b>last</b>		
agmen novissimum,	<i>rear guard</i>		
propinquus,	<i>near,</i>	propior,	proximus (102)
prōvidus,	<i>circumspect</i>	prōvidentior,	prōvidentissimus
sacer,	<i>sacred (to a god)</i>	sānctior,	sacerrimus
salūtāris,	<i>wholesome,</i>	salūtārīor,	salūberrimus
vetus,	<i>old,</i>	vetustior,	veterrimus

## 104. NOTE:

- |    |                                   |  |                       |
|----|-----------------------------------|--|-----------------------|
| a. | (decem, centum)                   | annōs nātus,                                   | (10, 100) years old   |
|    | māior nātū,                       | minor nātū,                                    | older, younger (511)  |
|    | maximus, nātū,                    | minimus nātū,                                  | oldest, youngest      |
| b. | Catō pater or                     | Catō māior,                                    | Cato Sr.              |
|    | Catō filius or                    | Catō minor,                                    | Cato Jr.              |
| c. | superior Africānus or A. māior,   |  | the elder Africanus   |
|    | posterior Africānus, or A. minor, |  | the younger Africanus |
| d. | iuvenis,                          | man between 40 and 45; (iūnior, sg., not used) |                       |
|    | iūniōrēs,                         | younger class of citizens or of senators       |                       |
|    | senex,                            | more than 60 years old                         |                       |
|    | senior,                           | between 45 and 60                              |                       |

## 105.

## STRENGTHENING OF THE DEGREES

- |    |                             |                                   |
|----|-----------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| a. | <b>admodum</b> difficilis   | } = difficillimus, very difficult |
|    | <b>valde</b> difficilis     |                                   |
|    | <b>per</b> difficilis       |                                   |
| b. | paulō difficilior quam,     | somewhat more difficult than      |
|    | etiam difficilior quam,     | even more difficult than          |
|    | multō difficilior quam,     | by far more difficult than (515)  |
| c. | <b>vel</b> difficillimus,   | perhaps the most difficult        |
|    | <b>quam</b> difficillimus,  | as difficult as possible          |
|    | <b>longē</b> difficillimus, | by far the most difficult         |

## ADVERBS FORMED FROM ADJECTIVES

(For other adverbs see 114, 128, 129, 178-182, 346, 347, 351.)

106. Most of the adjectives of the **2nd declension** and some participles in **us**, when used as adjectives form their adverbs by adding **ē** to their stems (21):

pulcher,	pulchr-ē,	beautifully
liber,	liber-ē,	freely
assiduus,	assidu-ē,	without intermission
ōrnātus,	ōrnāt-ē,	elegantly

107. Adjectives and other participles of the **3rd declension** ending in **ns**, when used as adjectives, form their adverbs by adding **er** to their stems; adjectives of **other** endings add **iter**:

clēmēns,	clēmēt-er,	mildly, gently
sapiēns,	sapiēt-er,	wisely
fēlix,	fēlic-iter,	luckily
ācer,	ācr-iter,	keenly
similis,	simil-iter,	similarly



**108.** Some **accus. sg. neut.** are used as adverbs:

multum,	<i>much;</i>	nimum,	<i>too much; too</i>
paulum,	<i>little;</i>	parum,	<i>too little</i>
facile,	<i>easily;</i>	nōn facile,	<i>with difficulty</i>
	<i>cēterum,</i>		<i>for the rest</i>

**109.** Many **abl. sg. neut.** are employed as adverbs:

citō,	<i>quickly</i>	necessāriō,	<i>necessarily</i>
cōsultō,	<i>on purpose</i>	necopinātō,	<i>unexpectedly</i>
continuō,	<i>right after</i>	optātō,	<i>acc. to wish</i>
crēbrō,	<i>frequently</i>	perpetuō,	<i>perpetually</i>
falsō,	<i>falsely</i>	rārō,	<i>seldom</i>
fortuitō,	<i>by chance</i>	sēcrētō,	<i>secretly</i>
(dē, ex) imprōvisō,	<i>on a sudden</i>	sēdulō,	<i>busily</i>
manifestō,	<i>palpably</i>	sērō,	<i>(too) late</i>
mūtuō,	<i>mutually</i>	subitō,	<i>suddenly</i>

Distinguish continuō, *right after*  
 continenter = perpetuō = assiduē

**110.** To the following adjectives correspond adverbs of peculiar formation:

bonus, <b>bene,</b>	<i>well;</i>	malus, <b>male,</b>	<i>badly</i>
alius, <b>aliter,</b>	<i>otherwise;</i>	propinquus, <b>prope,</b>	<i>near</i>
audāx, <b>audācter,</b>	<i>boldly;</i>	sollers, <b>sollerter,</b>	<i>skilfully</i>

nēquam,	nēquiter,	<i>worthlessly</i>
diūturnus,	diū,	<i>a long time</i>
fīdus,	fīdēliter,	<i>faithfully</i>
repentīnus,	repente,	<i>suddenly</i>
temerārius,	temere,	<i>indiscreetly</i>
recēns,	nūper,	<i>lately</i>
	impūne,	<i>with impunity</i>

fīrmus,	fīrmē	or fīrmīter,	<i>firmly</i>
hūmānus,	hūmānē	or hūmānīter,	<i>humanly; humanely</i>
largus,	largē,	or largīter,	<i>abundantly</i>
certus,	certē,	<i>certainly; at least</i>	certō, <i>with certainty;</i>
vērū,	vērē,	<i>according to truth</i>	vērō, <i>truly; assuredly.</i>

## 111. COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

Only such adverbs as are derived from adjectives can be compared.

The *comparative of the adverb* is like the comparative of the corresponding adjective in its neuter form.

The *superlative of the adverb* is formed from the superlative of the corresponding adjective by adding *ē* to the stem (20):

	ōrnātē <i>elegantly</i>	ōrnāt <b>ius</b> <sup>1</sup> <i>more elegantly</i> <sup>2</sup> <i>too elegantly</i>	ōrnātissimē <sup>1</sup> <i>most elegantly</i> <sup>2</sup> <i>very elegantly</i>
a.	prūdenter, celeriter, crēbro,	<i>prudently</i> ; <i>swiftly</i> ; <i>frequently</i> ;	prūdentius, celerius, crēbrius, prūdentissime celerrimē crēberrimē
b.	bene, male, prope,	<i>well</i> ; <i>badly</i> ; <i>near</i> ;	melius, pēius, propius, optimē pessimē proximē
	paulum nōn multum	} <i>little</i> ;	minus, minimē
	nēquiter,	<i>worthlessly</i> ;	nēquiū, nēquissimē
	mātūrē,	{ <i>opportunately</i> ; <i>early</i>	{ mātūrius, mātūrrimē

## 112. IRREGULAR COMPARISON

diū,	<i>long</i> ;	diūtius,	diūtissimē
saepe,	<i>often</i> ;	saepius,	saepissimē
magnopere, magnō opere,	{ <i>greatly</i> ;	{ magis, <i>more</i> (in <b>degree</b> )	{ maximē <i>most</i> (in <b>degree</b> )
multum,	<i>much</i> ;	{ plūs, <i>more</i> (in <b>extent</b> )	{ plūrimum <i>most</i> (in <b>extent</b> )

nūper,	<i>lately;</i>		nūperrimē,	<i>quite recently</i>
meritō,	<i>deservedly;</i>		meritissimō	
tūtō,	<i>safely;</i>	tūtius	tūtissimō	
		potius	{ <i>rather</i> <i>preferably</i>	potissimum { <i>above all;</i> <i>chiefly</i>
		prius,	{ <i>before</i> <i>sooner</i>	primō, <i>in the beginning</i> primūm, { <i>for the first time</i> <i>first</i>
		posterius,	<i>later</i>	{ <i>postrēmō, at last</i> <i>post.ēmum, for the last time</i>
satis,	<i>enough,</i>	satius,	<i>better; more</i> <i>serviceable</i>	
		nihilō sētius	{	
		nihilō minus	{ <i>nevertheless</i>	
		nōn sētius	<i>none the less</i>	

**113. Note:** *The three degrees, especially the comparatives, of adverbs in eē, iē, uē are very rare; they may be formed by means of magis and maximē, or supplied by synonymous expressions:*

*assiduē, continually, magis assiduē, more incessantly*  
*assiduissimē (Cic.) or maximā assiduitāte, most incessantly*

## NUMERALIA : NUMERALS

### 114. The Question

is answered by

quot,	<i>how many?</i>	adiectīva cardinālia
quotus,	{ <i>which in order?</i> <i>of which number in a row?</i>	adiectīva ordinālia
quotēni,	<i>how many at a time?</i>	adiectīva distribūtīva
quotiēns,	<i>how many times?</i>	adverbīa numerālia

115.	Cardinālia	Ordinālia
1	ūnus, a, um, <i>one</i>	prīmus, a, um, <i>first</i>
2	duo, ae, o, <i>two</i>	secundus or alter, <i>second</i>
3	trēs, tria, <i>three</i>	tertius, <i>third</i>
4	quattuor	quārtus
5	quīnque	quīntus
6	sex	sextus
7	septem	septimus
8	octō	octāvus
9	novem	nōnus
10	decem	decimus
11	ūndecim	ūndecimus
12	duodecim	duodecimus
13	tredecim	tertius decimus
14	quattuordecim	quārtus decimus
15	quīndecim	quīntus decimus
16	sēdecim	sextus decimus
17	septendecim	septimus decimus
18	duodēvigintī	duodēvicēnsimus
19	ūndēvigintī	ūndēvicēnsimus
20	vīgintī	vicēnsimus
21	ūnus <b>et</b> vīgintī or vīgintī ūnus	ūnus <b>et</b> vicēnsimus or vicēnsimus prīmus
22	duo <b>et</b> vīgintī or vīgintī duo	alter <b>et</b> vicēnsimus or vicēnsimus alter
23	trēs <b>et</b> vīgintī or vīgintī trēs	tertius <b>et</b> vicēnsimus or vicēnsimus tertius
28	duodētrīgintā	duodētricēnsimus
29	ūndētrīgintā	ūndētricēnsimus
30	trīgintā	tricēnsimus
40	quadrāgintā	quadrāgēnsimus
50	quīnquāgintā	quīnquāgēnsimus
60	sexāgintā	sexāgēnsimus
70	septuāgintā	septuāgēnsimus
80	octōgintā	octōgēnsimus
90	nōnāgintā	nōnāgēnsimus

Distribūtiva	Adverbia numerālia	Notation
singulī, ae, a., <i>one by one</i> bīnī, ae, a., <i>two by two</i> ternī, <i>three by three</i> quaternī quīnī sēnī septēnī octōnī novēnī dēnī	semel, <i>once</i> bis, <i>twice</i> ter, <i>three times</i> quater quīnquiēns or iēs sexiēns septiēns octiēns noviēns deciēns	I II III IIII = IV V VI VII VIII VIII = IX X
ūndēnī duodēnī ternī dēnī quaternī dēnī  quīnī dēnī sēnī dēnī septēnī dēnī duodēvīcēnī ūndēvīcēnī  vīcēnī	ūndeciēns duodeciēns ter deciēns quater deciēns  quīnquiēns deciēns sexiēns deciēns septiēns deciēns duodēvīciēns ūndēvīciēns  vīciēns	XI XII XIII XIII = XIV XV XVI XVII XVIII XIII = XIX XX
singulī <b>et</b> vīcēnī or vīcēnī singulī bīnī <b>et</b> vīcēnī or vīcēnī bīnī ternī <b>et</b> vīcēnī or vīcēnī ternī duodētrīcēnī ūndētrīcēnī  trīcēnī	semel <b>et</b> vīciēns or vīciēns semel bis <b>et</b> vīciēns or vīciēns bis ter <b>et</b> vīciēns or vīciēns ter duodētrīciēns ūndētrīciēns  trīciēns	XXI XXII XXIII XXVIII XXIX XXX
quadrāgēnī quīnquāgēnī sexāgēnī septuāgēnī octōgēnī nōnāgēnī	quadrāgiēns quīnquāgiēns sexāgiēns septuāgiēns octōgiēns nōnāgiēns	XL L LX LXX LXXX XC

100	centum	centēsimus
200	ducentī, ae, a	ducentēsimus
300	trecentī	trecentēsimus
400	quadringentī	quadringentēsimus
500	quingentī	quingentēsimus
600	sescentī	sescentēsimus
700	septingentī	septingentēsimus
800	octingentī	octingentēsimus
900	nōngenti	nōngentēsimus
1000	mille	millēsimus
2000	duo milia	bis millēsimus
1000000	deciēns centēna milia	deciēns centiēns millēsimus
5000000	quīnquāgiēns centēna milia	quīnquāgiēns centiēns millēsimus

## DECLENSION OF NUMERAL ADJECTIVES

116. The only *cardinals* declined are

- 1, ūnus, duo, trēs
- 2, the hundreds above 100
- 3, the plural milia

	m.	f.	n.	m.,	f.	n.
<i>Nom.</i>	ūnus,	ūna,	ūnum	duo,	duae,	duo
<i>Gen.</i>		ūnīus		duōrum,	duārum,	duōum
<i>Dat.</i>		ūnī		duōbus,	duābus,	duōbus
<i>Acc.</i>	ūnum,	ūnam,	ūnum	duōs or duo,	duās,	duo
<i>Abl.</i>	ūnō	ūnā,	ūnō	duōbus,	duābus,	duōbus

	m.	f.	n.	n.
<i>Nom.</i>	trēs,	trēs,	tria	milia
<i>Gen.</i>		trium		miliūm
<i>Dat.</i>		tribus		milibus
<i>Acc.</i>	trēs,	trēs,	tria	milia
<i>Abl.</i>		tribus		milibus

117. a. Ambō, ae, ō, *both*, is declined like duo, ae, o: (173)

erant itinera duo  
ambōrum cōsulum  
cum duābus lēgiōnibus



centēnī ducēnī <b>tre</b> cēnī quadrīngēnī quīngēnī sescēnī septīngēnī octīngēnī nōngēnī	centiēns ducentiēns <b>tre</b> centiēns quadrīngentiēns quīngentiēns sescentiēns septīngentiēns octīngentiēns nōngentiēns	C CC CCC CCCC D DC DCC DCCC DCCCC
<b>singula</b> mīlia bīna mīlia deciēns centēna mīlia quīnquāgiēns centēna mīlia	milliēns bis milliēns deciēns centiēns milliēns quīnquāgiēns centiēns milliēns	M - CIO MM - II [X] [L]

b. mīlle is an indeclinable adjective,

mīlia is a declinable substantive:

mīlle hominēs : *a thousand men*

mīlle hominum : *of a thousand men*

tria mīlia hominum : *three thousand men*

tribus mīlibus hominum : *to three thousand men*

**118.** The **ordinals and distributives** are declined like adjectives of the 1st and 2d declensions; the genitive plural of the distributives (except singulī) however, usually ends in um instead of ōrum:

singulōrum; bīnum, bīnārum, bīnum

**Note:** alter, a, um, *second*, is declined like ūnus, a, um:

genitive: alterīus;

dative: alterī.

## **119. COMPOUND NUMERALS**

a. In numbers from 21-99 incl.

either the **lower** denomination **precedes with et**,

or the **higher** denomination **precedes without et**:

sex **et** vīgintī or vīgintī sex.

b. In numbers above 100

the **higher** denomination usually **precedes without** et :

101 = centum (et) ūnus

110 = centum (et) decem

126 = centum vīgintī sex

2300 *men* = duo mīlia trecentī hominēs

or duo mīlia **hominum et** trecentī

with 2300 *men* = cum duōbus mīlibus trecentīs hominibus

or cum duōbus mīlibus hominum et trēcentīs

NOTE: Unus must be separated from a plural substantive :

ūnus et vīgintī milītēs

ūnius et vīgintī militum

ūnum et vīgintī mīlia hominum

c. The compounds of tens with 8 or 9 are commonly expressed by subtraction, duo- and ūn- remaining unchanged :

duodētrigintā nāvēs, 28 *ships*

ūndēcentum nautae, 99 *sailors*

but duae et trīgintā nāvēs, 32 *ships*

## USES OF NUMERALS

120. An “infinite” number is formed by

sescentī, millēnsimus milliēns:

sescentī cecidērunt, *thousands fell*

vix millēnsima est pars *an utterly small fraction*

milliēns melius est *this is infinitely better*

121. Dates and hours are expressed by **ordinals**:

In 1821 : annō millēnsimō octingentēsimō vīcēsimō ūnō  
(or prīmō):

at 3 o'clock: {exeunte hōrā nōnā or ineunte hōrā decimā  
                  {modernized: hōrā tertiā (i. e. exeunte)

122. **Fractions** (partēs) are expressed by cardinals and ordinals: the numerator by cardinals, the denominator by ordinals:

trēs septimae (partēs is understood) =  $\frac{3}{7}$

However,

a. if the numerator is 1, the denominator only is given;  
septima pars =  $\frac{1}{7}$     decima pars =  $\frac{1}{10}$ ;

b. if the numerator is but **one smaller** than the denominator, the numerator only is mentioned:

sex partēs =  $\frac{6}{7}$ ; novem partēs =  $\frac{9}{10}$

c. dimidia pars =  $\frac{1}{2}$ .

**123. Distributives** are used to express

**“so many apiece, so many at a time”:**

dēna iūgera in singulōs dīscrīpsit;

*he allotted ten acres to each one.*

NOTE: 1. One of the two distributives is sometimes replaced by a cardinal;  
decem iūgera in singulōs dīscrīpsit;  
dēna iūgera in cīvēs dīscrīpsit.

2. If “each, apiece” is understood, it is not expressed:  
ūnum ōs habēmus, duōs pedēs, duās manūs.

**124. Excepting singulī and ternī, whose place is then taken by ūnī and trīnī, the distributives are also used instead of cardinals with nouns plural in form, but singular in meaning:**

ūna castra,            *one camp*  
bīna castra,        *two camps*  
trīna castra,        *three camps*  
quaterna castra,   *four camps, etc.*

**125. NOTE:** a. ūnī and trīnī have **one** meaning,  
singulī and ternī have **two** meanings,  
bīnī, quaternī etc. have **three** meanings.

ūnae, trīnae litterae: *one, three letters (epistles)*

singulae, ternae litterae: { *one, three characters at a time*  
  *one, three letters (epistles) at a time*

bīnae, quaternae etc. p̄ae: { *two, four etc. letters (epistles)*  
  *two, four etc. characters at a time*  
  *two, four etc. epistles at a time (See 173)*

b. **duo** liberī, *two children:*

(Liberī is plural both in form and in meaning.)

126. Numeral adverbs and distributives are employed in the

#### MULTIPLICATION TABLE

$1 \times 1 = 1$	: semel ūnum est ūnum
$2 \times 1 = 2$	: bis singula sunt duo
$3 \times 1 = 3$	: ter singula sunt tria
$1 \times 3 = 3$	: semel tria sunt tria
$2 \times 3 = 6$	: bis terna sunt sex
$3 \times 3 = 9$	: ter terna sunt novem

127. Multiplicātiva : Adjectives in plex, plicis.

simplex,	<i>simple</i>	quadruplex,	<i>fourfold</i>
duplex,	<i>twofold</i>	septemplex,	<i>sevenfold</i>
triplex,	<i>threefold</i>	decemplex,	<i>tenfold</i>

128. Adverbia numerālia in um (formed from the ordinals):

prīmum	iterum,	tertium.....	postrēmum,
<i>for the first,</i>	<i>second,</i>	<i>third,</i>	<i>.....last time;</i>
	iterum cōnsul,	<i>consul for the second time.</i>	

129. Note: a. Distinguish the preceding series from the following :

prīmum,	deinde,	tum, tum.....	postrēmō or dēnique,
<i>first,</i>	<i>secondly,</i>	<i>thirdly,.....</i>	<i>lastly</i>
or: <i>in the 1st place,</i>	<i>then,</i>	<i>next.....</i>	<i>lastly</i>
b. <i>prīmō,</i>	<i>at first;</i>	<i>deinde,</i>	<i>afterward; posteā, later on</i>

## PRONOUNS

### I. PERSONAL PRONOUNS

(Prōnōmina persōnālia)

130.

There are **reflexive** and **non-reflexive** personal pronouns; they are reflexive, when they refer to the subject of the sentence; otherwise they are non-reflexive. The reflexive and non-reflexive pronouns have the **same** Latin forms in the **first** and **second** persons; in the **third** person, however, **different** forms are used.

(For a complete explanation of the reflexive pronoun see Syntax)

131.		FIRST PERSON	
		<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
No.	<b>ego</b>	{ <i>I</i> —	nōs { <i>we</i> —
Gen.	<b>meī</b>	{ <i>of me</i> <i>of myself</i>	{ <b>nostrī</b> { <i>of us</i> <i>of ourselves</i> <b>nostrum</b> { <i>of, among us</i> <i>of, among our-</i> <i>selves</i>
Dat.	<b>mihi</b>	{ <i>to, for me</i> <i>to, for myself</i>	nōbis { <i>to, for us</i> <i>to, for oursel's</i>
Acc.	<b>mē</b>	{ <i>me (25)</i> <i>myself (as object, 25)</i>	nōs { <i>us</i> <i>ourselves (as</i> <i>object, 25)</i>
Abl.	{ <b>ā mē</b> { <i>by me</i> <i>by myself</i> <b>mēcum</b> { <i>with me</i> <i>with myself</i>	{ <b>ā nōbīs</b> { <i>by us</i> <i>by ourselves</i> <b>nōbīscum</b> { <i>with us</i> <i>with ourselves</i>	

SECOND PERSON				
	<i>Singular</i>		<i>Plural</i>	
No.	<b>tū</b>	{ <i>thou, you</i> —	<b>vōs</b>	{ <i>you</i> —
Gen.	<b>tuī</b>	{ <i>of you</i> <i>of yourself</i>	<b>vestrī</b>	{ <i>of you</i> <i>of yourselves</i>
			<b>vestrum</b>	{ <i>of, among you</i> <i>of, among yourselves</i>
Dat.	<b>tibi</b>	{ <i>to, for you</i> <i>to, for yourself</i>	<b>vōbīs</b>	{ <i>to, for you</i> <i>to, for yourselves</i>
Acc.	<b>tē</b>	{ <i>you</i> (as ob- <i>yourself</i> ject, 25)	<b>vōs</b>	{ <i>you (as object,</i> <i>yourselves 25)</i>
Abl.	{ <b>ā tē</b> { <i>by you</i> <i>by yourself</i> <b>tēcum</b> { <i>with you</i> <i>with yourself</i>		<b>ā vōbīs</b>	{ <i>by you</i> <i>by yourselves</i>
			<b>vōbīscum</b>	{ <i>with you</i> <i>with yourselves</i>

- 132. a.** Nostrī and vestrī are **objective** genitives (439):  
 memor nostrī, vestrī, *mindful of us, of you;*
- b.** Nostrum and vestrum are **partitive** genitives (442):  
 quis vestrum laudat? *who of you praises?*  
 nēmō nostrum laudat *no one of us praises*
- But c.** Nōs omnēs laudāmus, *all of us praise*  
 vōs omnēs laudātis *all of you praise*
- Gen.:** nostrum omnium *of all of us (448)*  
 vestrum omnium *of all of you*
- Dat.:** nobis omnibus *to all of us*
- Abl.:** { ā nobis omnibus *by all of us*  
 nobiscum omnibus *with all of us*  
 cum omnibus vōbis *with all of you*

### 133. THIRD PERSON

The non-reflexive form for the nominative of the third person is wanting; but it is replaced by the nominative of the determinative pronoun: the non-reflexive forms for the oblique cases, however, are the same as the corresponding forms of the determinative pronoun.

### 134. Non-reflexive Forms                      Reflexive Forms

<i>Singular</i>				
<i>Nom.</i>	is, ea, id,	<i>he, she, it</i>	—	
<i>Gen.</i>	ēius, ēius, ēius,	<i>of him.....</i>	suī,	<i>of himself.....</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	eī, eī, eī,	<i>to him.....</i>	sibi,	<i>to himself.....</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	eum, eam, id,	<i>him, her, it</i>	sē,	<i>himself...(object)</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	{ eō, eā, eō,	<i>by means of it</i>	sē,	<i>by itself.....</i>
	{ ab eō,	<i>by him</i>	ā sē,	<i>by himself.....</i>
	{ cum eō,	<i>with him</i>	sēcum,	<i>with himself.....</i>
<i>Plural</i>				
<i>Nom.</i>	iī (eī), eae, ea,	<i>they</i>	—	
<i>Gen.</i>	eōrum, eārum, eōrum,	<i>of them</i>	suī,	<i>of themselves...</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	iīs or eīs,	<i>to them</i>	sibi,	<i>to themselves...</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	eōs, eās, ea,	<i>them</i>	sē,	<i>themselves (object)</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	{ iīs, or eīs,	<i>by means of them</i>	sē,	<i>by themselves (things)</i>
	{ ab iīs,	<i>by them</i>	ā sē,	<i>by themselves</i>
	{ cum iīs,	<i>with them</i>	sēcum,	<i>with themselves</i>

sē laudat, *he praises himself, his own person*  
 eum laudat, *he praises him, another person*



## STRENGTHENED FORMS

135. Many forms of the personal pronouns can be strengthened : *sē* by reduplication, *tū* by appending *tē*, the other forms except the non-reflexive 3d person and the genitive, by appending *met* :

egomet,	mēmet,	mihimet,	nōsmet,	nōbīsmet
tūte,	tēmet,	tibimet,	vōsmet,	vōbīsmet
sēsē,	sēsē,	sībimet,	ā sēsē	

136.

## POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS

(Prōnōmina possessīva)

Non-reflexive Forms	Reflexive Forms
1st and 2nd Person <b>All cases of</b> meus, a, um, <i>my</i> noster, a, um, <i>our</i> (32) tuus, a, um, <i>your</i> (sg.) vester, a, um, <i>your</i> (pl.) 3d Person: <i>The unchangeable</i> genitives ēius, <i>his, her, its</i> eōrum, eārum, eōrum, <i>their</i>	1st and 2d Persons: <i>The oblique cases of</i> meus, a, um, <i>my</i> noster, a, um, <i>our</i> tuus, a, um, <i>your</i> (sg.) vester, a, um, <i>your</i> (pl.) 3d Person <b>All cases of</b> suus, a, um, <b>his</b> etc. <b>own</b> suus, a, um, <b>their own</b>

137.

**Note 1:** Meus, noster, tuus, vester and suus are **pronominal adjectives** of the 1st and 2d declensions (32);

ēius, eōrum, eārum, are the **unchangeable genitives** of the determinative pronoun (133, 142).

**Note 2:** If the possessive can be understood from the context, it is omitted:  
amīcum laudat, *he praises his (own) friend.*

138. **Suus** is used to refer to the subject:

amīcum suum laudat, *he praises his own friend.*

Use **ēius** in all other cases:

amīcum ēius mortuus est, *his friend is dead*

(referring to a word mentioned previously)

amīcum ēius laudat, *he praises his friend (another person's whose name is already known).*

139.

## STRENGTHENED FORMS

suōpte pondere,	<i>by its own weight</i>
suāpte manū,	<i>with his own hand</i>

## DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS

(Prônōmina dēmōnstrātīva)

- 140. Hic, haec, hōc, this** (*near me*)  
 iste, ista, istud, *that* (*near you*)  
 ille, illa, illud, **that** (*near him*)

Singular				Plural		
Nom.	hic,	haec,	hōc	hī,	hae,	haec
Gen.		hūius		hōrum,	hārum,	hōrum
Dat.		hūic			hīs	
Acc.	hunc,	hanc,	hōc	hōs,	hās,	haec
Abl.	hōc,	hāc,	hōc		hīs	
Nom.	ille,	illa,	illud	illī,	illae,	illa
Gen.		illius		illōrum,	illārum,	illōrum
Dat.		illī			illīs	
Acc.	illum,	illam,	illud	illōs,	illās,	illa
Abl.	illō,	illā,	illō		illīs	

**141. Notes:** *a.* Iste is declined like ille.

*b.* The forms of hic ending in **s** may be **strengthened** by **ce**: hūius**ce**, hōs**ce**, hās**ce**, hīs**ce**.

*c.* A secondary form for hae is haec.

*d.* Rare forms for ille and iste are: illīc, illaec, illūc, istīc, istaec, istūc, (accent on the ultima: 9, c)

*e.* When the interrogative **ne** is appended to the old forms in ce, the ending -cene is weakened into cine:

hīcine, haecine, hōcine, illīcine?

## DETERMINATIVE PRONOUNS

(Prōnōmina dēterminātīva)

**142.** The determinative pronouns *specify* the objects for which they stand. (See 143.)

is, ea, id (Declined 134)	{	1) he, she, it; this....., that..... (referring to something preceding)
		2) he, she, this....., that....., the... (as antecedent to quī with the indicative)
		3) a....., such a....., the..... (as antecedent to quī with the subjunctive)

īdem, eadem, idem,	the same
ipse, ipsa, ipsum,	-self (144)

**143.** Is (without quī) refers to a noun or clause preceding (374):

apud Helvētiōs longē nōbilissimus	<i>Orgetorix was by far the most noble</i>
fuit Orgetorix. Is coniūrātiōnem	<i>among the Helvetians. This influential</i>
nōbilitātis fēcit.	<i>man formed a league of the nobles.</i>

Is, quī with the indicative determines the individual object for which it stands by a fact; is quī with the subjunctive describes the class by a characteristic (375, 673 sqq.);

is sum, quī fēcī	<i>I am the (boy, man) who did this</i>
nōn is sum quī terrear	<i>{ I am not the (boy, man) to be frightened or a boy that could be frightened</i>

	Singular			Plural		
Nom.	īdem	éadem	idem	īdem eōrundem	eaedem	éadem
Gen.		ēiusdem			eārundem	eōrundem
Dat.		eīdem			īsdem	
Acc.	eundem	eandem	idem	eōsdem	eāsdem	éadem
Abl.	eōdem	eādem	eōdem		īsdem	
Nom.	ipse	ipsa	ipsum	ipsī ipsōrum	ipsae	ipsa
Gen.		ipsīus			ipsārum	ipsōrum
Dat.		ipsī			ipsīs	
Acc.	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
Abl.	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō		ipsīs	

144. Distinguish the determinative **self** from the reflexive **self**:

a. The **determinative self**, **ipse**, which is used to **emphasize** a word, **agrees** in gender, number and case with its substantive or pronoun:

ispī puerī	<i>the boys themselves</i>
ipsōrum pueōrum	<i>of the boys themselves</i>
egomet ipse, nostrum ipsōrum, nōbismet ipsis.....	

b. The **reflexive self**, **suī, sibi, sē**, **never modifies**, but **refers** to the subject only, being dependent in case on the word by which it is governed:

(ipse) sē laudat	<i>he praises himself</i>
(ipsa) suī immemor est	<i>she is unmindful of herself</i>
(ipsī) sibi cōsulant	<i>they care for themselves</i>

145. Instead of the plural **īdem**, also **iīdem** and **eīdem**,  
instead of the plural **īdem**, also **iīdem** and **eīdem** occur.

## 146.

### RELATIVE PRONOUNS

(Prōnōmina relātīva)

Quī, quae; quod,      *who; which*

<i>Singular</i>				
<i>Nom.</i>	quī	quae	quod	<i>who, which</i>
<i>Gen.</i>		<b>cūius</b>		<i>whose, of which</i>
<i>Dat.</i>		<b>cūi</b>		<i>to whom, to which</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	quem	quam	quod	<i>whom, which</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	ſā quō	ā quā	quō	<i>by whom, by which</i>
	quōcum	quācum	quōcum	<i>with whom, with which</i>
<i>Plural</i>				
<i>Nom.</i>	quī	quae	quae	<i>who, which</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	quōrum	quārum	quōrum	<i>whose, of which</i>
<i>Dat.</i>		quibus		<i>to whom, to which</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	quōs	quās	quae	<i>whom, which</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	ā quibus	quibus		<i>by whom, by which</i>
		quibuscum		<i>with whom, with which</i>

**147.** The relative refers to a substantive or pronoun, expressed or understood, called its **antecedent** :

**puer**, quī bonus est, laudātur  
 quī bonus est, **is** laudātur  
 quī bonus est, laudātur.

**148.**                Instead of quōcum        also cum quō,  
                       instead of quācum        also cum quā,  
                       instead of quibuscum also cum quibus occurs,

**149.** Relatives agree with their **antecedents** in gender and number ; their case depends on their construction in the clauses to which they belong (396-398).

## **150.                        GENERAL RELATIVES**

Relative pronouns, adjectives and adverbs become general in signification by taking **cumque** or by being **doubled** :

1. Quicumque, quaecumque, quodcumque, *whoever, whatever*  
 are declined like quī, quae, quod, cumque remaining unchanged :

cūiuscumque, or cūicumque;  
 quemcumque, quōscumque

they are both substantives : quicumque bonus est, laudātur,  
 and adjectives : quaecumque rēs

2. **Quisquis** (substantive), *whoever*  
**quidquid** (substantive), *whatever*  
 quōquō modō,                        *in whatever manner*

*NOTE:* Of quisquis only the 3 preceding forms are in common use.

## INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS

(Prōnōmina interrogātīva)

151.            *Quis, who?*            *Quid, what?*

(Used as Substantives.)

	<i>Singular</i>		<i>Plural</i>	
<i>Nom.</i>	<b>quis</b>	<b>quid</b>	quī	quae
<i>Gen.</i>	cūius		quōrum	
<i>Dat.</i>	cūi		quibus	
<i>Acc.</i>	quem	quid	quōs	quae
<i>Abl.</i>	ā quō	quō	ā quibus	quibus

*NOTE:* Quis is either masculine or indeterminate (masculine or feminine)

The dative singular was also pronounced *cuī* (2 syllables).

**152.** Qui, quae, **quod**, *what kind of? what? which?*  
are used as **adjectives**; they are declined like the relative.

[illegible]

are used both as substantives and as adjectives. (169).

## Substantives

quis nostrum, *who of us (many)?*

uter nostrum, *which of us two?*

quid factum est, *what has happened?*

## Adjectives

quī rēx,            *what kind of king?*

ultra manus,      *which hand?*

quod facinus, *what outrage?*

154. STRENGTHENED FORMS OF THE INTERROGATIVE

## Substantives

quisnam,      quidnam?

quis tandem, quid tandem?

*who, what indeed?*

*who, what in the world?*

## Adjectives

quīnam, quaenam, quodnam?

quaenam rēs? quae tandem rēs?

*of what kind indeed?*

155. quī (an old abl.) = quō modō?  
quī fit?

*in what manner, how?  
how does it happen?*



## 156.

## INDEFINITE PRONOUNS

(Prōnōmina indēfīnīta)

<i>Used as Substantives</i>		<i>Used as Adjectives</i>	
<b>aliquis</b>	<b>aliquid</b>	<b>aliquī, aliqua, aliquod</b>	
<i>someone</i>	<i>something</i>	<i>some</i>	
dicit aliquis,	<i>someone says</i>	aliquī rēx	aliqua rēs
dicit aliquin,	<i>he says something</i>	aliquod verbum	aliqua verba
<b>quis</b>	<b>quid</b>	<b>quī, quae or qua, quod</b>	
<i>some one</i>	<i>anything</i>	<i>any</i>	
(Used especially after sī, nisi, nē, num, and relatives)			
sī quis,	<i>if any one</i>	sī quī rēx,	sī quae or qua rēs
sī quid,	<i>if anything</i>	sī quod verbum,	sī quae or qua verba
nē quis,	lit: <i>lest any one</i>	nē qui puer,	<i>that no boy</i>
	usu: <b>that no one</b>	nē qua causa,	<i>that no cause</i>
nē quid	<b>that nothing</b>	nē qua verba,	<i>that no words</i>

157. The compounds of quis and quī are declined like quis and quī.

But **aliqua** = 1) *fem. sg. nom.*; 2) *neut. pl. n. and acc.* of aliquis;

**quae or qua** = 1) *fem. sg. nom.*; 2) *neut. pl. n. and acc.* of quis.

The prefix *ali-* and the appended syllables remain unchanged.

158. Quis and aliquis are sometimes used as adjectives;

quī and aliquī are sometimes used as substantives;

sī quis rēx = sī quī rēx

sī quī dīcit = sī quis dīcit

159. Quispiam, quaequam, quippiam (quidpiam) = aliquis, aliquid  
quispiam, quaequam, quoppiam (quodpiam) = aliquī, aliquae, aliquod.

160. **Num** quis = **ecquis**; **num** quī = **ecquī**

num quis dīxit, *did any one say?*

ecqua civitās est, *is there perhaps any city?*

Used as Substantives	Used as Adjectives
<b>neuter</b> , néutra, nétrum <i>neither of two</i>	néuter, néutra, nétrum <i>neither of two</i>
<b>nēmō</b> <i>nobody</i>	
Gen. nūllīus	
Dat. nēminī	
Acc. nēminem	
Abl. ā nūllō	nūllus, nūlla, nūllum
<b>nihil</b> <i>nothing</i>	
Gen. nūllīus rei	<i>no.....(169)</i>
Dat. nūllī rei	
Acc. nihil	
Abl. nūllā rē	
<b>quisquam</b> , ūlla, quidquam	ūllus, ūlla, ūllum
Pl. ūllī, ūllae, ūlla	ūllī, ūllae, ūlla
<i>anybody</i>	<i>any</i>
a. nēmō vēnit, <i>nobody came</i>	
<b>neque quisquam</b> vēnit, (and not anyone), i. e.	
<b>and nobody came</b>	
b. nihil fēcīt, <i>he did nothing</i>	nūlla spēs <i>no hope</i>
<b>neque quidquam</b> fēcīt, <b>and he did nothing</b>	<b>neque ūlla</b> spēs, (and not any) i. e. <b>and no hope</b>
	sine ūllā spē, <i>without any hope</i>

**162.** Nēmō and quisquam, instead of nūllus and ūllus, are added :

a. to **adjectives** used as **personal** masculine substantives

b. often to personal masculine **substantives** :

a. nēmō Rōmānus, *no Roman*  
neque quisquam doctus, *and no learned man*

b. nēmō cīvis, *no citizen*  
neque quisquam servus, *and no slave*

But: nūlla rēs, *no thing*  
neque ūlla rēs, *and no thing*

NOTE: Quidquam = quicquam

163. Used as Substantives	Used as Adjectives
<b>quīdam</b> , quaedam, <b>quiddam</b> <i>a certain one</i>	quīdam, quaedam, <b>quoddam</b> <i>a certain.....</i>
<i>Note:</i> md is changed into <b>nd</b> : quendam, quandam, quōrundam	amicus quīdam, <b>a certain friend</b> ( <i>who might be named, if necessary</i> )

## GENERAL INDEFINITE PRONOUNS

164. Used as Substantives	Used as Adjectives
quisque, <b>quid</b> que <i>each one (severally)</i>	quisque. quaeque, <b>quod</b> que <i>each (severally)</i>
<i>Note:</i> Quisque usually follows:	
<i>a superlative:</i> optimus quisque,	<i>all the best men</i>
<i>an ordinal:</i> { quotus quisque, quintō quōque annō, tertiō quōque diē,	<i>how few (in leading clauses only)</i> <i>every fourth year</i> <i>every other day</i>
<i>a reflexive:</i> prō sē quisque,	<i>each to the best of his power</i>
<i>a relative:</i> quod quisque amat	<i>what every one loves</i>
<i>an interrogative:</i> quid quisque amet	<i>what every one loves</i>
<b>165.</b> ūnusquisque, ūnumquidque <i>each one (individually)</i> <i>Gen.: ūnūscūiusque</i> <i>Dat.: ūnicūique.</i>	ūnusquisque, -quaeque, -quodque <i>each (individually)</i>
<b>166.</b> uterque, utraque, utrumque <i>each of two (separately)</i>	uterque, utraque, utrumque <i>each of two (separately)</i> (See n. 160 and 173)

**167.** -quisque and uterque are distributive; (164-166)  
omnēs and ambō are collective;

omnes = *all together*

ambō = *two together, both*

# 168. Other general indefinite pronouns:

<i>Used as Substantives</i>	<i>Used as Adjectives</i>
quīvis, quaevis, <b>quidvis</b> <i>any one you will</i>	quīvis, quaevis, <b>quodvis</b> <i>any you will</i>
quīlibet, quaelibet, <b>quidlibet</b> <i>any one you please</i>	quīlibet, quaelibet, <b>quodlibet</b> <i>any you please</i>
utervīs, utravīs, utrumvīs <i>either of two you will</i>	utervīs, utravīs, utrumvīs <i>either of two you will</i>
uterlibet, utralibet, utrumlibet <i>either of two you please</i>	uterlibet, utralibet, utrumlibet <i>either of two you please</i>

## PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES

(Adiectīva prōnōminālia)

169. ūnus, sōlus, tōtus, ūllus,  
uter, alter, néuter, nūllus,  
and alius.

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	ūnus, ūna, ūnum	ūnī ūnae, ūna
<i>Gen.</i>	ūn <b>ius</b>	ūnōrum, ūnārum, ūnōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	ūnī	ūnīs
<i>Acc.</i>	ūnum, ūnam, ūnum	ūnōs, ūnās, ūna
<i>Abl.</i>	ūnō, ūnā, ūnō	ūnīs

ūnus, a, um, *one*  
sōlus, a, um, *alone*  
tōtus, a, um, *whole*  
ūllus, a, um, *any*

uter, utra, utrum, *which of two*  
alter, altera, alterum,  
*the other*  
néuter, néutra, néutrum, *neither*  
nūllus, a, um, *none*

alius, alia, aliud, *another*

170. The genitive singular of alter, a, um, is alterius.

The genitive singular of alius, a, ud, is alterius; (alius is rare).

171. Uter is both an interrogative (133) and an indefinite relative:

utrum tibi commodum est, *ēlige*:

*choose the one of the two which suits you.*

172. Alteruter, alterutra, alterutrum, *any of two*  
 alter uter, altera utra, alterum utrum, *any of two*

Gen. alterutrius; alterius utrius

Distinguish :

Uter	puer, <i>which of the two boys</i>
uterque	puer, <i>each of the two boys, both</i> (167)
alter	puer, <i>one of the two boys</i>
neuter	puer, <i>neither of the two boys</i>
alteruter	puer, <i>either of the two boys</i>

173. The plural of **uterque** is used

- a. *esp.* of two individual subjects regarded as belonging together :  
 utrique scyphī, *both goblets*  
 utraque eius uxōrēs, *both his wives*
- b. with *plūrālia tantum* :  
 utraque litterae, *both letters*
- c. to denote a plurality on two sides :  
 utrique, *both parties*

## 174. CORRELATIVES

The relation of question and answer is expressed by correlative pronouns and adverbs.

## 175. CORRELATIVE PRONOUNS (Prōnōmina corrēlātīva)

QUESTION	DEFINITE ANSWER	INDEFINITE ANSWER
<i>Interrogatives</i>	<i>Determ. &amp; Relatives</i>	<i>Indefinite Pronouns</i>
quis, <i>who?</i>	is, quī, <i>he who</i>	aliquis, <i>someone</i>
quālis, <i>of what sort?</i>	tālis, quālis, <i>such as</i>	—
quantus, <i>how great?</i>	tantus, quantus, <i>so great as</i>	—
quantum, <i>how much?</i>	tantum, quantum, <i>so much as</i>	aliquantum, <i>not a little</i>
quot, <i>how many?</i>	tot, quot. <i>so many as</i>	aliquot, <i>several;</i> <i>a goodly number</i>
Note: tot and quot are indeclinable.		

176. Totidem, *just as many* tantundem, *just as much*  
 quotquot - quotcumque *how many soever*

177. Tantus, a, um and quantus, a, um, are adjectives:  
 tantum, ī, n., and quantum, ī, n., are substantives:  
 tanta pecūnia - tantum pecūniac, *so much money*

## 178. CORRELATIVE PRONOMINAL ADVERBS

I. Adverbia loci - Adverbs of Place		
1. Interrogativa et relativa	} ubi, <i>where;</i> } quō, <i>where=whither</i>	unde, <i>whence</i> quā(viā), <i>by what way</i>
2. Determinativa	3. Demonstrativa	4. Indefinita
ibi, <i>there</i> ibidem, <i>in the same place</i>	hic, <i>here</i> istic, <i>there (near you)</i> illuc, <i>there (near him)</i>	alicubi, <i>somewhere</i> alibi, <i>elsewhere</i> usquam, <i>anywhere</i> ( <i>in sent. with neg. meaning</i> )
eō, <i>there = thither</i> eodem, <i>to the same place</i>	hūc, <i>here = hither</i> istūc, <i>there = thither</i> illūc, <i>there = thither</i>	aliquō, <i>to some place</i> aliō, <i>to another place</i> quōquam, <i>to any place</i>
inde, <i>thence, from there</i> indidem, <i>from the same place</i>	hinc, <i>hence from here</i> istinc, <i>thence (2d p.)</i> illinc, <i>thence (3d p.)</i>	alicunde, <i>from somewhere</i> aliunde, <i>from another place</i> —
eā, <i>on that side</i> eādem, <i>by the same way</i>	hāc, <i>by this way</i> istāc, <i>by that way</i> illāc, <i>by that way</i>	aliquā, <i>on some way</i> aliā, <i>on another way</i> —
General Relatives		General Indefinites
ubicumque, <i>wherever</i>		ubique, <i>everywhere</i>
quocumque, <i>to whatever place</i>		nusquam, <i>nowhere</i>
undecumque, <i>from whatever place</i>		undique, <i>from all sides</i>

179.	Aliquō locō = alicubi	<i>somewhere</i>
	aliō locō = alibi	<i>elsewhere</i>
	(in) omnibus locis	<i>everywhere</i>

NOTE: Ubique is used almost exclusively after relative and interrogative pronouns:

omnēs, quī ubique sunt      *all, wherever they may be*



## 180. II. Adverbia temporis: Abverbs of Time.

### 1. Interrogātiva et Relātiva

quandō	}	<i>when</i>
cum (relative only)		
quotiēns		<i>how often</i>
quam diū		<i>how long</i>

### 2. Dēterminātiva

tum	}	<i>then,</i>
tunc		<i>at that time</i>
cum....., tum.....		
when....., then.....		
antēā, before ( <b>any</b> fixed time)		
postēā, after ( <b>any</b> fixed time)		

totiēns, *so often*  
(totiēns, quotiēns)

tam diū, *so long*  
(tam diū, quam diū)

### 3. Dēmōnstrātiva

nunc, *now*

antehāc, *before (this  
present time)*

posthāc, *after (this  
present time)*

adhūc, *until now*

### 4. Indēfīnita

aliquando, *at some  
time*

aliās, *at another time*

unquam (*in neg. sent.*)  
*at any time*

aliquotiēns, *some,*  
*i. e. several times*

aliquamdiū, *for some  
(considerable) time*

### General Relatives

quadōcumque,	<i>whenever</i>
quotiēscumque,	<i>however often</i>

### General Indefinites

numquam,	<i>never</i>
----------	--------------

181. NOTE: a. quondam, *at a certain time; formerly*  
like quidam, *a certain one*  
b. olim, 1) *formerly;* 2) *at a future date*

## 182. III. Adverbia modī: Adverbs of Manner and Degree

### Interrogātiva et Relātiva

ut, (utī), *how*

quam { (*how, esp. before adjectives  
and adverbs*)

quam bonus, *how good*

quam bene, *how well*

### Dēterminātiva

ita, sic { 1) *so, in such a manner*  
          { 2) *so, to such a degree*

item, itidem, *in the same manner*

tam so, [*esp. before adj. and adv.*]

tam fortis, *so brave*

tam fortiter, *so bravely*

183. NOTE: tot puerī = tam multī puerī  
General Relative: utcumque = howsoever

## 184.

## VERBS

The inflection of the **Verb** (**Conjugation**) comprises:

1. **Verb** forms proper (*verbum finitum*), expressing mode, tense, voice and **person**,
2. **Noun** forms (*verbum infinitum*) expressing:—, tense, voice and **case**.

## 185. VERB FORMS WITH PERSONAL ENDINGS

## Three Modi

*Indicativus* or mode of reality.

*Coniunctivus* or mode of conception.

*Imperativus* or mode of command.

## Six Tempora

*Praesens* : (continued) present action

*Imperfectum*: (continued) past action

*Futurum I.* : (continued) future action

*Perfectum*: completed present action

*Plusquamperfectum*: completed past action

*Futurum II. (exactum)* completed future action

## Two Genera

*Activum*: subject represented as acting

*Passivum*: subject represented as acted upon

(About the *Dēpōnēns* see 214.)

## Three Persōnae and Two Numerī

The first person (I — we), the person speaking

The second (thou or you — you), the person spoken to

The third (he, she, it — they), the person spoken of

## 186. NOUN FORMS WITH CASE ENDINGS

Substantives:	{	<i>Infinitivus</i>	Adjectives:	{	<i>Gerundivum</i>
		<i>Gerundium</i> ,			<i>Participium</i> *
		<i>Supinum</i>			

Tenses: *Praesens*                      *Futurum*                      *Perfectum* (538)

Voices:                      *Activum*                      *Passivum*

Cases:                      *Nominativus* et *cāsūs obliqui*

187.

## INFLECTION OF THE VERBS

The forms of the Verb are derived from three Stems, the **Present Stem**, the **Perfect Stem**, and the **Participial Stem**, (190.) and accordingly, comprise three systems, the **Present System**, the **Perfect System** and the **Participial System**.

188. The manner of deriving verbal forms from the perfect and participial stems is the same for all Latin verbs (180, 191); but there are **four** different types of derivation from the present stem, known as

189.

## THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS

The four conjugations are distinguished by the endings of the **present infinite active**:

1st: āre,	2d: ēre,	3d: ere,	4th: īre,
laudāre,	monēre,	regere,	audīre,
to praise,	to advise,	to rule,	to hear.

190.

## FORMS OF THE VERB PROPER (184.)

Every form of the verbum finitum consists of one of the three **stems** (187) and an **ending**, made up of **signs** for mode, tense and person. These signs, together with certain changes resulting from their union with the stems, appear in the single conjugations.

191.

## PERSONAL ENDINGS

<i>Indicative and Subjunctive</i>			<i>Imperative</i>		
Active		Pass. & Depon.	Active		Deponent
<i>Sing.</i>			<i>Present</i>	<i>Future</i>	<i>Present</i>
1	m (ō)	r			
2	s	ris	—	tō	re
3	t	tur	—	(tō)	
<i>Plur.</i>					
1	mus	mur			
2	tis	mini	te	tōte	mini
3	nt	ntur	—	(ntō)	

NOTE: a. The personal ending of the *first person singular* is **ō**, not m, in the Present Indicative, the I. Future of the first and second conjugations, and in the II. Future.

b. The personal endings of the *Perfect Indicative Active* are:

ī, istī, it; imus, istis, ērunt

## 192.

## PRINCIPAL PARTS

*Three forms* of the verb are known as the *principal parts*, because they show the *three stems* from which all other forms are derived:

1. The **Present Infinitive Active**
2. The **Perfect Indicative Active**
3. The **Perfect Participle Passive**

	Pres. Infinitive Act.	Perf. Indic. A.	Perf. Part. Pass.	
I.	laud-ā-re	laudāv-ī	laudāt-um	<i>to praise</i>
II.	mon-ē-re	monu-ī	monit-um	<i>to advise</i>
III.	reg-e-re	rēx-ī	rēct-um	<i>to rule</i>
IV.	aud-ī-re	audīv-ī	audīt-um	<i>to hear</i>

**193.** The **neuter** of the **perfect participle passive**, (alike in form with the 1st supine) is chosen to represent the third principal part, because many verbs lack the masculine and feminine forms.

Where all forms of the perfect participle passive are wanting, the **future participle active** in -ūrus, if it occurs, is given.

Many verbs lack the third stem, some both the second and third entirely.

**194.** The **1st person singular of the present indicative active**, the "**name**" of the verb in the Latin dictionaries, is easily formed from the first principal part:

laud-āre, mon-ēre, reg-ere, cap-ere, aud-īre  
 laud-ō, mon-eō, reg-ō, cap-iō, aud-iō

**Note:** Those verbs which change ere to iō, are placed in a separate class; their conjugation will be found in n. 209; the corresponding list of verbs in n. 251-254.

**Note:** In reciting the principal parts the 1st person singular present indicative active is always mentioned together with the first principal part:

**laudāre, laudō, laudāvī, laudātum, to praise**

## 195. SYNOPSIS OF THE PERFECT SYSTEM

containing five verb-forms and one noun-form of the

### Active Voice

Perfect indicative and subjunctive

Plupf. indicative and subjunctive

2d Fut. indicative (no subjunctive)

Perfect infinitive:

laudāv-, monu-, rēx-, audīv-

---

ī	erim
eram	issem
erō	—
isse	

## 196. SYNOPSIS OF THE PARTICIPIAL SYSTEM

containing

### I. Five verb-forms of the

#### Passive Voice:

Perfect indicative and subjunctive

Plupf. indicative and subjunctive

2d Fut. indicative (no subjunctive):

laudāt-, monit-, rēct-, audīt-

---

us, a, um;      ī, ae, a

sum	sim
eram	essem
erō	—

### II. Seven noun-forms:

Perf. participle passive: **us, a, um; ī, ae, a**

Perf. infinitive passive: **um etc., ōs etc. esse**

Fut. participle active: **ūrus etc., ūrī etc.**

Fut. infinitive active: **ūrum etc., ūrōs etc. esse**

1st and 2d supines: **um, ū (unchangeable)**

Fut. infinitive passive: **um īrī (unchangeable)**

## 197

## SYNOPSIS

TENSES	I. ACTIVE	PASSIVE	II. ACTIVE	PASSIVE
V E R B F O R M S				
<i>Present Indic.</i>	laud - <b>ō</b> - <b>ās</b> - at - āmus - ātis - ant	- or - āris - ātur - āmur - āminī - antur	mon - <b>eō</b> - ēs - et - ēmus - ētis - ent	- eor - ēris - ētur - ēmur - ēminī - entur
<i>Present Subj.</i>	laud - <b>em</b> - ēs, etc.	- er - ēris	mon - <b>eam</b> - eās, etc.	- ear - eāris
<i>Imperf. Indic.</i>	laud - <b>ābam</b> - ābās, etc.	- ābar - ābāris	mon - <b>ēbam</b> - ēbās, etc.	- ēbar - ēbāris
<i>Imperf. Subj.</i>	laud - <b>ārem</b> - ārēs, etc.	- ārer - ārēris	mon - <b>ērem</b> - ērēs, etc.	- ērer - ērēris
<i>I Future Indic.</i>	laud - <b>ābō</b> - ābis - ābit - ābimus - ābitis - ābunt	- ābor - āberis - ābitur - ābimur - ābiminī - ābuntur	mon - <b>ēbo</b> - ēbis - ēbit - ēbimus - ēbitis - ēbunt	- ēbor - ēberis - ēbitur - ēbimur - ēbiminī - ēbuntur
<i>Imperative</i>	laud - <b>ā</b> - āte	— —	mon - <b>ē</b> - ēte	— —
N O U N F O R M S				
<i>Infinitive</i>	laud - āre	- ārī	mon - ēre	- ērī
<i>Present Partic.</i>	laud - āns (Gen. - antis)	—	mon - ēns (Gen. - entis)	—
<i>Gerund</i>	laud - andī, andō, etc.	—	mon - endī endō, etc.	—
<i>Ft. Pass. Part.</i>	laud -	andus, a, um	mon -	endus, a, um



## OF THE PRESENT SYSTEM

III. ACTIVE PASSIVE		IV. ACTIVE PASSIVE		TENSES
V E R B F O R M S				
reg - <b>ō</b> - <b>is</b> - it - imus - itis - unt	- or - eris - itur - imur - iminī - untur	aud - <b>iō</b> - <b>īs</b> - it - īmus - ītis - iunt	- ior - īris - ītur - īmur - īminī - iuntur	<i>Present Indic.</i>
reg - <b>am</b> - ās, etc.	- ar - āris	aud - <b>iam</b> - iās, etc.	- iar - iāris	<i>Present Subj.</i>
reg - <b>ēbam</b> - ebās, etc	- ēbar - ēbāris	aud - <b>iēbam</b> - iēbās, etc.	- iēbar - iēbāris	<i>Imperf. Indic.</i>
reg - <b>erem</b> - erēs, etc.	- erer - erēris	aud - <b>irem</b> - irēs, etc.	- irer - irēris,...	<i>Imperf. Subj.</i>
reg - <b>am</b> - ēs - et - ēmus - ētis - ent	- ar - ēris - ētur - ēmur - ēminī - entur	aud - <b>iam</b> - iēs - iet - iēmus - iētis - ient	- iar - iēris - iētur - iēmur - iēminī - ientur	<i>Future Indic.</i>
reg - <b>e</b> - ite	— —	aud - <b>ī</b> - īte	— —	<i>Imperative</i>
N O U N F O R M S				
reg - ere	reg - ī	aud - īre	- īrī	<i>Infinitive</i>
reg - ēns (Gen. - entis)	—	aud - iēns (Gen. ientis)	—	<i>Pres. Partic.</i>
reg - endī - endō, etc.	—	aud - iendī - iendō, etc.	—	<i>Gerund</i>
reg -	endus, a, m	aud -	iendus, a, um	<i>Future Passive Part.</i>

## 198.

## FIRST

laudāre, laudō, laudāvi, laudātum <i>praise</i>		
ACTIVUM		
	Indicātīvus	Coniūctīvus
Praesens	laud - <b>ō</b> , laud - <b>ās</b> , laud - <b>at</b> , <i>I praise, am praising, do p. thou praisest, (you praise) he (she, it) praises</i>	<b>laud - em</b> laud - <b>ēs</b> laud - <b>et</b>
	laud - <b>āmus</b> , laud - <b>ātis</b> , laud - <b>ant</b> , <i>we praise you praise they praise</i>	laud - <b>ēmus</b> laud - <b>ētis</b> laud - <b>ent</b>
	laud - <b>ābam</b> , laud - <b>ābās</b> , laud - <b>ābat</b> , <i>I was praising, praised thou wast (you were) prais- he was praising [ing]</i>	laud - <b>ārem</b> laud - <b>ārēs</b> laud - <b>āret</b>
Imperfectum	laud - <b>ābāmus</b> , laud - <b>ābātis</b> , laud - <b>ābant</b> , <i>we were praising you were praising they were praising</i>	laud - <b>ārēmus</b> laud - <b>ārētis</b> laud - <b>ārent</b>
	laud - <b>ābō</b> , laud - <b>ābis</b> , laud - <b>ābit</b> , <i>I shall praise you will praise he will praise</i>	
Futūrum I.	laud - <b>ābimus</b> , laud - <b>ābitis</b> , laud - <b>ābunt</b> , <i>we shall praise you will praise they will praise</i>	
	laudāv - <b>ī</b> , laudāv - <b>istī</b> , laudāv - <b>it</b> , <i>I praised, I have praised you praised he praised</i>	laudāv - <b>erim</b> laudāv - <b>erīs</b> laudāv - <b>erit</b>
Perfectum	laudāv - <b>imus</b> , laudāv - <b>istis</b> , laudāv - <b>ērunt</b> , <i>we praised you praised they praised</i>	laudāv - <b>erīmus</b> laudāv - <b>erītis</b> laudāv - <b>erint</b>

199. The subjunctive is used to express e. g. :

<b>Cause</b> (all pers. and tenses)	{	<b>cum</b> laudem	<i>since I praise</i>
		<b>cum</b> laudārem	<i>since I praised</i>
		<b>cum</b> nōn laudem	<i>since I do not praise</i>
		<b>cum</b> nōn laudārem	<i>since I did not praise</i>
<b>Result</b> (all ps.)	{	<b>ut</b> laudem (604)	<i>(so) that I praise</i>
		<b>ut</b> nōn laudem	<i>(so) that I do not praise</i>

Note: For practice the list of verbs in n. 230 may be used.

## CONJUGATION

laudāre, laudō, laudāvī, laudātum *praise*

## PASSIVUM

## Indicātīvus

laud-or, *I am (being) praised*  
 laud-āris, *you are praised*  
 laud-ātur, *he is praised*

laud-āmur, *we are praised*  
 laud-āminī, *you are praised*  
 laud-antur, *they are praised*

laud-ābar, *I was (being) praised*  
 laud-ābāris, *you were praised*  
 laud-ābātur, *he was praised*

laud-ābāmur, *we were praised*  
 laud-ābāminī, *you were praised*  
 laud-ābantur, *they were praised*

laud-ābor, *I shall be praised*  
 laud-āberis, *you will be praised*  
 laud-ābitur, *he will be praised*

laud-ābimur, *we shall be praised*  
 laud-ābiminī, *you will be praised*  
 laud-ābuntur, *they will be praised*

laudāt-us sum, **I was praised**, *have b. p.*,  
 a | es, *you were praised*  
 um | est, *he was praised*

laudāt-ī sumus, *we were praised*  
 ae | estis, *you were praised*  
 a | sunt, *they were praised*

## Coniūctīvus

laud-er  
 laud-ēris  
 laud-ētur

laud-ēmur  
 laud-ēmini  
 laud-entur

laud-ärer  
 laud-ārēris  
 laud-ārētur

laud-ārēmur  
 laud-ārēmini  
 laud-ārentur

laud-atu-sim  
 a | sīs  
 um | sit

laud-ātī-simus  
 ae | sītis  
 a | sint

**Purpose** } ut laudem, (*in order*) to praise; that I praise  
 (all ps.) } nē laudem, *not to p.*, lest I p., that I do not p.

Rogō, rogābō, rogāverō tē, ut urbem **līberēs** (619)

rogābam, rogāvī, rogāveram tē, ut urbem **līberārēs**

**Exhortation** } laudēmus, *let us praise*  
 (1st. ps. present) } nē laudēmus, *let us not praise*

## 200.

## FIRST

# ACTIVUM

	Indicātīvus	Coniūnctīvus
Plūsquamperf.	laudāv-eram, <i>I had praised</i>	laudāv-issem
	laudāv-erās, <i>you had praised</i>	laudāv-issēs
	laudāv-erat, <i>he had praised</i>	laudāv-isset
Plūsquamperf.	laudāv-erāmus, <i>we had praised</i>	laudāv-issēmus
	laudāv-erātis, <i>you had praised</i>	laudāv-issētis
	laudāv-erant, <i>they had praised</i>	laudāv-issent
Futūrum II.	laudāv-erō, <i>I shall have praised</i>	
	laudāv-eris, <i>you will have praised</i>	
	laudāv-erit, <i>he will have praised</i>	
Futūrum II.	laudāv-erimus <i>we shall have praised</i>	
	laudāv-eritis, <i>you will have praised</i>	
	laudāv-erint, <i>they will have praised</i>	
Imperative	<div style="display: flex; align-items: center;"> <div style="font-size: 3em; margin-right: 10px;">{</div> <div> Pres.: laud-ā <i>praise thou</i>    laud-āte <i>praise ye</i>  Fut. : laud-ātō <i>thou shalt pr.</i>    laud-ātōte <i>ye shall pr.</i>  Fut.: (laud-ātō <i>he shall praise</i>    laud-antō <i>they shall pr.</i>) </div> </div>	
Infinitive	<div style="display: flex; align-items: center;"> <div style="font-size: 3em; margin-right: 10px;">{</div> <div> Pres.: laud-āre <i>to praise</i>  Perf. : laud-āvisse <i>to have praised</i>  Fut. : laud-ātūrum etc. esse <i>to be about to pr</i> (196, II) </div> </div>	
Participle	<div style="display: flex; align-items: center;"> <div style="font-size: 3em; margin-right: 10px;">{</div> <div> Pres.: laud-āns, (laudantis, 63) <i>praising</i>  Perf. : — <i>—</i>  Fut. : laudāt-ūrus, etc, <i>about to praise</i> (196, II) </div> </div>	
Gerund	<div style="display: flex; align-items: center;"> <div style="font-size: 3em; margin-right: 10px;">{</div> <div> Nom.: (laud-āre) <i>(praising, to praise)</i>  Gen. : (ad)laud-andum <i>(to or for) praising</i>  Dat. : laud-andī <i>of praising</i>  Acc. : laud-andō (rare); <i>to or for praising</i>  Abl. : laud-andō <i>by praising</i> </div> </div>	
<b>Supīnum I.</b> laudāt-um <i>in order to praise</i> (only with verbs of motion, as ire, venire, mittere, 585)		
<b>Supīnum II.</b> laudāt-ū ..... <i>to praise</i> (only after fās, facilis etc., 587)		

201. Rule: Finite forms (184) of the verb take their subject in the nominative:

Carolus (subject nominative) **est** puer probus

Infinitives (186), demanded e. g. by verbs of thinking and saying, as putāre and affirmāre, take their subject in the accusative:

Putō Carolum (subject accusative) **esse** puerum probum  
*I believe Carl to be an honest boy*

## CONJUGATION

## PASSIVUM

## Indicātīvus

laudāt-us	}	eram,	<i>I had been praised</i>
a		erās,	<i>you had been praised</i>
um		erat,	<i>he had been praised</i>

laudāt-ī	}	erāmus,	<i>we had been praised</i>
ae		erātis,	<i>you had been praised</i>
a		erant,	<i>they had been praised</i>

laudāt-us	}	erō,	<i>I shall have been pr.</i>
a		eris,	<i>you will h. b. praised</i>
um		erit,	<i>he will h. b. praised</i>

laudāt-ī	}	erimus,	<i>we shall h. b. praised</i>
ae		eritis,	<i>you will h. b. praised</i>
a		<b>erunt</b> ,	<i>they will h. b. praised</i>

## Coniūctīvus

laudāt-us	}	essem
a		essēs
um		esset

laudāt-ī	}	essēmus
ae		essētis
a		essent

## Not used

I. praesentis:	laudā-rī	<i>to be praised</i>
I. perfectī	: laudāt-um etc., esse	<i>to have been praised</i>
I. futūrī	: laudāt- <b>um īrī</b> (196, II.)	<i>to be about to be pr.</i>

P. praesentis: —

P. perfectī : laudāt-us etc. *praised, having been praised*

P. futūrī	}	laud-andus etc.	{	1) (he, she, it) that <b>must</b> be praised)
(Gerundivum)				2) <b>deserving</b> to be praised

Putō patrem laud-āre	<i>I think (that) the father praises</i>
putō eum laud-āvisse	<i>I think (that) he (has) praised</i>
putō eum laud-ātūrum esse	<i>I think (that) he will praise</i>
putō puerōs laud-ārī	<i>I think (that) the boys are praised</i>
putō eōs laud-ātōs esse	<i>I think (that) they have been praised</i>
putō <b>mātrē</b> laud-ātūm īrī	<i>I think (that) the mother will be praised</i>

202. Laud-ātūrus sum *I am about to praise*laud-andus sum *I must be praised*laud-andum est *one must praise (212)*



## 203.

## SECOND

monēre, moneō, monuī, monitum *to advise*

## ACTIVUM

	Indicātivus	Coniūctivus
Pres.	mon-eō, <i>I advise, am advising, do advise</i>	mon-eam
	mon-ēs, <i>you advise</i>	mon-eās
	mon-et, <i>he advises</i>	mon-eat
	mon-ēmus, <i>we advise</i>	mon-eāmus
	mon-ētis, <i>you advise</i>	mon-eātis
	mon-ent, <i>they advise</i>	mon-eant
Impf.	mon-ēbam, <i>I was advising</i>	mon-ērem
Fut. I.	mon-ēbō, <i>I shall advise</i>	
Perf.	monu-ī, <i>I advised, have ad.</i>	monu-erim
Plup.	monu-eram, <i>I had advised</i>	monu-issem
Fut. II.	monu-erō, <i>I shall have advised</i>	

Imper- ative	Pres.	mon-ē <i>advise thou,</i>	mon-ēte <i>advise ye</i>
	Fut.	{ mon-ētō <i>thou shalt adv.</i> mon-ētōte <i>ye shall ad.</i> (mon-ētō <i>he shall advise</i> mon-entō <i>they shall advise</i> )	

Infinitive	Pres.	mon-ēre	<i>to advise</i>
	Per.	monu-isse	<i>to have advised</i>
	Fut.	monit-ūrum etc. esse	<i>to be about to advise</i>

Participle	Pres.	mon-ēns (mon-entis, 63)	<i>advising</i>
	Per.	---	---
	Fut.	monit-ūrus etc.	<i>about to advise</i>

Gerund	Nom.:	(mon-ēre)	( <i>advising, to advise</i> )
	Gen.:	mon-endī	<i>of advising</i>
	Dat.:	mon-endō	<i>to or for advising</i>
	Acc.:	ad mon-endum	( <i>to or for</i> ) <i>advising</i>
	Abl.:	mon-endō	<i>by advising</i>

Supine I. monit-um *in order to advise* (only with verbs of motion; as, ire, venire, mittere, 585)

Supine II. monit-ū.....*to advise* (only after fās, facilis etc. 587)

monuī from mōne-vī.



## CONJUGATION

monēre, moneō, monuī, monitum *to advise*

## PASSIVUM

Indicātivus		Coniūctivus
mon-eor,	<i>I am advised</i>	mon-ear
mon- <b>ēris</b> ,	<i>you are advised</i>	mon-eāris
mon-ētur,	<i>he is advised</i>	mon-eātur
mon-ēmur,	<i>we are advised</i>	mon-eāmur
mon-ēminī,	<i>you are advised</i>	mon-eāminī
mon-ēntur,	<i>they are advised</i>	mon-eantur
mon-ēbar,	<i>I was (being) advised</i>	mon-ērer
mon-ēbor,	<i>I shall be advised</i>	
monit-us sum,	<i>I have been advised</i>	monit-us sim
monit-us eram,	<i>I had been advised</i>	monit-us essem
monit-us erō,	<i>I shall have been advised</i>	
<i>Not used</i>		
mon-ērī,	<i>to be advised</i>	
monit-um etc., esse,	<i>to have been advised</i>	
monit- <b>um irī</b> (unchangeable) <i>to be about to be advised</i>		
monit-us etc.	<i>advised, having been advised</i>	
Gerundive - Participle : mon-endus { <i>(he, she, it) that must be advised</i> <i>deserving to be advised</i>		

204. NOTE: The forms of monēre in the indicative and subjunctive, beginning with the imperfect, correspond to those of laudāre (195-197, 191).

mōn-ē-	monu-	monit-	taking the place
of laud-ā-	laudāv-	laudāt-	(the endings being alike.)

## 205.

## THIRD

regere, regō, rēxī, rēctum, to rule

## ACTIVUM

Indicātīvus			Coniūctīvus
Pres.	reg-ō	<i>I rule, am ruling, do</i>	reg-am
	reg-is	<i>you rule</i> [rule]	reg-ās
	reg-it	<i>he rules</i>	reg-at
	reg-imus	<i>we rule</i>	reg-āmus
	reg-itis	<i>you rule</i>	reg-ātis
	reg-unt	<i>they rule</i>	reg-ant
Impl.	reg-ēbam	<i>I was ruling</i>	rēg-erem
Fut. I.	<i>I shall rule</i>		
	reg- <b>am</b>	reg-ēmus	
	reg- <b>ēs</b>	reg-ētis	
	reg-et	reg-ent	
Perf.	rēx-ī	<i>I ruled, have ruled</i>	rēx-erim
Plup.	rēx-eram	<i>I had ruled</i>	rēx-issem
Fut. II.	rēx-erō	<i>I shall have ruled</i>	
Imper- ative	Pr.: reg-e	<i>rule thou,</i>	rēg-ite <i>rule ye</i>
	Ft.: { rēg-itō (reg-itō)	<i>thou shalt rule he shall rule</i>	reg-itōte <i>ye shall rule</i> reg-untō <i>they shall rule</i>
Infini- tive	Pr.: rēg-ere		<i>to rule</i>
	Pf.: rēx-isse		<i>to have ruled</i>
	Ft.: rēct-ūrum etc. esse		<i>to be about to rule</i>
Parti- ciple	Pr.: reg-ēns (reg-entis, 63)		<i>ruling</i>
	Pf.: —		—
	Ft.: rēct-ūrus etc.		<i>about to rule</i>
Gerund	Nom. (reg-ere)		<i>(ruling, to rule)</i>
	Acc. (ad) reg-endum		<i>(to or for) ruling</i>
	Gen. reg-endī		<i>of ruling</i>
	Dat. reg-endō		<i>to or for ruling</i>
	Abl. reg-endō		<i>by ruling</i>

Supine I. rēct-um *in order to rule* (only with verbs of motion; as, ire, venīre, mittere, 585)

Supine II. rēct-ū.....*to rule* (only after fās, facilis etc. 587)

## CONJUGATION

regere, regō, rēxi, rēctum *to rule*

## Indicātīvus

## Coniūnctīvus

reg - or *I am ruled*  
 reg - **eris**  
 reg - itur  
 reg - imur  
 reg - iminī  
 reg - untur

reg - ar  
 reg - āris  
 reg - ātur  
 reg - āmur  
 reg - āminī  
 reg - antur

regēbar *I was (being) ruled*

rég - erer

*I shall be ruled*

reg - ar reg - ēmur  
 reg - **ēris** reg - ēminī  
 reg - ētur reg - entur

rēct - us sum *I was ruled*

rēct - us sim

rēct - us eram *I had been ruled*

rēct - us essem

rēct - us erō *I shall have been ruled*

*Not used*

reg - ī *to be ruled*  
 rēct - um etc. esse *to have been ruled*  
 rēct - **um** īrī (unchangeable) *to be about to be ruled*

— *ruled, having been ruled*

Gerundive - Participle } 1 (*he, she, it*) that **must** be ruled;  
 regendus etc. } 2 **deserving** to be ruled

206. NOTE: The forms of regere in the indicative and subjunctive, *except* those of the *present* and *future* tenses, resemble the corresponding forms of laudāre (195, 197, 191)

of reg - ē, reg - e, rēx -, rēct - taking the place  
 laud - ā laudāv - laudāt - (the endings being alike).

## 207.

## FOURTH

audire, audiō, audīvī, auditum, to hear

## ACTIVUM

	Indicātīvus	Coniūctīvus
	aud-iō <i>I hear, am hear- ing, do hear</i>	aud-iam
Pres.	aud-īs <i>you hear</i>	aud-iās
	aud-it <i>he hears</i>	aud-iat
	aud-īmus <i>we hear</i>	aud-iāmus
	aud-ītis <i>you hear</i>	aud-iātis
	aud-iunt <i>they hear</i>	aud-iant
Impf.	aud-iēbam <i>I was hearing</i>	aud-irem
	<i>I shall hear</i>	
Fut. I.	aud-iam <i>audiēmus</i>	
	aud-iēs <i>audiētis</i>	
	aud-iet <i>audient</i>	
Perf.	audīv-ī <i>I heard, have h.</i>	audīv-erim
Plup.	audīv-eram <i>I have heard</i>	audīv-issem
Fut. II	audīv-erō <i>I shall have h.</i>	
Imper- ative	{ Pr.: aud-ī <i>hear thou</i>	aud-īte <i>hear ye</i>
	{ Ft.: aud-itō <i>thou shalt h.</i>	aud-ītōte <i>ye shall hear</i>
	{ Ft.: aud-ītō <i>he shall hear</i>	aud-iuntō <i>they shall hear</i>
Infini- tive	{ Pr.: aud-īre	<i>to hear</i>
	{ Pf.: audīv-isse etc.	<i>to have heard</i>
	{ Ft.: audit-ūrum esse	<i>to be about to hear</i>
Parti- ciple	{ Pr.: aud-iēns, (audientis, 63)	<i>hearing</i>
	{ Pf.: —	—
	{ Ft.: audit-ūrus, enc.	<i>about to hear</i>
Gerund- ive	{ Nom.: (aud-īre)	<i>(hearing, to hear)</i>
	{ Acc.: (ad) aud-iendum	<i>(to or for) hearing</i>
	{ Gen.: aud-iendī	<i>of hearing</i>
	{ Dat.: aud-iendō	<i>to or for hearing</i>
	{ Abl.: aud-iendō	<i>by hearing</i>
Supine I.	audit-um <i>in order to hear (only with verbs of motion as ire, venire mittere, 585.)</i>	
Supine II.	audit-ū <i>.....to hear (only after fās, facilis etc. 587.)</i>	

## CONJUGATION

audīre, audiō, audīvī, audītum *to hear*

## PASSIVUM

## Indicātīvus

aud-ior *I am heard*  
 aud-**īris**  
 aud-**ītur**  
 aud-**īmur**  
 aud-īminī  
 aud-iuntur

aud-iēbar *I was (being) heard**I shall be heard*

aud-**iar**      aud-iēmur  
 aud-**iēris**    aud-iēminī  
 aud-iētur    aud-ientur

audīt-us sum *I was (have been) heard*audīt-us eram *I had been h.*audīt-us erō *I shall have b. h.*

## Coniūnctīvus

aud-iar

aud-iāris  
 aud-iātur  
 aud-iāmur  
 aud-iāminī  
 aud-iantur

aud-īrer

audīt-us sim

audīt-us essem

## Not used

aud-īrī	<i>to be heard</i>
audīt-um esse	<i>to have been heard</i>
audīt- <b>um īrī</b> (unchangeable)	<i>to be about to be heard</i>

—	—
audīt- <b>us</b> etc.	<i>heard, having been h.</i>
—	—

Gerundive - Participle :	{ 1) (he, she, it) that <b>must</b> be heard
audiendus etc.	{ 2) <b>deserving</b> to be heard

208. NOTE: The forms of audire in the indicative and subjunctive **except** those of the present and future tenses, resemble the corresponding forms of laudāre (195-197; 191, 176),

audiē-, audī-, audīv-, audīt-,                      taking the place  
 of    laudā            laudāv    laudāt (the endings being alike.)

209. VERBS OF THE 3d CONJUGATION IN *IO* AND *IOR*

capere, capiō, cēpī, captum, <i>to take</i>				
		Active	Passive	
		Indicātīvus	Coniūnetīv.	Indicātīvus    Coniūnetīv
<i>Present</i>		cap-iō	cap-iam	cap-ior    cap-iar
		cap-is	cap-iās	<b>cap-eris</b> cap-iāris
		cap-it	cap-iat	cap-itur    cap-iātur
		cap-imus	cap-iāmus	cap-imur    cap-iāmur
		cap-itis	cap-iātis	cap-imini    cap-iāmini
		cap-iunt	cap-iant	cap-iuntur    cap-iantur
<i>Impf.</i>		cap-iēbam	<b>cap-erem</b>	cap-iēbar <b>cap-erer</b>
<i>Fut. 1.</i>		cap-iam		cap-iar
		cap-iēs		cap-iēris
<i>Imper- ative</i>	{ Pres. Fut.	{ <b>cap-e</b> , cap-ite { cap-itō, cap-itōte { (cap-itō, cap-iuntō)		<i>not used</i>
<i>Infinitive</i>	{ Pres. Per. Fut.	{ <b>cap-ere</b> cēp-isse capt-ūrum etc. esse		cap-ī capt-um etc. esse capt-um irī
<i>Participle</i>	{ Pres. Per. Fut.	{ cap-iēns (ientis, 63) — capt-ūrus		— capt-us —
<i>Gerund</i>		(ad) cap-iendum		<i>Future Passive Participle</i> cap-iendus, a, um

210. NOTE: In every form of the present system (197) the final consonant of the stem is immediately followed by **one i**,

except in { the present passive form    caperis  
the imperfect subjunctive forms    caperem, caperēs etc.  
the imperative form    cape  
the infinitive form    capere

The perfect and participial systems are regular (180, 181) :

cēp-ī,    cēp-eram,    cēp-erō etc.  
capt-us,    capt-ūrus,    capt-um etc.



### PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION

The **passive** periphrastic conjugation is formed by combining the participle in **ndus** with the verb **sum**; it denotes an action which **must** or **ought to** take place, comprising the meanings of *dēbeō*, *oportet* and *necesse est*.

Coniugātiō periphrastica āctīva			
<i>Indic.</i>	laudātūrus	sum (eram.....)	<i>I am (was...) about to praise</i>
<i>Subj.</i>	laudātūrus	sim (essem.....)	
<i>Infīn.</i>	{ laudātūrum etc.	esse	<i>to be about to praise</i>
	{ laudātūrum etc.	fuisse	<i>to have been about to praise</i>
Coniugātiō periphrastica passīva			
	{ laudandus	sum	{ <i>I am to be, must be praised</i> { <i>I ought to be, deserve.....</i>
<i>Indic.</i>	{ laudandus	eram	{ <i>I was to be, had..., deserved.....</i>
	{ laudandus	erō	{ <i>I shall deserve to be praised</i>
<i>Subj.</i>	laudandus	sim (essem.....)	
<i>Infīn.</i>	{ laudandum etc.	esse	<i>to deserve to be praised</i>
	{ laudandum etc.	fuisse	{ <i>to be such as is to be praised</i> { <i>to have deserved to be praised</i>

2. The subjunctives in ūrus sum supply the wanting *subjunctives* of the ūm 1.

3. **Transitive** verbs have **all** forms of the future passive participle :  
us, a, um; ī, ae, a; **intransitive** verbs have **only** the form in **um** (with est).

**213. Rule:** The **doer** of the action expressed by the participle in *ndus* is put in the **dative**, except, when it has an object-dative :

puer **mihi** laudandus est       $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{the boy must be praised by me,} \\ \text{i. e.: I must praise the boy} \end{array} \right.$

litterae ei scribendae sunt      *he must write a letter*

tibi cōnātū dēsistendum est      *you must give up the attempt*

tibi pārendum est      *you must obey*

*but* lēgi ā tē pārendum est      *you must obey the law*

*laudandum nōn est*

{ it is necessary **not** to praise  
} it is imprudent, unlawful to praise

NOTE: For the use of the Gerundive - Participle in oblique cases see 576-584.

# DEPONENTS

(Verba dēpōnentia)

Deponents are verbs which have “put aside” (dēpōnere) the active forms that they formerly had.

hortārī, hortātus sum, to exhort			
Indicātīvus			Coniūctīvus
<i>Pres.</i>	{ hortor hortāris etc.	<i>I exhort you exhort</i>	horter hortēris etc.
<i>Impf.</i>	hortābar	<i>I was exhorting</i>	hortārer
<i>Fut. I.</i>	hortābor	<i>I shall exhort</i>	—
<i>Perf.</i>	hortātus sum	<i>I exhorted, have e.</i>	hortātus sim
<i>Plup.</i>	hortātus eram	<i>I had exhorted</i>	hortātus essem
<i>Fut. II.</i>	hortātus erō	<i>I shall have exh.</i>	—
<i>Pres. Imper.</i>	hortāre exhort thou hortāminī exhort ye		
<i>Fut. Imper.</i>	not used		
<i>Pres. Infin.</i>	hortārī	<i>to exhort</i>	
<i>Perf. Infin.</i>	hortātum etc. esse	<i>to have exhorted</i>	
<i>Fut. Infin.</i>	hortātūrum esse	<i>to be about to exhort</i>	
<i>Pres. Partic.</i>	hortāns (antis, 63)	<i>exhorting</i>	
<i>Perf. Partic.</i>	hortātus etc.	<b>having</b> exhorted	
<i>Fut. Partic.</i>	hortātūrus etc.	<i>about to exhort</i>	
<i>Gerund</i>	ad hortandum.....	<i>to or for exhorting</i>	
<i>Fut. Pass. Partic.</i>	hortandus etc.	(he etc.) <b>that must be exhorted</b>	
Supine I.	hortātum,	<i>in order to exhort</i> (585)	
Supine II.	hortātū	<i>.....to exhort</i> (587)	

**215.** The deponents have the following **forms**:

- 1) **all passive** forms, except the infinitive in īrī;
- 2) **some active** forms:
 

the future infinitive	: hortātūrum esse
the pres. and fut. participles	: hortāns, hortātūrus
the gerund	: ad hortandum.....
the supines	: hortātum, hortātū

**216.** All forms of the deponents have **active meaning** except the **participle in ndus**, which has **passive meaning**.

## 217. DEPONENTS OF THE 2d, 3d AND 4th CONJUGATIONS.

II. verēri, veritus sum, *feel awe of*  
*Imperative: verēre, verēmini* (214)

III. sequi secūtus sum, *follow*  
*Present : sequor, séqueris*  
*Imperative: sequere, sequimini*  
 pati, passus sum, *suffer*  
*Present : patior, páteris*  
*Imperative: patere, patimini*

IV. partiri, partitus sum *share*  
*Imperative: partire, partimini*

## 218. PASSIVE OF DEPONENTS (cf. 265)

The passive of deponents is supplied by synonymous expressions or circumlocutions, e. g.:

Active	Passive
hortāri, <i>exhort</i>	monēri
suspiciāri, <i>suspect</i>	in suspiciōnem vocāri
oblīvīscī, <i>forget</i>	obliviōne obrui
adgredi, <i>attack</i>	fit impetus in hostēs
	{ rēs admīrātiōnē habet
	{ rēs admīrātiōnī est
admīrāri, <i>admire</i>	{ reī admīrātiō est
	{ laudāri

219. Some perfect participles of deponents are both active and passive in meaning; when passive, they are not employed to form tenses :

## Passive meaning

pater filiō comitātus (505)	<i>accompanied by his son</i>
exercitus partitus	<i>divided army</i>
agrī dēpopulātī	<i>devastated lands</i>
scelus meditātum	<i>premeditated crime</i>
mala opīnāta	<i>imagined evils</i>

## 220.

## SEMIDEPONENTS

(Sēmīdēpōnentia)

Semideponents have only some passive forms with active meaning, either in the perfect or in the present system:

Soleō, audeō, gaudeō,  
fīdō, cōnfīdō, diffīdō;  
revertor and dēvertor,  
and mereor, pacīscor.

a. solēre	soleō	solitus sum	to be wont
audēre	audeō	ausus sum	venture
gaudēre	gaudeō	gāvīsus sum	rejoice (abl.)
fīdere	fīdēō	fīsus sum	{ rely on
cōnfīdere	cōnfīdō	cōnfīsus sum	
diffidere	diffīdō	diffīsus sum	trust (508)
			distrust (dat.)
b. merērī	mereō	{ meruī { meritus sum	deserve
	Bene dē tē mereor,		I deserve well of you
pacīscī	pacīscor	{ pepigī { pāctus sum	make a contract
revertī	revertor	revertī	return
dēverti	dēvertor	dēvertī	lodge

221. NOTE: 1. Reversus, *having returned*  
 2. { gāvīsus, fīsus, diffīsus  
 { rejoicing, trusting, distrusting  
 3. reversūrus, dēversūrus, *about to return, lodge*

## 222.

## PASSIVE PARTICIPLES WITH ACTIVE MEANING

cēnātus,	having dined;	after dinner
prānsus,	having breakfasted;	after breakfast
iūrātus,	having sworn;	(also pass.: sworn)
pōtus,	having drunk;	(also pass.: drunk)

## 223.

## PASSIVE PARTICIPLES USED AS ADJECTIVES ONLY

adultus,	grown up	nūpta,	married
assuētus,	accustomed	obsoletus,	worn out, obsolete
inveterātus,	deep-rooted	praeteritus,	past
	error inveterātus,		a deep-rooted error
	annus praeteritus,		the past year

## NEUTRAL PASSIVE VERBS

(Neutrālia passīva)

Fierī, perīre, vēnīre are active in form and apparently passive in meaning (292, 295).

## PECULIARITIES IN CONJUGATION

**225.** *a.* The ending **re** is used instead of **ris** in the 2d ps. sg. of the **passive** and the **deponent**, when no ambiguity arises:

laudāris,	laudēris,	laudābāris,	laudārēris,	laudāberis
—	laudēre,	laudābāre,	laudārēre,	laudābere
hortāris,	hortēre,	hortābāre,	hortārēre,	hortābere

*b.* In the perfect system

**vi** is dropped before **s**,**ve** and **v** before **r**,

laudāsse	-āssem	-āstī,	-ārunt	-ārim	-āram	-ārō
dēlēsse	-ēssem	-ēstī,	-ērunt	-ērim	-ēram	-ērō
cognōsse	-ōssem	-ōstī,	-ōrunt	-ōrim	-ōram	-ōrō
audīsse	-īssem	-īstī,	-iērunt	-ierim	-ieram	-ierō

*NOTE:* Lavāre, iuvāre, cavēre retain the *v* of their stems.

*NOTE:* The ending *ēre* is sometimes used instead of *ērunt*:

laudavēre = laudāvērunt

**226.** The present imperative of *dīcere*, *dūcere*, *facere*, *ferre* drops the final *e*: **dīc**, **dūc**, **fac**, **fer**;  
also their compounds, except those of *facere*:

(maledīc), ēdūc, éffer (9, c)

éffice, intérfice, calfáce (9, c)

**227.** The future imperative (*laudātō*, *laudantō*) is found in laws and in poets only; in classical prose the present subjunctive is used instead:

laudet, laudent, *he, they shall praise*

*EXCEPTION:* Of *scīre* only *scītō* and *scītōte* are used as imperatives.

## 228.

## LIST OF VERBS

The verbs of each conjugation are classified chiefly according to the different formations of the perfects:

1. Perfects formed by **v, u, s**;
2. Perfects formed by reduplication;
3. Perfects formed by lengthening or ablaut of the root-vowel;
4. Perfects without apparent change of stem.

229. NOTE: *a.* It will prove useful to recite all the forms of the **three systems** (195-197); *e, g.:*

sectus, sectum esse  
sectūrus, sectūrum esse  
sectum, sectum iri

or the groups of infinitives, participles etc. :

e. g.:	<i>praising</i>	laudāns
	<i>being praised</i>	wanting (575)
	<i>having praised</i>	wanting (574)
	<i>(having been) praised</i>	laudātus
	<i>about to praise</i>	laudātūrus
	<i>one that must be praised</i>	laudandus

*b.* Before enumerating the passive forms of a verb, state whether it is transitive (360), forming a complete passive, as

**laudor, laudāris, laudātur, etc.**

or intransitive (362), forming an impersonal passive only, as

**saltātur, there is dancing**

## 230.

## FIRST CONJUGATION: āre, ō

Like laudāre:

conclāmāre	<i>shout</i>	collocāre	<i>place</i>
commūtāre	<i>change</i>	commemorāre	<i>mention</i>
dēclārāre	<i>make clear</i>	dissipāre	<i>disperse</i>
dēclīnāre	<i>turn aside</i>	explicāre	<i>unfold</i>
dēfatīgāre	<i>tire</i>	flāgitāre	<i>entreat</i>
explōrāre	<i>explore</i>	nāvigāre	<i>(set) sail</i>
ignōrāre	<i>not know</i>	occupāre	<i>seize</i>
salūtāre	<i>greet</i>	renovāre	<i>renew</i>
<b>conclāmō</b>		<b>cóllocō</b>	



## 231.

## PERFECT FORMED BY V

pōtāre	pōtō	pōtāvī	pōtum	<i>drink, tope</i> (222)
--------	------	--------	-------	--------------------------

## 232.

## PERFECTS FORMED BY U

cubāre	cubō	cūbuī	cubitum	<i>recline</i> <sup>1</sup>
domāre	domō	domuī	domitum	<i>tame</i>
vetāre	vetō	vetuī	vétitum	<i>forbid</i> <sup>2</sup>
increpāre	increpō	-crepuī	-crepitum	<i>rebuke</i>
secāre	secō	secuī	sectum	<i>cut</i> <sup>3</sup>
micāre	micō	micuī	—(193)	<i>gleam, quiver</i>
dīmicāre	dīmicō	-micāvī	-micātum	<i>fight</i>
sonāre	sonō	sonuī	—	<i>sound</i> <sup>4</sup>
tonāre	tonō	tonuī	—	<i>thunder</i>

## 233.

## PERFECTS FORMED BY REDUPLICATION

<b>dare</b>	dō	<b>dedī</b>	datum	<i>give</i> <sup>5</sup>
-------------	----	-------------	-------	--------------------------

Only dā, dās, dāns have ā

circumdare	circumdō	-dedī	-datum	<i>surround</i> 6
------------	----------	-------	--------	-------------------

The other compounds of dare belong to  
the 3d conjugation (244)

1) excubāre, excubō, etc., (*keep*) *watch*

2) vetō eum scribere (*acc. c. inf.*)

3) dēsecāre, dēsecō, etc., *cut off*

4) resonāre, rēsonō, etc., *resound*

5) dō tibi librum

6) urbī fossam  
urbem fossā } *circumdare*

**NOTE:** In studying the elements of syntax the beginner should carefully observe the **differences** of the Latin and English **idioms**. Thus he will find, e. g., that the Latin accusative is not always an equivalent for the English objective case:

eum adiuvō	}	<i>I help him</i>
eī auxiliōr		
eī crēdō	}	<i>I believe him</i>
pecūniā egeō		
tuī cōsiliū indigeō	<i>I need your advice</i>	

<b>stāre,</b>	stō	stetī	stātūrus	<i>stand</i>
circumstāre	circumstō	-stetī	—	<i>stand around</i> [acc.]
<b>praestāre</b>	praestō	-stiti	-stātūrus	{ <i>excel</i> 1 <i>vouch for</i> [acc.] <i>fulfil</i>
cōnstāre	cōnstō	-stitī	-stātūrus	{ <i>consist</i> 2 <i>cost</i>
dīstāre	dīstō	—	—	<i>be distant</i>

### 234. PERFECTS FORMED BY LENGTHENING OF VOWEL

<b>iuvāre</b>	iuvō	iūvī	(iūtum)	<i>help</i>
adiuvāre	adiuvō	-iūvī	adiūtum	<i>help</i>
lavāre	lavō	lāvī	lautum	<i>wash</i> 3

## SECOND CONJUGATION: ēre, eō

### 235. PERFECTS FORMED BY V

<b>dēlēre</b>	dēlēō	dēlēvī	dēlētum	<i>destroy</i>
flēre	flēō	flēvī	flētum	<i>weep</i>
dēflēre	dēflēō	-flēvī	-flētum	<i>weep over</i> [acc.]
nēre	neō	nēvī	nētum	<i>spin</i>
complēre	compleō	-plēvī	-plētum	<i>fill up</i>
ciēre	cieō	(cīvī)	(citum)	<i>rouse</i> 4
accēre	acciō	accīvī	accitum	<i>summon</i>

### 236. PERFECTS FORMED BY U

<b>arcēre</b>	arceō	arcuī	—	<i>keep off</i> (tr.) <sup>5</sup>
coērcēre	coerceō	coercuī	coercitum	<i>curb</i>
exercēre	exerceō	exercuī	exercitum	<i>vex, harass</i>
<b>habēre</b>	habeō	habuī	habitum	<i>have</i>
adhibēre	adhibeō	-hibuī	-hibitum	<i>use</i> [ad]
prohibēre	prohibeō	-hibuī	-hibitum	<i>keep off</i> [tr.]
<b>dēbēre</b>	dēbeō	dēbuī	dēbitum	<i>owe, ought</i>
praebēre	praebeō	praebuī	praebitum	<i>offer, grant</i>
admonēre	-moneō	-monuī	-monitum	{ <i>admonish</i> <i>remind</i> <sup>6</sup>
nocēre	noceō	nocuī	nocitum	<i>harm</i> (dat.)
placēre	placeō	placuī	placitum	<i>please</i> (dat.)
displacēre	displaceō	displacuī	displacitum	<i>displease</i> (dat.)

1) **tibi virtūte** praestō, *I excel (surpass) you in manliness (courage)*

2) cōnstāmus ex animō et corpore

3) lauta suppellex, *splendid furniture*

4) percitus, *greatly roused*

5) prōgressū eum arceō

6) **dē** proeliō eum admoneō

(451, note)

tacēre	taceō	tacui	tacitum	<i>be silent</i> 1
reticēre	reticeō	- ticeui	—	<i>keep secret</i>
<b>terrēre</b>	terreō	terruī	territum	<i>frighten</i>
dēterrēre	dēterreō	dēterruī	dēterritum	<i>deter</i> [from-ā]
cēnsēre	cēnseō	cēnsuī	cēnsu m	<i>estimate</i>
suscēnsēre	suscēnseō	suscēnsuī	—	<i>be angry</i> [dat.]
<b>docēre</b>	doceō	docuī	doctum	<i>teach</i> <sup>2</sup>
miscēre	misceō	miscuī	mixtum	<i>mix</i>
tenēre	teneō	tenuī	—	<i>hold</i>
abstinēre	abstineō	abstinuī	—	<i>abstain</i> [abl. or ab]
continēre	contineō	continuī	—	<i>hold together</i>
pertinēre	pertineō	pertinuī	—	<i>extend</i> [i.] <sup>3</sup>
dētīnēre	dētīneō	dētīnuī	dētentum	<i>detain</i>
distīnēre	distīneō	distīnuī	distentum	<i>divide, busy</i>
obtinēre	obtineō	obtinuī	obtentum	<b>hold; secure</b> <i>possession of</i>
retinēre	retineō	retinuī	retentum	<i>retain</i>
sustinēre	sustineō	- tinuī	- tentātum	<i>endure</i>
<b>carēre</b>	careō	caruī	caritūrus	<i>be without</i> (abl.)
dolēre	doleō	doluī	dolitūrus	<i>feel pain</i> <sup>4</sup>
<b>pārēre</b>	pāreō	pāruī	pāritūrus	<i>obey</i> (dat.)
appārēre	appāreō	appāruī	appāritūrus	<i>appear</i>
<b>valēre</b>	valeō	valuī	valitūrus	<i>be strong</i> <sup>5</sup>
calēre	caleō	caluī	—	<b>be warm</b> <sup>6</sup>
egēre	egeō	eguī	—	<i>need</i> (abl.)
indigēre	indigeō	indiguī	—	<i>need</i> [gen. and abl.]
ēmīnēre	ēmineō	ēminuī	—	<i>stand out</i>
flōrēre	flōreō	flōruī	—	<i>bloom</i>
horrēre	horreō	horruī	—	<i>shudder at</i> (abl.)
<b>iacēre</b>	iaceō	iacuī	—	<i>lie</i> <sup>7</sup>
latēre	lateō	latuī	—	<i>be hidden</i>
nitēre	niteō	nituī	—	<i>shine</i> (intr.)
olēre	oleō	oluī	—	<i>smell of</i> (intr.) <sup>8</sup>
patēre	pateō	patuī	—	<i>stand open</i>
silēre	sileō	siluī	—	<i>be silent</i>

1) tacitus, *silent**he had a great, (greater, very great)*

2) The passive of docēre is discere

*influence over the people*3) ad mare pertinēre, *extend to the sea*6) aestuāre, *feel warm*

4) oculi (mihi) dolent

7) in lectō iacet, *but* urbs (po)sita est

caput (mihi) dolet

in monte

5) multum (plūs, plūrimum) valēbat

8) malitiam olet (413, b)

apud populum

studēre	studeō	studuī	—	<i>take pains about</i> <sup>1</sup>
stupēre	stupeō	stupuī	—	<i>be astounded</i>
<b>timēre</b>	timeō	timuī	—	<i>fear</i> <sup>2</sup>
vigēre	vigeō	viguī	—	<i>be vigorous</i>
avēre	aveō	—	—	<i>long for</i>
cōnīvēre	cōnīveō	—	—	<i>half close the eyes</i>
frīgēre	frīgeō	—	—	<i>be cold</i>
imminēre	immineō	—	—	<i>hang over</i> <sup>3</sup>
maerēre	maereō	—	—	<i>mourn</i> (acc. or abl.)
pollēre	polleō	—	—	<i>be potent</i>
splendēre	splendeō	—	—	<i>shine</i> (intr.)

## 237.

## PERFECTS FORMED BY S

<b>augēre</b>	augeō	auxī	<b>auctum</b>	<i>increase</i> (tr.)
torquēre	torqueō	torsī	tortum	<i>twist, torture</i>
abstergēre	abstergeō	-tersi	-tersum	<i>wipe off</i>
<b>iubēre</b>	iubeō	iussī	<b>iussum</b>	<i>order</i> <sup>4</sup>
permulcēre	-mulceō	-mulsī	-mulsum	<i>soothe</i>
<b>rīdēre</b>	rīdeō	<b>rīsī</b>	rīsum	<i>laugh</i> (at acc.)
arrīdēre	arrīdeō	-rīsī	-rīsum	<i>smile at</i> (dat.)
irridēre	irrideō	-rīsī	-rīsum	<i>laugh at</i> (acc.)
<b>suādēre</b>	suādeō	suāsī	suāsum	<i>advise</i> <sup>5</sup> (dat.)
persuādēre	-suādeō	-suāsī	-suāsum	{ <i>convince</i> (dat.) <sup>6</sup> <i>induce</i> (dat.)
ārdēre	ārdeō	ārsī	ārsūrus	<i>be on fire</i>
haerēre	haereō	haesī	haesūrus	<i>stick</i> (intr.)
manēre	maneō	mānsī	mānsūrus	<i>remain</i> <sup>7</sup>
algēre	algeō	alsī	—	<i>feel cold</i>
fulgēre	fulgeō	fulsī	—	<i>flash</i>
indulgēre	indulgeō	indulsī	—	<i>am indulgent</i> (dat.)
urgēre	urgeō	ursī	impulsum	<i>urge, press</i>
lūcēre	lūceō	lūxī	—	<i>be light, beam</i>
lūgēre	lūgeō	lūxī	—	<i>mourn, bewail</i> (acc.)

1) tibi studeō *I am devoted to you*  
artī, virtūtī, litterīs studēre;  
audire studeō (543)

2) timeō nē (nōn), *I fear that (not)*

3) mors tibi imminet

4) eum scribere iubeō (acc. c. inf.)

5) suādeō tibi ut scribās, *I advise you to write*

6) persuāsī tibi ut venirēs, *I induced you to come*

persuādeō tibi nōn interire animās,  
(acc. c. inf.), *I convince you.....*

7) eum domi maneō, *I wait for him...*

## 238. PERFECTS FORMED BY REDUPLICATION

mordēre	mordeō	momordi	morsum	<i>bite</i>
spondēre	spondeō	<b>spopondī</b>	spōnsum	<i>promise</i> <sup>1</sup>
respondēre	respondeō	<b>respondī</b>	respōnsum	<i>answer</i> (dat.)
tondēre	tondeō	totōndī	tōnsum	<i>clip; shave</i>
dētondēre	dētondeō	dētōndī	dētōnsum	<i>clip off</i>
pendēre	pendeō	pependī	—	<i>hang</i> (intr.) <sup>2</sup>
impēdēre	impendeō	—	—	{ <i>overhang</i> <i>threaten</i> (i.)

## 239. PERFECTS FORMED BY LENGTHENING OF VOWEL

cavēre	caveō	cāvī	cautum	{ <i>beware</i> (acc.) <i>take care of</i> (dat.)
favēre	faveō	fāvī	fautum	<i>favor</i> (dat.)
fovēre	foveō	fōvī	fōtum	<i>cherish</i>
movēre	moveō	mōvī	mōtum	<i>move</i> (tr.) <sup>3</sup>
vovēre	voveō	vōvī	vōtum	<i>vow</i>
sedēre	sedeō	<b>sēdī</b>	sessum	<i>sit</i>
circumsedēre	circumsedeō	-sēdī	-sessum	<i>invest</i>
supersedēre	supersedeō	-sēdī	-sessum	<i>refrain</i> (from-abl.)
obsidēre	obsideō	-sēdī	-sessum	<i>besiege</i>
possidēre	possideō	-sēdī	-sessum	<i>possess</i>
<b>vidēre</b>	videō	<b>vīdī</b>	vīsum	<i>see</i>
invidēre	invideō	-vīdī	-vīsum	<i>envy</i> (dat.)
prōvidēre	prōvideō	-vīdī	-vīsum	{ <i>foresee</i> <i>provide</i>

## 240. WITHOUT APPARENT CHANGE OF STEM

prandēre	prandeō	prandī	prānsum	<i>breakfast</i>
----------	---------	--------	---------	------------------

## THIRD CONJUGATION : ere, ō

## 241. PERFECT FORMED BY V

sternere	sternō	strāvī	strātum	<i>cover over</i>
prōsternere	prōsternō	-strāvī	-strātum	<i>prostrate</i> <sup>4</sup>
cernere	cernō	—	—	<i>discern</i>
dēcernere	dēcernō	dēcrēvī	dēcrētum	<i>decree</i>

1) spōnsus, *bridegroom*; spōnsa, *bride*    3) commovēre, permovēre, *stir* (trans.)2) ex eō pendet, *it depends on him*4) cōnsternere, *cover*—like prōsternere

spernere	spernō	sprēvī	sprētum	<i>spurn</i>
oblinere	óblinō	oblēvī	óblitum	<i>daub over</i>
<b>se-rere</b>	serō	sēvī	<b>satum</b>	<i>sow, plant</i>
cōnserrere	conserō	consēvī	consitum	<i>sow with<sup>1</sup></i>
inserere	inserō	īnsēvī	īnsitum	<i>implant<sup>2</sup></i>
<b>sinere</b>	sinō	sīvī	situm	<i>let, allow<sup>3</sup></i>
dēsinerere	dēsino	{ dēstiti dēsīi	dēsitum	<i>cease</i> 4(352, 1)
<b>petere</b>	petō	petīvī	petitum	<i>seek to obtain<sup>5</sup></i>
<b>quaerere</b>	quaerō	quaesīvī	quaesitum	<i>{ seek, look for<sup>6</sup></i> <i>{ ask</i>
conquirere	conquirō	conquisīvī	conquisitum	<i>go in quest of</i>
terere	terō	trīvī	tritum	<i>rub<sup>7</sup></i>
arcessere	arcessō	arcessīvī	arcessitum	<i>{ summon</i>
accersere	accersō	accersīvī	accersitum	<i>{ send for</i>
capessere	capessō	capessīvī	capessitum	<i>seize eagerly</i>
lacessere	lacessō	lacessīvī	lacessitum	<i>provoke(to+abl.)</i>

## 242.

## PERFECTS FORMED BY U

incumbere	incumbō	incubui	incubitus	<i>lay one's self upon</i>
prōcumbere	prōcumbō	prōcubui	prōcubitus	<i>prostrate one's self<sup>8</sup></i>
<b>gi-gnere</b>	gignō	<b>genui</b>	<b>genitus</b>	<i>beget</i>
<b>pōnere</b>	pōnō	<b>posui</b>	<b>positus</b>	<i>{ place, lay</i> <i>{ set, put</i>
antepōnere	antepōnō	anteposui	antepositus	<i>prefer</i>
expōnere	expōnō	exposui	expositus	<i>{ set on shore<sup>9</sup></i> <i>{ explain</i>
impōnere	impōnō	imposui	impositus	<i>place upon</i> <i>(dat.)<sup>10</sup></i>
<b>alere</b>	alō	alui	altus	<i>nourish<sup>11</sup></i>

1) ager cōnsitus arboribus,.....*planted with*2) īnsitus, *inborn, innate*3) eum ire sinō (*acc. c. inf.*)4) timēre dēsino, *I cease fearing*5) ab eō petō ut., *I ask (=beg) him to.....*6) ab (ex) eō quaerō quis sit, ..*ask (=question)...*7) iter tritum, *a beaten way*conterere - *like terere*; tempus c..., *spend, waste time*; prōverbium contritum, *a trite proverb*8) tibi ad pedēs prōcumbō, *I fall at your feet*9) milītēs ex nāvibus expōnere, *land.....*10) cōpiās in nāvēs impōnere, *embark....*11) almus, a, um, *genial, kind*  
*alma māter*



<b>colere</b>	colō	coluī	<b>cultum</b>	<i>{ cultivate { honor</i>
excolere	excolō	excoluī	excultum...	<i>perfect</i>
incolere	incolō	incoluī	—	<i>inhabit 1</i>
<b>cōnsulere</b>	cōnsulō	cōnsuluī	cōnsultum	<i>{ consult (acc.) { take care for (dat.)</i>
<b>cōnserere</b>	cōnserō	cōnseruī	cōnsertum	<i>join, fit<sup>2</sup></i>
<b>dēserere</b>	dēserō	dēseruī	dēsertum	<i>desert</i>
<b>disserere</b>	disserō	disseruī	<b>disputātum</b>	<i>discourse<sup>4</sup></i>
<b>īnserere</b>	īnserō	īnseruī	īnsertum	<i>insert, put into</i>
<b>texere</b>	texō	texuī	textum	<i>weave</i>
molere	molō	moluī	molitum	<i>grind</i>
vomere	vomō	vomuī	vomitum	<i>throw up</i>
fremere	fremō	fremuī	—	<i>growl</i>
gemere	gemō	gemuī	—	<i>groan, sigh</i>
strepere	strepō	strepuī	—	<i>rumble</i>
tremere	tremō	tremuī	—	<i>tremble</i>

## 243.

## PERFECT FORMED BY S

<b>coquere</b>	coquō	coxi	coctum	<i>cook</i>
concoquere	concoquō	concoxi	concoctum	<i>digest</i>
<b>dīcere</b>	dīcō	dīxi	<b>dictum</b>	<i>say (226)<sup>4</sup></i>
indīcere	indīcō	indīxi	indictum	<i>announce 5</i>
indicāre	indicō	indicāvi	indicātum	<i>point out</i>
praedīcere	praedīcō	praedīxi	praedictum	<i>foretell</i>
praedicāre	praedicō	praedicāvi	praedicātum	<i>proclaim</i>
<b>dūcere</b>	dūcō	dūxi	<b>ductum</b>	<i>lead (226)</i>
condūcere	condūcō	condūxi	conductum	<i>hire, rent 6</i>
ēdūcere	ēdūcō	ēdūxi	ēductum	<i>lead forth</i>
educere	educō	educāvi	educātum	<i>bring up</i>
affligere	affligō	afflīxi	afflictum	<i>{ strike down</i>
prōfligāre	prōfligō	prōfligāvi	prōfligātum	<i>{ to the ground</i>
cōnfligere	cōnfligō	cōnflīxi	cōnflitum	<i>be in combat</i>

1) incultus, *untilled*2) manūs cōnserere, *join battle*3) disertus, *skilful in speaking*4) dīc ei quis sis, *tell him  
who you are*5) bellum populō Rōmānō (dat.) indixit,  
*he declared war against.....*diem indīcere, *appoint a day*6) indūcere, *lead in, move to*  
prōdūcere, *lead before*  
sē subdūcere, *withdraw*

<b>regere</b>	<b>regō</b>	<b>rēxī</b>	<b>rēctum</b>	<i>guide, rule</i>
corrigere	corrigō	corrēxī,	corrēctum	<i>improve</i>
dērigere	derigō	dērēxī	dērēctum	<i>{ set straight 1</i> <i>{ direct</i>
porrigere	porrigō	porrēxī	porrēctum	<i>hold forth, offer 2</i>
<b>pergere</b>	pergō	perrēxī	perrēctum	<i>proceed (to go) 3</i>
<b>surgere</b>	surgō	surrēxī	surrēctum	<i>rise, stand up</i>
tegere	tegō	<b>tēxī</b>	<b>tēctum</b>	<i>cover<sup>4</sup></i>
trahere	trahō	trāxī	trāctum	<i>draw, haul</i>
vehere	vehō	vexī	vectum	<i>carry<sup>5</sup></i>
vehī	vehō	vectus sum		<i>be carried</i>
cingere	cingō	cīnxī	cīnctum	<i>gird</i>
tingere	tingō	tīnxī	tīnctum	<i>dye, tinge</i>
<b>iungere</b>	iungō	iūnxī	iūnctum	<i>join, connect<sup>6</sup></i>
coniungere	coniungō	coniūnxī	coniūnctum	<i>join together</i>
disiungere	disiungō	disiūnxī	disiūnctum	<i>disjoin, part</i>
figere	figō	finxī	<b>fictum</b>	<i>form, mould<sup>7</sup></i>
pingere	pingō	pīnxī	<b>pictum</b>	<i>paint</i>
stringere	stringō	strīnxī	<b>strictum</b>	<i>{ graze<sup>8</sup></i> <i>{ strip off</i>
figere	fīgō	fīxī	fīxum	<i>fix, fasten<sup>9</sup></i>
dēmergere.	dēmergō	dēmersī	dēmersum	<i>dip, sink (tr.)<sup>10</sup></i>
dēmergī	dēmergōr	dēmersus	sum	<i>sink (intr.)</i>
ēmergere	ēmergō	ēmersī	ēmersum	<i>emerge (usu. i.)</i>
spargere	spargō	sparsī	sparsum	<i>strew, throw about</i>
aspergere	aspergō	aspersī	aspersum	<i>besprinkle 11</i>
flectere	flectō	flexī	flexum	<i>bend (trans.)<sup>12</sup></i>
cōnectere	cōnectō	(cōnexuī)	cōnexum	<i>tie together</i>
nūbere	nūbō	nūpsī	nūptum	<i>marry<sup>13</sup></i>
	filia alicuī	nūbit		
	filius aliquam	virginem	dūcit	

1) aciem dērigere, *draw up in battle array*

2) tibi dexteram porrigō

3) eādem viā perge

4) prōtegere, *protect—like tegere*5) equō vehī, *ride*6) mē **ad** vōs (ad) iungō, *I join you*7) fictus, *fictitious*; ficti dī8) gladium dēstringere, *draw the*

9) in terrā crucem fīgere [sword]

10) mē dēmergō, *I dive*11) dispergere mīlitēs, *scatter.....*12) dēflectere, *turn aside (tr. and*13) nūpta, *married* intr.)nūbō, *veil myself for.....*

<b>scribere</b>	scribō	<b>scripsi</b>	scriptum	<i>write</i> <sup>1</sup>
cōscribere	cōscribō	cōscripsi	cōscriptum	<i>levy, enroll</i> 2
carpere	carpō	carpsi	carptum	<i>pluck; carp at</i>
dēcerpere	dēcerpō	dēcerpsi	dēcerptum	<i>pluck off</i>
scalpere	scalpō	scalpsi	scalptum	<i>engrave (of surface work)</i>
insculpere	insculpō	insculpsi	insculptum	<i>chisel, carve in (of deeper work)</i>
irrēpere	irrēpō	irrēpsi	irrēptum	<i>creep in</i>
serpere	serpō	serpsi	—	<i>creep</i>
contemnere	contemnō	contempsī	-temptum	<i>value little</i>
<b>gerere</b>	<b>gerō</b>	<b>gessi</b>	<b>gestum</b>	<i>carry on</i> <sup>3</sup>
digerere	dīgerō	dīgessi	digestum	<i>arrange</i>
combūrere	combūrō	combussi	combustum	<i>burn up (tr.)</i> <sup>4</sup>
ambūrere	ambūrō	ambussi	ambustum	<i>scorch</i>
premere	premō	pressī	pressum	<i>press</i>
exprimere	exprimō	expressī	expressum	<i>{ press out 5</i> <i>{ express,</i> <i>{ portray</i>
opprimere	opprimō	oppressī	oppressum	<i>press down</i>
<b>cēdere</b>	<b>cēdō</b>	<b>cessī</b>	<b>cessum</b>	<i>give place to</i> <i>(463)</i>
accēdere	accēdō	accessī	accēssum	<i>approach (ad)</i>
claudere	claudō	clausī	clausum	<i>close</i>
inclūdere	inclūdō	inclūsī	inclūsum	<i>shut up</i> 6
interclūdere	interclūdō	interclūsī	interclūsum	<i>shut off, cut off</i> 7
<b>dīvidere</b>	<b>dīvidō</b>	<b>dīvisī</b>	<b>dīvisum</b>	<i>separate, divide</i>
laedere	laedō	laesī	laesum	<i>trouble; offend</i> 8
allidere	allidō	allisī	allisum	<i>dash against</i>
lūdere	lūdō	lūsī	lūsum	<i>play</i> (502)
ēlūdere	ēlūdō	ēlūsī	ēlūsum	<i>elude, mock</i> 9
plaudere	plaudō	plausī	plausum	<i>applaud (dat.)</i>
explōdere	explōdō	explōsī	explōsum	<i>hoot off (acc.)</i>

1) **ad** tē scribō2) prōscribere, *outlaw*3) bellum gerere, *wage war*4) rēs gestae, *exploits*5) dēflagrāre, *burn down* (intr.)6) pecūniam vī exprimere, *extort...*ēius mōrēs ōrātiōne exprimere,  
*portray, describe his character*aliquid Latīnē exprimere, *render, translate into Latin*6) conclūdere, *enclose, end, infer*7) hostibus commeātūs } interclūdere  
hostēs commeātū }

cut off the enemies from supplies

8) fīdem laedere, *break one's word*9) ēlūdere - illūdere eum, *jeer at him*

<i>rādere</i>	<i>rādō</i>	<i>rāsī</i>	<i>rāsum</i>	<i>scrape, shave</i>
<i>rōdere</i>	<i>rōdō</i>	<i>rōsī</i>	<i>rōsum</i>	<i>gnaw</i>
<i>trūdere</i>	<i>trūdō</i>	<i>trūsī</i>	<i>trūsum</i>	<i>thrust, shove</i>
<i>invādere</i>	<i>invādō</i>	<i>-vāsī</i>	<i>-vāsum</i>	<i>invade (in c. acc.)</i>
<i>ēvādere</i>	<i>ēvādō</i>	<i>-vāsī</i>	<i>-vāsum</i>	<i>escape, become</i>
<i>vādere</i>	<i>vādō</i>	—	—	<i>go (rapidly)</i>
<b>mittere</b>	<b>mittō</b>	<b>mīsī</b>	<b>missum</b>	<i>send</i>
<i>āmittere</i>	<i>āmitto</i>	<i>-mīsī</i>	<i>-missum</i>	<i>lose (by accident)</i>
<i>committere</i>	<i>committō</i>	<i>-mīsī</i>	<i>-missum</i>	<i>intrust</i>
<i>dimittere</i>	<i>dimitto</i>	<i>-mīsī</i>	<i>-missum</i>	<i>dismiss 1</i>
<i>metere</i>	<i>metō</i>	<i>secuī</i>	<i>messum</i>	<i>mow, reap</i>
<i>dēmetere</i>	<i>dēmetō</i>	<i>dēsecuī</i>	<i>dēmessum</i>	<i>cut off, reap</i>

## 244.

## PERFECTS FORMED BY REDUPLICATION

<b>cadere</b>	<i>cadō</i>	<b>cécidī</b>	<i>cāsūrus</i>	<i>fall (intr.)<sup>2</sup></i>
<i>incidere</i>	<i>incidō</i>	<i>incidī</i>	<i>(incāsūrus)</i>	<i>fall into</i>
<i>occidere</i>	<i>occidō</i>	<i>occidī</i>	<i>occāsūrus</i>	<i>go down, die</i>
<i>recidere</i>	<i>recidō</i>	<i>reccidī</i>	<i>recāsūrus</i>	<i>fall back 3</i>
<i>concidere</i>	<i>concidō</i>	<i>concidī</i>	—	<i>fall down</i>
<b>caedere</b>	<i>caedō</i>	<b>cecīdī</b>	<i>caesum</i>	<i>hew, fell, beat</i>
<i>incidere</i>	<i>incidō</i>	<i>incidī</i>	<i>incisum</i>	<i>cut into 4</i>
<i>occidere</i>	<i>occidō</i>	<i>occidī</i>	<i>occisum</i>	<i>kill, slay</i>
<b>currere</b>	<i>currō</i>	<b>cucúrri</b>	<i>cursum</i>	<i>run (intr.)</i>
<i>accurrere</i>	<i>accurrō</i>	{ <i>accurri</i> { <i>accucurri</i>	<i>accursum</i>	<i>run to a place 5</i>
<i>recurrere</i>	<i>recurrō</i>	<i>recurri</i>	<i>recursum</i>	<i>run back</i>
<i>succurrere</i>	<i>succurrō</i>	<i>succurri</i>	<i>succursum</i>	<i>hasten to aid</i>

Note: The other compounds are conjugated like *accurrere*.

<b>fallere</b>	<i>fallō</i>	<b>fefellī</b>	<i>dēceptum</i>	<i>deceive</i>
<i>refellere</i>	<i>refellō</i>	<i>refelli</i>	<i>refūtātum</i>	<i>disprove, rebut</i>
<b>parcere</b>	<i>parcō</i>	<b>pepércī</b>	<i>temperātum</i>	<i>spare (dat.)</i>
<i>cōservāre</i>	<i>cōservō</i>	<i>-servāvī</i>	<i>-servātum</i>	<i>spare (acc.)</i>

1) *dēmittere*, *let down*4) *abscidere* and *praecidere*, *cut off*2) *animō cadere*, *lose courage**concidere*, *cut to pieces*3) *suspiciō in eum recidit*5) *ad tē accurrō*

pellere	pellō	<b>pépulī</b>	pulsum	<i>drive out, push</i> <sup>1</sup>
appellere	appellō	appulī	appulsum	<i>drive toward</i> <sup>2</sup>
appellāre	appellō	appelāvī	appelātum	<i>address, accost</i>
repellere	repellō	<b>reppulī</b>	repulsum	<i>drive back</i>
<b>pendere</b>	pendō	pependī	pēnsūm	<i>weigh, pay</i>
impendere	impendō	impendī	impēnsūm	<i>expend</i> <sup>3</sup>
suspendere	suspendō	suspendī	suspēnsūm	<i>hang up</i> (tr.)
<b>canere</b>	canō	<b>cécinī</b>	cantātum	<i>sing, sound</i> <sup>4</sup>
concinere	concinō	concinuī	—	<i>agree together</i>
pungere	pungō	pūpugī	pūnctum	<i>sting, puncture</i> <sup>5</sup>
compungere	compungō	-pūnxī	compūnctum	<i>sting severely</i>
<b>tangere</b>	tangō	<b>tétigī</b>	tāctum	<i>touch</i>
attingere	attingō	attigī	(tāctum)	<i>border on, reach</i> <sup>6</sup>
<b>tendere</b>	tendō	<b>teténdī</b>	tentum	<i>stretch</i> (tr.) <sup>7</sup>
attendere	attendō	attendī	attentum	<i>attend (to acc.)</i> <sup>8</sup>
contendere	contendō	contendī	contentum	<i>exert (myself)</i>
extendere	extendō	extendī	{ extentum extēnsūm	<i>extend</i> (tr.)
ostendere	ostendō	ostendī	ostentātum	<i>show</i>
abdere	abdō	<b>ābdidī</b>	abditum	<i>put away, hide</i> <sup>9</sup>
crēdere	crēdō	crēdidī	crēditum	<i>believe, trust</i> dat.(10)
dēdere	dēdō	dēdidī	dēditum	<i>give up</i> <sup>11</sup>
ēdere	ēdō	ēdidī	ēditum	<i>give out</i>
trādere	trādō	trādidī	trāditum	<i>transmit</i>
reddere	reddō	<b>reddidī</b>	redditum	<i>give back</i>

1) (ex) patriā pellere, *exile* (486)2) nāvem ad rīpam appellere, *land*

3) pecūniam in rēs vāpās impendere

4) canit corvus, canit homō vōce,

fidibus, canere, *play the harp* (502)

5) pungit eum quod scrībīs

6) Rhēnum attingere

7) manūs ad adiquem tendere

8) animum attendere **ad**stupōrem attendite, *mark the stupidity*9) addere, **add**; condere, *found*;prōdere, *betray*10) mihi crēde (*Position!*)rēs suās alicui crēdere, *entrust, commit*11) hostī sē dēdere, *surrender*



## 245.

## PRESENT WITH REDUPLICATION

bi-bere	bibō	bibī	pōtum	<i>drink</i>
cōn-si-sterē	cōnsistō	cōnstitī	—	<i>} place one's self,</i> <i>} halt (intr.)<sup>1</sup></i>
dēsistere	dēsistō	dēstitī	—	<i>leave off (from =</i> <i>abl.)</i>
resistere	resistō	restitī	—	<i>resist (dat.)</i>
circumsistere	circumsistō	-stetī	—	<i>surround</i>

## 246.

## REDUPLICATION LOST

percellere	percellō	pérculī	perculsum	<i>knock down</i>
antecellere	antecellō	} praestitī—	—	<i>excel<sup>2</sup></i>
excellere	excellō			
contundere	contundō	cóntudī	contūsum	<i>crush, bruise</i>
obtundere	obtundō	óbtudī	obtūsum	<i>blunt (the mind)</i>
retundere	retundō	rétudī	retūsum	<i>blunt (the sword)</i>
findere	findō	fidī	fissum	<i>split</i>
diffindere	diffindō	diffidī	diffissum	<i>cleave asunder</i>
scindere	scindō	scidī	scissum	<i>tear asunder</i>
rescindere	rescindō	réscidī	rescissum	<i>tear down, annul</i>

## 247.

## PERFECTS FORMED BY LENGTHENING OF VOWEL

emere	emō	ēmī	ēemptum	<i>buy<sup>3</sup></i>
coemere	coemō	-ēmī	-ēemptum	<i>buy up</i>
adimere	adimō	adēmī	adēemptum	<i>take away</i> <i>(from-dat.)</i>
dīrimere	dīrimō	dīrēmī	dīrēemptum	<i>separate, end<sup>4</sup></i>
cōmere	cōmō	<b>cōmpsi</b>	cōmptum	<i>adorn, dress</i>
dēmere	dēmō	dēmpsi	dēmptum	<i>take away</i> <i>(from-dat.)</i>
prōmere	prōmō	prōmpsi	prōmptum	<i>take out</i>
sūmere	sūmō	sūmpsi	sūmptum	<i>take (for myself)</i>
legere	legō	<b>lēgī</b>	<b>lēctum</b>	<i>read</i>
lēgare	lēgō	lēgāvī	lēgātum	<i>send as legate</i>
perlegere	perlegō	perlēgī	perlēctum	<i>read through<sup>5</sup></i>
colligere	colligō	collēgī	collēctum	<i>collect, gather</i>
dēligere	dēligō	dēlēgī	dēlēctum	<i>choose<sup>6</sup></i>

1) eō in locō cōnsistit (521)

hīc (here) cōnsistimus

2) **tibi** antecellō**vōbis** (Plural!) excellō

3) domum magnā pecūniā ēmi

4) interimere, do away with

5) relegere, read again

6) eligere, sēligere = dēligere



diligere	diligō	dilēxi	dilēctum	<i>esteem highly</i> <sup>1</sup>
intelligere	intelligō	intellēxi	intellēctum	<i>see into</i>
neglegere	neglegō	neglēxi	neglēctum	<i>neglect, slight</i>
<b>agere</b>	agō	ēgi	āctum	<i>drive, act, do</i>
peragere	peragō	perēgi	perāctum	<i>carry through</i> <sup>2</sup>
abigere	abigō	abēgi	abāctum	<i>drive away</i> <sup>3</sup>
subigere	subigō	subēgi	subāctum	<i>subjugate</i>
ambigere	ambigō	—	—	<i>dispute about</i>
<b>cōgere</b>	cōgō	coēgi	coāctum	<i>gather, force</i> <sup>4</sup>
dēgere	dēgō	dēgi	āctum	<i>spend</i> <sup>5</sup>
frangere	frangō	frēgi	frāctum	<i>break to pieces</i>
cōnfringere	cōnfringō	cōnfrēgi	cōnfrāctum	<i>dash to pieces</i> <sup>6</sup>
relinquere	relinquō	reliquī	relictum	<i>leave behind</i> <sup>7</sup>
<b>vincere</b>	vincō	vīci	victum	<i>conquer</i>
convincere	convincō	convīci	convictum	<i>convict</i> <sup>8</sup>
<b>rumpere</b>	rumpō	rūpi	ruptum	<i>burst, rend</i> <sup>9</sup>
corruptere	corruptō	corrūpi	corruptum	<i>bribe, spoil</i> <sup>10</sup>
<b>fundere</b>	fundō	fūdī	fūsum	<i>pour, rout</i>

## 248.

## PERFECTS WITHOUT APPARENT CHANGE OF STEM

<b>accendere</b>	accendō	accendī	accēnsūm	<i>kindle(above)</i> <sup>11</sup>
incendere	incendō	incendī	incēnsūm	<i>k.(on every side of)</i>
succendere	succendō	succendī	succēnsūm	<i>k.(underneath)</i>
scandere	scandō	—	—	<i>mount, climb</i>
ascendere	ascendō	ascendī	ascēnsūm	<i>mount, climb</i> <sup>12</sup>
dēscendere	dēscendō	dēscendī	dēscēnsūm	<i>descend (dē)</i>
excūdere	excūdō	excūdī	excūsūm	<i>hammer out</i>
dēfendere	dēfendō	dēfendī	dēfēnsūm	<i>ward off</i> <sup>13</sup> <i>defend</i>
prehendere	prehendō	prehendī	prehēnsūm	<i>lay hold of</i>
dēprehendere	dēprehendō	dēprehendī	dēprehēnsūm	<i>surprise</i>

1) nunc eum amō, ante diligēbam

2) circumagere, *drive around*3) adigere, *drive back*

4) eum emere cōgit (551)

5) vītam in egestāte dēgere, *live in want*6) portās refringere, *break open*.....7) dēlinquere, *to fail in one's duty*

8) tē furtī convincō (452)

9) vincula, foedus rumpere

10) prōrumpere, *burst forth*11) lūmen accenditur (*is lit*)domus incenditur (*is set on fire*)rogus succenditur (*is lighted*)12) Alpēs trāscendere, *cross*.....nāvem cōnscendere, *embark*

13) bellum dēfendere; castra ab hoste d...

cōnsidere	cōnsidō	cōnsēdī —	<i>sit down</i> <sup>1</sup>
possidere	possidō	possēdī	possessum <i>occupy</i>

NOTE: -sēdī and -sessum are forms of sedēre.

possidēre	possidēō	possēdī	possessum	<i>possess</i>
pandere	pandō	pandī	passum	<i>spread out</i> <sup>2</sup>
vertere	vertō	vertī	versum	<i>turn</i> <sup>3</sup>
animadvertere	-vertō	-vertī	-versum	{ <i>observe</i> { <i>punish</i> (in eum)
ēvertere	ēvertō	ēvertī	ēversum	<i>overturn, destroy</i> <sup>4</sup>
vellere	vellō	velli	vulsum	<i>pluck, tear out</i>
vīsere	vīsō	vīsī	—	<i>view; visit</i> <sup>5</sup>
angere	angō	sollicitāvī	sollicitatum	<i>trouble</i>
furere	furō	insānīvī	—	<i>be furious</i>
vergere	vergō	—	—	<i>stretch</i> (i.), <i>slope</i> <sup>6</sup>

### Verbs in uō (vō)

#### 249. PERFECTS WITHOUT ANY APPARENT CHANGE OF STEM

acuere	acuō	acui	{ acūtus (adj.) { <i>sharp, pointed,</i> { <i>sharpen</i> <sup>7</sup>
--------	------	------	---

NOTE: Lacking forms may be expressed by acūtum reddere

<b>arguere</b>	arguō	arguī	accūsātum	<i>charge with</i> <sup>8</sup>
	argūtus (adj.), <i>expressive; sagacious</i>			
coarguere	coarguō	coarguī	convictum	<i>convict, prove</i> <sup>9</sup>
redarguere	redarguō	redarguī	refūtātum	<i>refute</i>
imbuiere	imbuō	imbuī	imbūtum	<i>moisten</i>
exuere	exuō	exuī	exūtum	<i>put off</i> <sup>10</sup>
induere	induō	induī	indūtum	<i>put on</i> <sup>11</sup>
minuere	minuō	minuī	minūtum	<i>diminish</i> (tr.)
<b>statuere</b>	statuō	statuī	statūtum	<i>set up, decide</i> <sup>12</sup>
cōstituere	cōstituō	cōstituī	-stitūtum	<i>determine</i> <sup>13</sup>

1) hic, in umbrā cōnsidāmus (521)

2) mandere, *chew* = *like* pandere

3) terga vertere, *flee*

4) āvertere, *turn away*

5) invīsere, *visit* = *like* vīsere

6) ad septentrionēs vergere

7) serram (*saw*), mentem acuere

acūtus homō; acutē respondēre

8) eum sceleris }  
capitis } arguō, accūsō (452)

9) eum avāritiae coarguō

10) hūmānitātem exuere

11) ānulum mihi induō

12) statuam ei statuēmus

13) idem facere cōstituīt (543, 698)

tribuere	tribuō	tribuī	tribūtum	<i>impart, grant</i>
luere	luō	luī	ablūtum	<i>wash off</i>
luere	luō	luī	expiātum	<i>expiate</i>
abluere	abluō	abluī	ablūtum	<i>wash off</i> <sup>1</sup>
abnuere	abnuō	abnuī	recūsātum	<i>refuse</i> <sup>2</sup>
adnuere	adnuō	adnuī	concessum	<i>nod assent to</i> <sup>3</sup>
respuere	respuō	respuī	repudiātum	<i>reject, spurn</i> <sup>4</sup>
ruere	ruō	ruī	ruitūrus	<i>fall, rush</i> <sup>5</sup>
dīruere	dīruō	dīruī	dīrutum	<i>demolish</i>
obruere	obruō	obruī	obrutum	<i>overwhelm</i> <sup>6</sup>
congruere	congruō	congruī	—	<i>agree</i> <sup>7</sup>
metuere	metuō	metuī	—	<i>fear</i> <sup>8</sup>
<b>solvere</b>	<b>solvō</b>	<b>solvī</b>	<b>solūtum</b>	<i>loose, pay</i> <sup>9</sup>
persolvere	persolvō	persolvī	persolūtum	<i>pay</i> <sup>10</sup>
volvere	volvō	volvī	volūtum	<i>roll</i>

## 250.

## PERFECTS FORMED BY S

distinguere	distinguō	distīnxī	distīnctum	<i>distinguish</i> <sup>11</sup>
exstinguere	exstinguō	exstīnxī	exstīnctum	<i>put out</i>
unguere } ungere }	unguō ungō	ūnxī	ūnctum	<i>anoint</i>
fluere } St. flug }	fluō	fluxī	{ fluxus, adj. { fleeting	<i>flow</i> <sup>12</sup>
struere } St. strug }	struō	strūxī	strūctum	<i>build</i> <sup>13</sup>
<b>vīvere</b> } St. vig }	<b>vīvō</b>	<b>vīxī</b>	<b>vīctūrus</b>	<i>live</i>

1) diluere, wash away; crimen d...

2) nihil tibi abnuō

3) tōtō capite id adnuō

4) spuere, spuō, spuī, —, spit

5) sciēns in mala ruit

6) corruere, corruō, corruī, —, fall down

7) tēcum congruō

8) metuō nē(nōn) I fear that (not)

9) nāvem solvere, set sail

10) prōmissa, vōta persolvere

11) vērā ā fālsis distinguere

12) dīvitiis adfluēns, overflowing with r.

13) aciem īnstruere, place in battle array

## THIRD CONJUGATION : ere, iō

## 251.

## PERFECTS FORMED BY V OR U

(For conjugation see page 76)

cupere	cupiō	cupīvī	cupitum	<i>desire, long for</i>
sapere	sapiō	sapīvī	—	<i>be wise, savor of</i>
rapere	rapīō	rapuī	raptum	<i>rob; snatch</i>
diripere	diripiō	diripuī	direptum	<i>plunder</i>
cōnspicere	cōnspiciō	cōnspexī	-spectum	<i>get sight of</i>
suspiciere	suspiciō	suspexī	suspectum	<i>look up to</i>
εuspicārī	suspīcor	suspīcātus sum		<i>suspect</i>
ēlicere	ēliciō	<b>ēlicuī</b>	ēlicitum	<i>lure forth</i>

## 252.

## PERFECTS FORMED BY S

inlicere	inliciō	<b>inlēxī</b>	inlectum	<i>{ seduce</i>
pellicere	pelliciō	pellēxī	pellectum	<i>{ inveigle</i>
adlicere	adliciō	adlēxī	—	<i>allure</i>
concutere	concutiō	concussī	concussum	<i>shake</i>
percutere	percutiō	percussī	percussum	<i>strike, pierce</i>

## 253.

## PERFECT FORMED BY REDUPLICATION

parere	pariō	peperī	<i>{ partum</i>	<i>bring forth</i>
			<i>{ paritūrus</i>	
	partus, acquired;		parātus, ready	

## 254.

## PERFECTS FORMED BY LENGTHENING OF VOWEL

capere	capiō	cēpī	captum	<i>take, seize</i>
accipere	accipiō	accēpī	acceptum	<i>get, receive</i>
dēcipere	dēcipiō	dēcēpī	dēceptum	<i>cheat</i>
suscipere	suscipiō	suscēpī	susceptum	<i>take up</i>
<b>facere</b>	faciō	fēcī	factum	<i>make, do</i>

## Passive fierī etc., 295

assuē <b>facere</b>	assuē <b>faciō</b>	assuēfēcī	assuē <b>factum</b>	<i>accustom (551)</i>
pate <b>facere</b>	pate <b>faciō</b>	patefēcī	pate <b>factum</b>	<i>open</i>
vacuē <b>facere</b>	vacuē <b>faciō</b>	vacuēfēcī	vacuē <b>factum</b>	<i>empty</i>

cōn <b>fic</b> ere	cōn <b>fici</b> ō	cōn <b>fēc</b> ī	cōn <b>fectum</b>	<i>accomplish</i>
a <b>ff</b> icere	a <b>ffici</b> ō	a <b>ffēc</b> ī	a <b>ffectum</b>	<i>affect</i> <sup>1</sup>
dē <b>fic</b> ere	dē <b>fici</b> ō	dē <b>fēc</b> ī	dē <b>fectum</b>	<i>fail</i>
e <b>ff</b> icere	e <b>ffici</b> ō	e <b>ffēc</b> ī	e <b>ffectum</b>	<i>effect</i> (ut)
inter <b>fic</b> ere	inter <b>fici</b> ō	inter <b>fēc</b> ī	inter <b>fectum</b>	<i>kill</i>
per <b>fic</b> ere	per <b>fici</b> ō	per <b>fēc</b> ī	per <b>fectum</b>	<i>complete</i>
praef <b>ic</b> ere	praef <b>icio</b>	praef <b>ēc</b> ī	praef <b>ectum</b>	<i>place in authority</i> <i>over</i> (dat.)
re <b>fic</b> ere	re <b>fici</b> ō	re <b>fēc</b> ī	re <b>fectum</b>	<i>restore</i>

The **Pass.** of **-faciō** is **-fiō**, **Accent:** assuēfácis

The **Pass.** of **-ficiō** is **-ficior**; **Accent:** cónficeis (9, c.)

<b>iacere</b>	iaciō	iēcī	iactum	<i>throw</i>
ab <b>ic</b> ere	abiciō(5, 11)	abiēcī	ab <b>iectum</b>	<i>throw away</i>
prō <b>ic</b> ere	prōiciō	prōiēcī	prō <b>iectum</b>	<i>fling away</i>
<b>fodere</b>	fodiō	fōdī	<b>fossu<b>m</b></b>	<i>dig</i>
cōn <b>fod</b> ere	cōn <b>fodi</b> ō	cōn <b>fōd</b> ī	cōn <b>fossu<b>m</b></b>	<i>stab</i>
<b>fugere</b>	fugiō	fūgī	(fugitūrus)	<i>flee</i>
au <b>fug</b> ere	au <b>fugi</b> ō	au <b>fūg</b> ī		<i>flee away</i>
cōn <b>fug</b> ere	cōn <b>fugi</b> ō	cōn <b>fūg</b> ī		<i>flee to</i> (in, ad)

1) **afficere aliquem** (or **aliquid**) **aliquā rē** requires various translations; as, *bestow* or *inflict upon*, *grace* or *visit with*; the phrase is often conveniently rendered by changing the Latin Ablative into a corresponding English verb; as,

**afficere aliquem**

sepultūrā, *bury*; nōmine(rēgis), *style*; praemiō, *reward*  
timōre, *terrify*; molestiā, *trouble*; exsiliō, *banish*

timēbant nē armīs trāditis supplicio } *they were afraid of being put to death in*  
afficerentur } *case they should deliver up their arms*

## 255.

(Verba incohātīva)

Inchoatives derive their name from incohāre, *begin*, because they usually denote the beginning of an action or condition.

**- scō = begin to**

## 256.

## PRIMARY INCHOATIVES

<b>discere</b>	discō	didici	—	<i>learn</i>
dēdiscere	dēdiscō	dēdidici	—	<i>unlearn. forget</i>
<b>poscere</b>	poscō	poposci	postulātum	<i>demand (425.697)</i>
dēposcere	dēposcō	dēpoposci	—	<i>demand earnestly</i>
reposcere	reposcō	repetivi	repetitum	<i>demand back</i>
pāscere	pāscō	pāvī	pāstum	<i>graze (tr.)</i>
pāsci	pāscor	pāstussum	—	<i>graze (intr.)</i>
crēscere	crēscō	crēvī	—	<i>grow</i>
nōscere	nōscō	nōvī	—	<i>come to know</i>
nōvī, <i>I know</i> ; (547, Note) nōtus (adj.) <i>known</i>				
cognōscere	cognōscō	cognōvī	cognitum	<i>get to know</i>
cognōvī, <i>I know well</i>				
agnōscere	agnōscō	agnōvī	agnitum	<i>acknowledge</i>
ignōscere	ignōscō	ignōvī	ignōtum	<i>forgive (dat.)</i>
ignōtus (adj.), <i>unknown</i>				
quiēscere	quiēscō	quiēvī	quiētūrus	<i>repose</i>
quiētus (adj.), <i>quiet</i>				
cōnsuēscere	cōnsuēscō	cōnsuēvī	—	<i>accustom oneself</i>
cōnsuēvī, <i>am accustomed</i> ; assuētus (a.) <i>accustomed</i>				
labōre assuētus, <i>accustomed to labor</i>				
assuēvī = solēō; assuēveram = solēbam				

## 257.

## INCOHATIVA VERBALIA

(Root-word a Verb)

Perfect of inchoative - Perfect of root-verb.

Only scīscere has a pf. part.

inveterāre	inveterāscere	inveterāvī	<i>become fixed</i>
render old	inveterātus (adj.),	deep-rooted	
(olēre, grow)	adolēscere	adolēvī	<i>grow up</i>
	adultus (adj.),	grown up	
	obsolēscere	obsolēvī	<i>fall into disuse</i>
	obsolētus (adj.),	worn out	
flōrēre	efflōrēscere	efflōruī	<i>begin to flourish</i>
horrēre	perhorrēscere	perhorruī	<i>begin to shudder</i>
senēre, be old	cōnsenēscere	cōnsenuī	<i>grow old, weak</i>
	amicus cōnsenēscit, vīres, lēgēs	cōnsenēscunt	
tacēre	conticēscere	conticuī	<i>cease speaking</i>
timēre	pertimēscere	pertimuī	<i>begin to dread</i>



valēre	convalescere	convalui	<i>regain health</i>
ardēre	exardescere	exarsi	<i>become inflamed</i>
alere	coalēscere	coalui	<i>grow together</i>
vivere	reviviscere	revixi revicturus	<i>revive</i>
cupere	concupiscere	concupivi	<i>covet</i>
dormire	obdormiscere	obdormivi	<i>fall asleep</i>
scire	sciscere	scivi scitum (79)	<i>decree</i>
	mihi mortem consciscō,		<i>commit suicide</i>
	ā rēge dēsciscō,		<i>fall away from ..</i>

## 258.

## INCOHATIVA NOMINALIA

crēber	percrēbrēscere	percrēbrui	<i>gain ground</i>
dūrus	obdūrēscere	obdūruī	<i>become insensible</i>
mātūrus	mātūrēscere	mātūruī	<i>grow ripe</i>
mūtus	obmūtēscere	obmūtuī	<i>grow dumb</i>
vānus	ēvānēscere	ēvānuī	<i>vanish</i>
gravis	ingravēscere	—	<i>become burdensome</i>
puer	repuerāscere	—	<i>become a boy again</i>

## FOURTH CONJUGATION: īre, iō

## 259.

## PERFECTS FORMED BY V

Like audire:

condire	season, embalm	lēnīre	<i>soften, soothe</i>
custōdire	watch over (acc.)	mūnīre	<i>fortify</i>
ērūdire	bring up	servīre	<i>serve (dat.)</i>

With Irregularities:

scire	sciō	scivī	scitum	<i>know (227)</i>
nescire	nesciō	nescivī	nescitum	<i>not to know<sup>1</sup></i>
Instead of pres. part, use: ignōrāns, īnsciēns				
sepelire	sepeliō	sepelivī	sepultum	<i>bury<sup>2</sup></i>

## 260.

## PERFECTS FORMED BY U

aperire	aperiō	aperuī	apertum	<i>open, uncover<sup>3</sup></i>
operire	operiō	operuī	opertum	<i>cover</i>
salire	saliō	saluī	—	<i>leap, hop</i>
dēsilire	dēsiliō	dēsiluī	—	<i>leap down<sup>4</sup></i>

1) utrum sciēns fēcīt an īnsciēns?

2) in urbe nē sepelitō nēve ūritō

3) litterās, occulta, caput aperire

4) ex equō (ad pedēs) dēsilire, to dismount

## 261.

## PERFECTS FORMED BY S

refercīre	referciō	refersī	refertum	<i>stuff, fill up</i> <sup>1</sup>
fulcīre	fulciō	fulsī	fultum	<i>prop up</i>
saepīre	saepiō	saepsī	saeptum	<i>hedge in</i>
sancīre	sanciō	sānxī	sānctum	<i>ratify</i> <sup>2</sup>
sarcīre	sarciō	sarsī	sartum	<i>repair, mend</i>
vincīre	vinciō	<b>vīnxī</b>	<b>vīnctum</b>	<i>bind, fetter</i>
haurīre	hauriō	hausī	haustum	<i>draw</i> <sup>3</sup>
<b>sentīre</b>	sentiō	sēnsī	sēnsūm	<i>feel, deem</i> <sup>4</sup>
cōnsentīre	cōnsentiō	cōnsēnsī	cōnsēnsūm	<i>agree</i> <sup>5</sup>
dissentīre	dissentiō	dissēnsī	dissēnsūm	<i>differ</i> <sup>6</sup>

## 262.

## PERFECT FORMED BY REDUPLICATION

<b>reperīre</b>	reperiō	repperī	<b>reperitum</b>	<i>find out</i> <sup>7</sup>
comperīre	comperiō	comperī	compertum	<i>ascertain</i> <sup>8</sup>

## 263.

## PERFECTS FORMED BY LENGTHENING OF VOWEL

<b>venīre</b>	veniō	<b>vēnī</b>	<b>ventum</b>	<i>come</i> <sup>9</sup>
advenīre	adveniō	advēnī	adventum	<i>arrive</i> <sup>10</sup>
convenīre	conveniō	convēnī	conventum	<i>come together</i> <sup>11</sup>
invenīre	inveniō	invēnī	inventum	<i>find</i>
pervenīre	pervenīō	pervēnī	perventum	<i>reach</i> <sup>10</sup>
subvenīre	subveniō	subvēnī	subventum	<i>come to assist(dat.)</i>

## 264.

## WITHOUT PERFECT AND PARTICIPLE STEM

ferīre	feriō	fīcī	ictum	<i>strike, hit</i> <sup>12</sup>
		percussī	percussum	
amicīre	amiciō	—	amictus	<i>wrap about</i> <sup>13</sup>
ēsūrīre	ēsuriō	—	—	<i>desire to eat</i> <i>be hungry</i>

Note: Dēsiderātīva in uriō have a present stem only

1) refertus, *full*domus referta rēbus omnibus(*abl.*)<sup>1</sup> haec dē eō comperi

but cīvium or cīvibus

2) sānctus, *holy*

3) ē fonte haurire

4) ūnum atque idem sentīre

5) tibi, or tēcūm cōnsentiō

6) ā tē, or tēcūm dissentiō

7) quis fēcerit, reperi

8) haec dē eō comperi

9) ad eum veniēmus(461, Note)

10) in urbem advēnī, *in the city*(527)

11) in ūnum locum convenire

12) foedus ferīre, *to make a compact, treaty*

secūri eum ferīre

13) togā amictus, *clad in a toga*

## DEPONENT VERBS

### 265. DEPONENTS OF THE 1st CONJUGATION : **ārī, or**

### PASSIVE OF DEPONENTS(218)

(These are all regular and follow hortārī.)

arbitrārī	arbitrātus sum	<i>believe, deem</i>	{ Putārī, existi- { mārī, vidērī, cēn- sērī
	Part. arbitrātus,	<i>supposing</i>	
cūctārī	cūctātus sum	<i>hesitate</i> (infin.)	Moram fierī, du - bitārī
glōriārī	glōriātus sum	<i>glory in</i> (abl.)	lactārī, praedicārī
grātulārī	grātulātus sum	<i>congratulate</i>	Grātulātiōnem fierī or habērī
	tibi hanc rem (dē hāc rē) grātulor		
imitārī	imitātus sum	<i>imitate</i>	Imitātiōne exprimi
cōnspicārī	cōnspicātus sum	<i>behold</i>	Vidērī, cōnspicī
minārī	minātus sum	{ <i>threaten</i> (dat.)	Minās iacī, iactārī
minitārī	minitātus sum		
morārī	morātus sum	{ <i>retard</i> (tr.) { <i>tarry</i> (intr.)	Tardārī, retinērī Moram trahī
opitulārī	opitulātus sum	<i>bring help</i> (dat.)	Auxilium ferri
precārī	precātus sum	<i>ask, beg</i> (ut)	Rogārī, precibus petī
versārī	versātus sum	{ <i> dwell, be;</i> { <i> be engaged in</i>	

### 266. DEPONENTS OF THE 2d CONJUGATION : **ērī, or**

licērī	licitus sum	<i>bid on</i> (acc.)	Licitātiōnem fierī
<b>pollicērī</b>	<b>pollicitus sum</b>	<i>promise</i> (dat.)	Prōmittī
miserērī	miseritus sum	<i>pity</i> (gen.)	Misericordiam habēre
miserārī	miserātus sum	<i>deplore</i> (acc.)	Miserātiōnem habēre
tuērī	tutātus sum	<i>guard, look to</i>	Custōdīrī
intuērī	aspexī	<i>look at</i> (acc.)	Aspicī
verērī	veritus sum	<i>fear, revere</i> (nē)	Timērī, in timōre esse
<b>fatērī</b>	<b>fassus sum</b> {	<i>confess</i>	{ Nōn negārī { prae sē ferri
cōnfītērī	cōnfessus sum }		
medērī (d.)	sānāvī (acc.)	<i>heal</i>	Sānārī
(rērī [no pres. part.])	ratus sum	<i>deem, believe</i>	Putārī, crēdī

267. DEPONENTS OF THE 3d CONJUGATION **ī**, or

frui	{ ūsus sum { fruitūrus	<i>enjoy</i> (abl.)
perfrui	perfructus sum	<i>enjoy fully</i> (abl.)
fungi	fūctus sum	<i>perform</i> (abl.)
lābi	lāpsus sum	<i>glide, fall</i>
<b>loqui</b>	<b>locūtus sum</b>	<i>speak, talk</i>
colloqui	collocūtus sum	<i>converse</i>
nīti	{ nīxus sum { (nīsus sum)	{ <i>lean on</i> (abl.) { <i>strive</i> (ut)
amplecti	amplexus sum	<i>embrace</i>
queri	questus sum	<i>complain</i>
<b>sequi</b>	<b>secūtus sum</b>	<i>follow</i>
adsequi	adsecūtus sum	{ <i>obtain by</i> { <i>exertion</i>
cōsequi	cōsecūtus sum	
ūtī	ūsus sum	<i>use</i> (abl.)
abūtī	abūsus sum	{ <i>use up;</i> { <i>misuse</i>

## PASSIVE (218)

{ Fructum, vo-
{ luptātem capī
ex...
Omnem f. capī ex.
Administrārī. ex-
ercērī
{ Sermōnem ha-
{ bēri; disserī (sci-
entifically)
Contendī,
In alcus com-
plexum venīre
Querimōniam
habērī dē....
Comparārī. quaerī
In ūsū esse
In ūsū prāvōesse;
Absūmī, cōsūmī

268. Present in **ior**:

gradī	—	<i>step</i>
<b>adgredi</b>	adgressus sum	<i>attack</i>
congrēdi	congressus sum	<i>meet with, fight</i>
<b>mori</b>	<b>mortuus sum</b>	<i>die</i>

## Part. moritūrus

pati	passus sum	<i>suffer</i>
perpetī	perpassus sum	<i>suffer patiently</i>

269. **Inchoatives in scor**:

adipīscī	adeptus sum	<i>attain by effort</i>
nancīscī	nāctus or nactus sum	<i>get by accident</i>
expērgīscī	experrēctus sum	<i>awake</i> (intr.)
irāscī	{ irātus (adj.) fui { suscēnsuī	<i>be angry</i> (tibi)
oblīvīscī	oblītus sum	<i>forget</i> (gen.)
reminīscī (gen.)	recordātus sum (dē)	<i>remember</i>
nāscī	nātus sum	<i>be born</i>
proficīscī	profectus sum	<i>set out</i> (for = in)
ulcīscī	ultus sum	<i>avenge</i>
vēsī	vīxī or altus sum	<i>subsist on</i> (abl.)

Comparārī, quaerī
Invenīrī. cāsū
offerī
Excitārī
{ Stomachum ali-
{ cui movērī or
fieri
In obliuīōnem
addūcī
Memoriā tenērī
Discēdī, abīrī
Poenās alcus reī
expetī
{ Vitam susten-
tārī. alī

270. DEPONENTS OF THE 4th CONJUGATION *īrī, ior*

## PASSIVE (218)

<i>blandīrī</i> (d.)	<b>blandītus sum</b>	<i>flatter</i>	<i>Blanditiās dicī, fierī</i>
<i>adulārī</i> (acc.)	<i>adulātus sum</i>	<i>flatter=cringe</i>	<i>Adulatiōnem fierī</i>
<i>adsentārī</i> (d.)	<i>adsentātus sum</i>	<i>flatter=say yes</i>	<i>Adsentatiōnem f.</i>
<i>largīrī</i>	<i>largītus sum</i>	<i>bestow (on-dat.)</i>	<i>Largitiōnem fierī</i>
<i>mentīrī</i>	<i>mentītus sum</i>	<i>lie, deceive</i>	<i>Falsa dicī, fallī</i>
		<i>{ set in motion</i>	<i>Movērī</i>
<i>mōlīrī</i>	<i>mōlītus sum</i>	<i>{ set about</i>	<i>Incipī, suscipī</i>
<i>partīrī</i>	<i>partītus sum</i>	<i>share, divide</i>	<i>Dispartīrī, dividī</i>
<i>impertīre</i>	<i>-īvī -ītum</i>	<i>impart</i>	<i>Impertīrī</i>
<i>potīrī</i> (abl.)	<i>potītus sum</i>	<i>be (come) master of</i>	<i>Occupārī</i>
<i>sortīrī</i>	<i>sortītus sum</i>	<i>{ get by lot</i>	<i>Sortitiōne accipī</i>
		<i>{ draw lots</i>	<i>Sortitiōnem fierī</i>
<i>adsentīrī</i>	<i>adsēnsus sum</i>	<i>give assent to</i>	<i>Adsēnsū compro- bārī</i>
<i>experīrī</i>	<i>expertus sum</i>	<i>{ try, test</i>	<i>Temptārī</i>
		<i>{ experience</i>	
<i>opperīrī</i>	<i>oppertus sum</i>	<i>await, wait</i>	<i>Exspectārī, manērī</i>
<i>mētīrī</i>	<i>mēnsus sum</i>	<i>measure</i>	<i>Rei mēnsuram f.</i>
<i>ordīrī</i>	<i>ōrsus sum</i>	<i>begin</i>	<i>Incipī, initium fierī</i>
<b>orīrī</b>	<b>ortus sum</b>	<i>rise</i>	

*Note:* *Orīrī* and its compounds except *adorīrī* follow the 3d Conjugation: *óreris, óritur* etc. Fut. part.: *oritūrus*. The only forms of the 4th Conjugation are:

*orīrī, to rise* and *orīrer* etc. = *órerer* etc.

<b>adorīrī</b>	<i>adortus sum</i>	<i>attack</i>	<i>Petī, impetum fierī</i>
----------------	--------------------	---------------	----------------------------

## LABOR

OMNIA VINCIT IMPROBUS.

## 271.

## IMPERSONAL VERBS

(Verba impersonālīa)

A word is used impersonally, when its action is ascribed to an indeterminate subject. This subject is indicated by the 3d ps. sg. neuter: **ningit, it snows**

By usage, however, all those verbal forms of the 3d ps. that do not take a substantive as their subject, are (less accurately) called impersonal; their determinate subjects may be pronouns, numeral adjectives, infinitives, phrases, or clauses:

puerōs decet verecundōs esse  
*modesty is becoming for boys*  
 hōc licet; vīxisse eum paenitet  
*fit, ut de eādem rē aliud aliī videātur*

## FORMS OF IMPERSONAL VERBS (276)

Present	:	paenitet,	paeniteat,	paenitēre
Imperfect	:	paenitēbat,	paenitērēt	—
Future I.	:	paenitēbit	—	—
Perfect	:	paenituit,	paenituerit,	paenituisset
Pluperfect	:	paenituerat,	paenituisset	—
Future II.	:	paenituerit	—	—

NOTE: The imperative is supplied by the subjunctive:

**pudeat tē, be ashamed**

## 272. 1. Always impersonal are:

paenitēre	<b>paenitet</b>	paenituit	<i>repent</i>
pigēre	<b>piget</b>	piguit	<i>annoy</i>
pudēre	<b>pudet</b>	{puduit {puditum est	{ <i>put to</i> { <i>shame</i>
taedēre	<b>taedet</b>	pertaesum est	<i>disgust</i>
miserēre	<b>miseret</b>	{personal form {miseritus sum	{ <i>move to</i> { <i>pity</i>
oportēre	<b>oportet</b>	oportuit	<i>ought</i>
rēferre	<b>rēfert</b>	rētulit	{ <i>be of</i> { <i>moment</i>

**Eum hūius rei**

paenitet, piget,  
 pudet, taedet,  
 miseret:

**He repents,**  
*is annoyed, etc.*  
 (415)

Oportet { eum ire  
 { or eat  
 (546)

Hōc meā nihil  
 rēfert (459)

## 273. 2. Usually impersonal are:

## a. Verbs denoting operations of nature:

fulgēre	<b>fulget</b>	fulsit	<i>lighten</i>
tonāre	<b>tonat</b>	tonuit	<i>thunder</i>
pluere	<b>pluit</b>	pluit	<i>rain</i>
ningere	<b>ningit</b>	(nīnixit)	<i>snow</i>
lūcēre	<b>lūcet</b>	lūxit	<i>be light</i>
lūcēscere	<b>lūcēscit</b>	lūxit	<i>grow light</i>
advesperāscere		(-āvit)	<i>grow dark</i>

**Tonat, it th's;**  
*but also*  
 Iuppiter tonat

Dilūcēscit;  
*but also:*  
 Diēs illūcēscit



## b. Four other verbs:

decēre	decet	decuit	<i>be becoming</i>
dēdecēre	dēdecet	dēdecuit	<i>be unbecoming</i>
libēre	libet	libuit	<i>suit</i>
licēre	licet	licuit	<i>be allowed</i>

274. 3. **Personal** in one meaning,**Impersonal** in another are:

iuvāre	iuvat	iūvit	<i>delight</i>
fallere	fallit	fefellit	<i>escape</i>
fugere	fugit	fūgit	<i>escape</i>
praeterire	praeterit	praeteriit	<i>escape</i>
appārere	appāret	appāruit	<i>be evident</i>
liquere	liquet	licuit	<i>be clear</i>
patere	patet	patuit	<i>be manifest</i>
cōstare	cōstat	cōstitit	<i>be well known</i>
condūcere	condūcit	condūxit	<i>serve</i>
expedire	expedit	expedivit	<i>be useful</i>
convenire	convenit	convēnit	<i>be fit</i>
feri	fit	factum est	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{happen}^1 \\ \text{fit etc.,} \\ \text{ut} \end{array} \right\}$
accidere	accidit	accidit	
contingere	contingit	contigit	
evenire	evenit	ēvenit	
restare	restat	restitit	<i>remain</i>
accēdere	accēdit	accessit	<i>be added</i>
placere	placet	placuit	<i>please</i>
praestare	praestat	praestitit	<i>be better</i>
attinere	attinet	attinuit	<i>concern</i>
interesse	interest	interfuit	<i>be of moment</i>

Ea eum decent  
(416)

Tū irasci dēdecet

Hoc mihi libet

Haec ei licet

Eum iuvat, *it*  
*delights him*Eum fallit, fugit,  
praeterit, *it es-*  
*capes him* (416)Deum esse ap-  
pāret, liquet,  
patet, cōstat  
(545)Eum id fa-  
cere  
ere condūcit,  
expedit, convenitContigit ei ut  
patriam liberāret  
*he succeeded in*  
*freeing his*  
*country*Restat, ut  
Accēdit ut or  
quod

Mihi placet

Mihi praestat

Ad mē attinet

Meā eius interest  
(459)

## 275.

## PASSIVE OF INTRANSITIVE VERBS (466)

Venītur, *they* (impers.) *come*; ventum est, *they came*pugnātur, *there is fighting*; pugnātum est, *there was a fight*But also: pugna pugnata est, *the fight was fought*

- 1) Contingit is generally used of fortunate, accidit of unfortunate, evenit of either, fit of any events.

**276. NOTE:** Excepting the infinitive, **noun-forms** of impersonal verbs are **rare**:

indūcī ad pudendum, ad pigendum  
 tanta vis fuit paenitendī (*sorrow*)  
 errōrem corrigere paenitendō  
 cōsiliī nostrī nōbīs paenitendum putō

Libēns,	pudēns,	paenitēns,	} <i>are</i> } <i>adjectives</i>
willing,	modest,	repentant,	

## 277. DEFECTIVE VERBS

(Verba dēfectīva)

### 1. **coepī**, *have begun* (supplied by incipiō)

incipere	incipiō	coepi	{ inceptum } <b>coeptus</b>	<i>begin</i>

*Perfect System complete:* coepī, coeperim... coepisse;

*Participial System has only:* coeptus, coeptus sum, coeptum esse.

**NOTE:** Coeptus sum, instead of coepī, is used with a passive infinitive which has passive meaning; the same holds good of dēsitum sum, instead of dēsīi (dēstitī):

rēs mōvērī coepta est,	<i>the thing began to be moved;</i>
but rēs movērī coepit,	<i>the thing began to move itself;</i>
res lābī coepit,	<i>the thing began to move.</i>

(The 1st infin. has *passive*, the 2d *reflexive*, the 3d *active* meaning.)

### 2. **meminī**, mementō, remember

*Perfect System complete:*

meminī, memineram, meminero etc., meminisse  
*remember, remembered, shall remember, to rem.*

*Imperative:* mementō, mementōte, remember

(Supplied by reminiscī; recordārī)

### 3. **ōdī**, ōsūrus, hate

<i>Perfect System</i> { complete }	ōdī,	ōderam,	ōderō, etc.	ōdisse
	<i>hate,</i>	<i>hated,</i>	<i>shall hate,</i>	<i>to hate</i>

*Partic. System:* ōsūrus, ōsūrus sum, ōsūrum esse

*Passive* : odiō esse alicuī, in odiō esse apud.....

(Supplied by odium in aliquem habēre.)

4. **āiō**, *I affirm, I say yes* (negō, *I say no.*)

*Pres. Indic.*: āiō, ais, **ait**; āiunt; *Perfect Indic.*: **ait**.

*Impf. Indic.*: āiēbam, āiēbās etc.

ain (= aisne)? *really, indeed, is it possible?*

5. **inquam** (inserted in direct quotations), **say I, said I.**

*Pres. Indic.* : inquam, inquis, **inquit**; inquiunt

*Impf. Indic.* : — — inquiēbat;

*Future Indic.* : — inquiēs, inquiet

*Perfect Indic.* : — inquistī, **inquit**

videō, videō, inquam, nōn cōgitō solum

(Supplied by dicere.)

6. **fandō audire**, *learn by hearsay.*

affārī affātur, affātus sum *address*

praefārī praefātur, praefātus sum *say beforehand*

*Note*: Forms of fārī (*speak*) and its compounds are rare.

7. **quaesō, quaesumus**, *I, we beg*

*NOTE*: Quaesō is used especially to soften the imperative :

quaesō attende ...; attende, quaesō.....

quaesō ut attendātis; quaesō, quid hōc est?

8. **salvē**, salvēte; salvēre tē iubeō: *hail! welcome!*

9. **valē**, valēte; valēre tē iubeō: *farewell!*

10. **havē** (avē), havēte (avēte);

havēre (avēre) tē iubeō: *hail! farewell!*

(Used at both meeting and separating.)

11. **cedo**, *say, let us hear! give, out with it!*

cedo, quid posteā? *let us hear, what then?*

cedō, quaesō, cōdicem: *please, hand the book.*

## 278.

## IRREGULAR VERBS

(Verba anōmala)

esse, sum, fuī, futūrus, <i>to be</i>				
Indicātīvus			Coniūctīvus (199)	
Praesēns : <i>I am</i>				
1.	sum	sumus	sim	sīmus
2.	es	estis	sīs	sītis
3.	est	sunt	sit	sint
Imperfectum : <i>I was</i>				
1.	eram	erāmus	essem	essēmus
2.	erās	erātis	essēs	essētis
3.	erat	erant	esset	essent
Futūrum I. : <i>I shall be</i>				
1.	erō	erimus		
2.	eris	eritis		
3.	erit	erunt		
Perfectum : <b>I was, I have been</b>				
1.	fuī	fuimus	fuerim	fuerīmus
2.	fuistī	fuistis	fuerīs	fuerītis
3.	fuit	fuērunt	fuerit	fūerint
Plūsquamperfectum : <i>I had been</i>				
1.	fueram	fuerāmus	fuissem	fuissēmus
2.	fuerās	fuerātis	fuissēs	fuissētis
3.	fuerat	fuerant	fuisset	fuissent
Futūrum II. : <i>I shall have been</i>				
1.	fuerō	fuērimus		
2.	fueris	fuēritis		
3.	fuerit	fūerint		

Probus sum, improbus nōn sum;

Puerī probī sumus, erimus, erāmus



**283.        Posse, possum, potuī,        be able, can**

## Indicative

## Subjunctive

<i>Pres.</i> :	{ pos - sum	pos - sumus	pos - sim	pos - sīmus
	{ pot - es	pot - estis	pos - sis	pos - sītis
	{ pot - est	pos - sunt	pos - sit	pos - sint

*Impf.* : **pot - eram** etc.    pot - erāmus etc.    **pos - sem** etc.    pos - sēmus etc.

*Fut. I.* : pot - erō etc.    pot - erimus etc.

*Pf. S'm.* : pot - uī,    pot - uerim,    pot - ueram,    pot - uissem,    pot - uerō

*Infinitives* : **posse, to be able**    **potuisse, to have been able**

potēns (adj.), *mighty*

(No other forms)

*NOTE*: Posse is a compound of pot (= pote, *able*) and esse;

possum = pote sum;    posse = pote esse;

potuī and potēns are forms of a former verb potēre.

**284. Edere, edō, ēdī, ēsum, eat: (regular)***Secondary Forms*

ēs, ēst, ēstis	=	edis, edit, editis
ēssem, ēssēs, ēsset etc.	=	ederem, ederēs, ederet etc.
ēs, ēste; ēstō, ēstōte	=	ede, edite; editō, editōte
ēsse	=	edere
ēstur, ēssētur	=	editur, ederētur

*NOTE*: The long ē alone distinguishes the secondary forms of edere from the forms of sum beginning with es.

**285. Ferre, ferō, tulī, lātum, carry, bear***Present Indicative*

## Active

## Passive

1. ferō	ferimus	feror	ferimur
2. fers	fertis	ferris	feriminī
3. fert	ferunt	fertur	feruntur

*Imperfect Subjunctive*

1. ferrem	etc.	ferrer	etc.
-----------	------	--------	------



## 286.

<i>Pres. Imperative:</i>	<b>fer</b> ,	<i>carry thou</i>	<b>ferte</b> ,	<i>carry ye</i>
<i>Fut. Imperative :</i>	<b>fertō</b> ,	<i>thou shalt carry</i>	<b>fertōte</b> ,	<i>ye shall carry</i>
<i>Infinitives</i>	<b>: ferre</b> ,	<i>to carry</i>	<b>ferri</b> ,	<i>to be carried</i>

NOTE: All other forms are regular :

feram, ferās etc.	feram, ferēs etc.
tulī, tulerim etc.	lātus sum, sim etc.
Distinguish : ferēs, ferrēs; ferris. ferōris, ferrōris	

## 287.

## Compounds of ferre

adferre	adferō	attulī	allātum	<i>carry to, bring</i>
anteferre	anteferō	antetulī	antelātum	<i>prefer</i>
<b>auferre</b>	<b>auferō</b>	<b>abstulī</b>	<b>ablātum</b>	<i>carry away</i> <sup>1</sup>
cōnferre	cōnferō	contulī	conlātum	<i>{ carry together</i> <i>{ compare</i> <sup>2</sup>
mē Rōmam cōnferō, <i>I go to Rome</i>				
dēferre	dēferō	dētulī	dēlātum	<i>{ bear to (= ad)</i> <i>{ report</i>
differre	differō	distulī	dīlātum	<i>put off</i> <sup>3</sup>
differre	differō	—	—	<i>differ (from = ab)</i>
efferre	efferō	extulī	ēlātum	<i>carry out of</i> <sup>4</sup>
īnferre	īnferō	intulī	inlātum	<i>carry into</i> <sup>5</sup>
offerre	offerō	obtulī	oblātum	<i>offer</i>
praeferre	praeferō	praetulī	praelātum	<i>prefer</i>
referre	referō	rettulī	relātum	<i>carry back</i> <sup>6</sup>
sufferre	sufferō	{ sustinui { sustulī	sustentātum	<i>suffer, endure</i>
<b>tollere</b>	<b>tollō</b>	<b>sustulī</b>	<b>sublātum</b>	<i>{ lift, raise</i> <i>{ do away with</i> <sup>7</sup>
extollere	extollō	extulī	ēlātum	<i>raise, exalt</i> <sup>8</sup>

Memoriam fuisse in eō singulārem ferunt

*It is related that he had a memory extraordinary*

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1) id <b>tibi</b> auferō (474)           | 6) grātiā referre prō....., <i>return</i> |
| 2) tēcum eum cōnfer (464)                | <i>thanks (in deed); grātiās agere,</i>   |
| 3) in posterum id dēferō                 | <i>(in word)</i>                          |
| 4) mē efferō, <i>am haughty</i>          | 7) tē dē mediō tollet                     |
| 5) socii bellum īnferre, <i>make war</i> | 8) caput extollit                         |
- upon

288. velle, **volō**, voluī, **will**, wish, want  
 nōlle, **nōlō**, nōluī, **won't** don't want  
 mālle, **mālō**, māluī, choose rather, **prefer**

<i>Present Indicative</i>	volō vīs vult volumus vultis volunt	nōlō nōn vīs nōn vult nōlumus nōn vultis nōlunt	mālō māvīs māvult mālumus māvultis mālunt
<i>Present Subjunctive</i>	velim velīs velit velimus velitis velint	nōlim nōlīs nōlit nōlīmus nōlītis nōlint	mālim mālīs mālit mālīmus mālītis mālint
<i>Imperfect Indicative</i>	volēbam volēbās etc.	nōlēbam nōlēbās etc.	mālēbam mālēbās etc.
<i>Imperfect Subjunctive</i>	vellem vellēs etc.	nōllem nōllēs etc.	māllem māllēs etc.
<i>Future I.</i>	volam volēs etc.	nōlam nōlēs etc.	mālam mālēs etc.
<i>Imperat. Pres.</i> <i>Imperat. Fut.</i>	— —	nōlī nōlīte nōlītō nōlītōte	— —
<i>Infinit. Pres.</i>	velle	nōlle	mālle
<i>Partic. Pres.</i>	(cupiēns)	(invītus)	—
<i>Perfect Systems</i>	voluī, voluerim, volueram, voluissē, voluerō nōluī, nōluerim, nōlueram, nōluissē, nōluerō māluī, māluerim, mālueram, māluissē, māluerō		

NOTE: Distinguish nōllēs and nōlēs, māllēs and mālēs.

Nōlō is composed of ne volō; mālō of mage volō.

289. Sīs (= sī vīs) if you please  
 nōlī laudāre don't praise  
 nōlīte laudāre don't praise
- Volō probus esse I want to be honest  
 Volō tē probum esse I want you to be honest  
 Volō tibi; (tuā causā) I wish you well

290.		īre, eō, īi, itum, to go				
Pres. Indic.	eō	īs	it	īmus	ītis	eunt
Pres. Subj.	eam	eās	etc.			
Imperf. Indic.	ībam	ībās	etc.			
Imperf. Subj.	īrem	īrēs	etc.			
Future I.	ībō	ībis	etc.			
Perfect Indic.	īi	īstī	iit	iimus	īstis	ierunt
Perfect Subj.	ierim	ierīs	ierit	ierīmus	ierītis	ierint
Plupf. Indic.	ieram	ierās	etc.			
Plupf. Subj.	īsem	īssēs	etc.			
Future II.	ierō	ieris	etc.			
Imperative Present	ī	go thou	īte	go ye		
Imperative Future	ītō	thou shalt go	ītōte	ye shall go		
Infinitive Present	īre	to go				
Infinitive Perfect	īsse,	to have gone				
Infinitive Future	itūrum	etc., esse	to be about to go			
Participle Present	īēns (Gen. euntis)	going				
Participle Future	itūrus, a um	about to go				
Gerund	(ad) eundum, ī, ō	(to or for) going				
Supines	itum, itū (585, 587)					
291.		Passive				
itur ībātur ībitur itum est etc., they(impers.)go, were g. etc.						
eātur irētur — itum sit etc. they shall go, would go, etc.						
eundum est one must go						
mihi, tibi, eī, eundum est, I, you, he must go						

<b>292.</b>		<b>INTRANSITIVE COMPOUNDS OF īre</b>			
abīre	abeō	abīi	abitum	go away	} <i>Passive:</i> abītur, ābitum est abeundum est, etc.
prōdīre	prōdeō	prōdīi	prōditum	go forth	
redīre	redeō	redīi	reditum	go back	

magistrātū abīre or sē abdicāre	}	resign office
in publicum prōdīre		go out in public
in grātiam redīre cum eō		be reconciled to him

perīre, pereō, perīi, peritūrus, *perish*: used as *Passive*  
 of perdere, perdō, perdidī, perditum, *ruin*  
 vēnīre, vēneō, vēniī, — *be offered for sale*: [Pas.  
 of vēndere, vēndō, vēndidī, vēnditum *sell*

*Note that* perditus, perdendus  
 vēnditus, vēndendus

are the only passive forms of perdere and vēndere.

interīre, intereō, interīi, interitūrus, *perish*

*Distinguish* prōdimus, prōdīmus

venīmus, vēnīmus, vēnīmus, vēniīmus

## 293.

## TRANSITIVE COMPOUNDS OF īre

a. With a complete passive:

adīre      ádeō    ádiī    áditum    *go to, approach*  
 praeterīre -eō    -īī    -itum    *go by, don't mention*  
 (adeor, aditus sum, adeundus sum, adīrī)

b. With a passive in the 3d ps. sg. and pl :

inīre      íneō    íniī    ínitum    *enter upon (acc.)*  
 (cōnsilia ineuntur, initā aestāte)

obīre      obeō    obiī    obitum    { *travel over* }  
    { *engage in, die* } (acc.)  
 (civitatēs, lēgatiōnēs, mors obeuntur)

subīre      subeō    subiī    subitum    { *undergo* }  
    { *pericula subeuntur* }  
 trānsīre -eō    -īī    -itum    *go over, cross*

Like audīre:

ambīre      ambiō    ambīvī    ambītum    { *canvass for votes*:  
    { *populus ambītur* }

(ambiam, ambiēbam, ambientis, ambītus, ambiendus)

## 294.

quīre,    **queō**,    quīvī,    **can**  
 nequīre, **nequeō**, nequīvī, **can't**

*Present System* : like eō : nōn queam etc.

*Perfect System* : regular : (usually not contracted)

*Imperative, Supine, Gerund* : wanting.

## 295. fierī, fiō, factus sum, become, happen, be made

<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	fiō	fīs	fit	(fīmus	fītis)	fīunt
<i>Pres. Subj.</i>	fīam	fīās	fiat	fīāmus	fīātis	fīant
<i>Impf. Indic.</i>	fīēbam	fīēbas	fīēbat	fīēbāmus	fīēbātis	fīēbant
<i>Impf. Subj.</i>	fierem	fierēs	fieret	fierēmus	fierētis	fierent
<i>Future I.</i>	fīām	fīēs	fīet	fīēmus	fīētis	fient
<i>Pf. S'm</i>	factus sum, eram, erō, sim, essem					
<i>Imperative</i>	(fī, fīte)					
<i>Inf. Pr.</i>	fieri	<i>become, happen, be made</i>				
<i>Inf. Pf.</i>	factum etc., esse	<i>have become, been made</i>				
<i>Inf. Ft.</i>	fore or futurum etc. esse	{ <i>be about to be (come)</i> <i>be about to happen</i>				
<i>I. F. Pass.</i>	factum iri	<i>be about to be made</i>				
<i>P'c. Pr.</i>	—					
<i>P'c. Pf.</i>	factus etc.	<i>made, that has become</i>				
<i>P'c. Ft.</i>	futurus etc.	<i>about to be (come), happen</i>				
<i>Ger. Partic.</i>	faciendus etc.	<i>that must be made</i>				

1. bonus, senex fiō  
quid eō fiet? *I become good, an old man  
what will become of him?*
2. scelera fiunt  
ut fit *crimes occur  
as it usually happens*
3. cōsul fiō  
cupiditāte caecus fiō *I am made a consul  
I am blinded by passion*  
opera ab iis fiēbant *the works were being constructed*  
certior ab eō fiō *I am informed by him*

NOTE: Inchoatives (pg. 98) are often preferred to fierī, *become*:

lūcēscit, senēscō

With *things* cōfici, perfici are preferred to fierī, *be made*:

opera perficiuntur

NOTE: The i in fit and before er (in fierī and fierem &c.) is short.

## PREPOSITIONS

(Praepositionēs)

296. Prepositions denote:

1. Relations of **space**;
2. Relations of **time**;
3. Other relations (of **manner, purpose, cause** etc.)

I. PREPOSITIONS USED WITH THE ACCUSATIVE AND THE ABL.:

297.

IN 1

- |                             |  |
|-----------------------------|--|
| 1. in urbem, in Italiam     | <i>into the capital, (in) to Italy</i> |
| in montem                   | <i>up the mountain,</i>                |
| in vallem                   | <i>down into the valley</i>            |
| 2. in multam noctem         | <i>till late in the night</i>          |
| in annum                    | <i>for (the space of) a year</i>       |
| in posterum diem            | <i>for the following day</i>           |
| in diēs māior               | <i>greater from day to day</i>         |
| 3. eius in patrem amor      | <i>love for his father</i>             |
| ōrātiō in Catilinam         | <i>speech against Catiline</i>         |
| in utramque patrem          | <i>for and against</i>                 |
| hunc in modum               | <i>in this manner</i>                  |
| 1. in urbe, in capite       | <i>in the city, on the head</i>        |
| pontem in flumine facere    | <i>to make a bridge over the river</i> |
| 2. bis in diē               | <i>twice a day (in the course of)</i>  |
| 3. in septem sapientissimus | <i>the wisest among the seven</i>      |
| in hōc hominē!.....         | <i>in the case of this man!.....</i>   |
| in summā senectūte          | <i>in spite of extreme old age</i>     |
| (in) secundis rebus         | <i>in luck, in prosperity</i>          |
| (in) adversis rebus         | <i>in adversity</i>                    |

298.

SUB

- |                                 |  |
|---------------------------------|--|
| 1. sub iugum mittere            | <i>to send under the yoke</i>              |
| sub montem succedere            | <i>to come to the foot of the mountain</i> |
| 2. sub noctem                   | <i>shortly before nightfall</i>            |
| sub vesperum                    | <i>toward evening</i>                      |
| sub haec dicta                  | <i>just after these words</i>              |
| 3. sub (in) potestatem redigere | <i>subdue, bring under the power of</i>    |
| 1. sub monte considere          | <i>to encamp at the foot of the m.</i>     |
| sub divo                        | <i>under the open sky</i>                  |
| 2. sub ipsa profectioe          | <i>at the time of the departure</i>        |
| 3. sub imperio alicuius esse    | <i>to be in the power of someone</i>       |

- 1) **In** and **sub** with the *accusative* express the place *whither*, with the *ablative* the place *where*, both literally and figuratively (Exceptions in n. 527; 518.)



## 299. II. PREPOSITIONS USED WITH THE ABLATIVE ONLY

Ab and ā; ex, ē, dē;  
sine, cum; prō and prae,

NOTE 1: The prepositions ā and ē are used before consonants only, ab and ex before **any** letter; ab is rarely found before b, p, f, v, m.

NOTE 2: Mēcum, tēcum, sēcum, nōbīscum, vōbīscum (131);  
quōcum or cum quō, quācum or cum quā etc. (146);  
in all other cases cum precedes.

## 300. AB, A

- |                             |  |
|-----------------------------|--|
| 1. ab urbe venīre (524)     | <i>to come <b>from</b> the city</i>            |
| 2. ā prīmīs temporibus      | <i><b>from</b> the first times</i>             |
| ā pueritiā = a puerō audīvī | <i>I have heard <b>from</b> boyhood</i>        |
| ā puerīs litterīs studuimus | <i>we have studied <b>from</b> boyhood</i>     |
| ab urbe conditā             | <i><b>after</b>(since)the building of Rome</i> |
| secundus, alter ab eō       | <i>the second <b>after</b> him</i>             |
| 3. ab aliquō laudārī        | <i>to be praised <b>by</b> somebody</i>        |
| ab aliquō flāgitāre         | <i>to demand <b>from</b> somebody</i>          |
| tē ab eō dēfendō, tueor     | <i>I defend you <b>against</b> him</i>         |
| ā tē = <b>abs</b> tē        | <i>by you</i>                                  |

## 301. EX, E

- |                               |   |
|-------------------------------|---|
| 1. (ex) urbe pellere (486)    | <i>to drive <b>out of</b> the city</i>  |
| ex equō dēsīlire              | <i>to jump <b>from</b> the horse</i>  |
| ex equō pugnāre               | <i>to fight <b>on</b> horseback</i>   |
| ē regiōne sōlis               | <i>exactly <b>opposite</b> the sun</i>  |
| 2. ex quō; ex quō tempore     | <i><b>since</b>, since the time that</i>                                      |
| 3. ē rē pūblicā               | <i><b>for the good of</b> the state</i>                                       |
| ex sententiā                  | <i><b>according to</b> one's wish</i>   |
| ex aequō (et bonō)            | <i>in accordance with fairness</i>  |
| ex tempore dicere             | <i>{ speak according to the circumstances<br/>} on the spur of the moment</i> |
| filius ex patre nōminātus est | <i>the son was named <b>after</b> his father</i>                              |

## 302.

## DE

- |                                 |   |
|---------------------------------|---|
| 1. dē mūrō dēicere              | <i>to throw <b>down</b> from the wall</i>         |
| dē terrā saxum tollere          | <i>to lift the rock <b>up</b> from the ground</i> |
| 2. dē nocte profectus est       | <i>he set out <b>before</b> the end of night</i>  |
| 3. dē aliquā rē dīcere          | <i>to speak <b>about</b> something</i>            |
| quā dē causā                    | <i>for which reason</i>                           |
| dē sententiā (See ex sententiā) | <i>according to the opinion of</i>                |
| dē tē bene mereor               | <i>I deserve well of you</i>                      |
| but: tua in mē merita           | <i>your deserts in my behalf</i>                  |

## 303.

## SINE

- |                  |                                      |
|------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 3. Sine ullā spē | <i><b>without</b> any hope (714)</i> |
|------------------|--------------------------------------|

## 304.

## CUM

- |                               |   |
|-------------------------------|---|
| 1. cum patre vēnit            | <i>he came <b>with</b> his father</i>           |
| 2. cum primā lūce domum vēnit | <i>he came home with early dawn</i>             |
| 3. cum togā pullā sedeō       | <i>I sit <b>in</b> the dark toga</i>            |
| cum gladiō in eum invāsit     | <i>he rushed upon him <b>with</b> a sword</i>   |
| aliquid sē cum                | } <i>to think, <b>reflect</b> about someth.</i> |
| (cum animō suō) reputāre      |   |

## 305.

## PRO

- |                         |  |
|-------------------------|--|
| 1. prō aede sedēre      | <i>{ to sit <b>before</b> the temple</i>         |
| but ante aedem          | <i>{ (i. e. the back turned towards it)</i>      |
| prō suggestū            | <i>before (i. e. facing) the temple</i>          |
| 2. —                    | <i>on the (front part of the) tribune</i>        |
| 3. prō libertāte morī   | <i>—</i>   |
| prō cōnsule proficīscor | <i>to die <b>for</b> liberty (in defense of)</i> |
| prō vectūrā solvō       | <i>I set out <b>in place of</b> the consul</i>   |
| prō certō hōc dīcō      | <i>I pay for the transportation</i>              |
| prō tuā prūdentiā       | <i>I say this for certain</i>                    |
| prō tempore (et rē)     | <i>in accordance with your wisdom</i>            |
| prō multitudīne hominum | <i>according to circumstances</i>                |
|                         | <i>in view of their large population</i>         |

## 306.

## PRAE

1. **prae sē** ferre (pugiōnem)      *to carry (a dagger) before oneself*
2. —      —
3. aliquid prae sē ferre      *to show (make a show of) something*  
     prae maerōre loqui nōn potuit      *for(prevented by)sadness, he could not speak*  
     prae cēterīs iustus      *just compared with the rest*  
*but praeter cēterōs iustus juster than the rest*

*Note:* Prae sē is used with ferre, gerere, mittere, agere.

## 307.

**Cōram** { rare as preposition  
               { frequent as adverb

1. cōram generō meō      *in the presence of my son-in-law*  
     Adverbially : cōram adest      *he is present in person*

**Tenus**

(Postpositive; mostly poetical)

1. Taurō tenus rēgnāre      *to rule as far as the Taurus*

## 308. III. PREPOSITIONS USED WITH THE ACCUSATIVE ONLY

Apud, ad and penes;  
 iūxtā, prope, propter;  
 ob, adversus, ergā, contrā;  
 infrā, suprā, intrā, extrā;  
 citrā, ultrā, cis and trāns;  
 ante, post, secundum, praeter;  
 circum, circā, circiter;  
 super, per and inter.

## 309. APUD (used chiefly with persons)

1. apud eum sedēbat      *he sat near him*  
     **apud** senātum verba fēcit      *he spoke before the senate*
2. apud māiōrēs nostrōs      *at the time of our ancestors*
3. apud Platōnem      *in (the works of) Plato*  
*but: in Phaedrō Platōnis in Plato's Phaedrus (definite work)*  
     apud amīcum cēnāvī      *I dined in the house of my friend*  
     apud mē nihil valet      *he has no influence over me*  
     apud eōs mōs est      *among them it is customary*

**310. AD** (used chiefly with places)

1. ad urbem esse, ad Cannās *to be **near** the city; near Cannae*  
 ad flūmen esse *to be **near** (on the banks of)*  
 ad urbem ire *to go to the city* [the river  
 ad amicum venīre, scribere *to come, write to him*  
**usque ad** castra accessit *he approached as far as the*  
**ad** Océanum (**versus**) *towards the Ocean* [camp  
 2. ad multam noctem *till late in the night*  
 ad vesperum *toward evening, till evening*  
 ad tempus, ad diem *at the right time, on the day*  
 3. homō ad aliquid ūtilis *a man useful for something*  
 ad dicendum nātus (factus) *he is a born speaker*  
 ad quadringētōs sunt *they are about (they amount to) 400*  
 ad ūnum omnēs adsunt *all without exception are present*  
*but praeter ūnum omnēs all with the exception of one*  
 ad verbum *word for word*

**311. PENES** (with persons only)

3. Penes Caesarem *under the control, in the power of Caesar*

**312. IUXTA, PROPE, PROPTER**

1. iūxtā mūrū *close to the wall*  
 propemūrū-prope ā mūrō *near the wall*  
 propter mūrū cōnsēdimus *we sat down near the wall*

NOTE: Also propior, proximus } take the accus. (or the dative)  
 and propius, proximē }

3. propter pācem *on account of the (actual) peace*  
*but pācis causā (Position!) for the sake of (obtaining) peace*

**313. OB**

1. exsilium mihi ob oculōs versātur *banishment is before my eyes*  
 3. ob eam causam *for that reason*

**314. ADVERSUS, ERGA, CONTRA** 1

1. adversus or contrā montem *opposite the mountain*  
 3. adversus or contrā hostem *against the enemy*  
 adversus illum est modestus *towards him he is modest*  
 summus ergā vōs amor *his great love for you*  
 voluntās ergā Caesarem *good-will for Caesar*

1) Ergā is used of friendly, contrā of hostile feelings.

319. SUPER

## 320.

## PER

- |                                    |  |
|------------------------------------|--|
| 1. per urbem fluit                 | <i>it flows <b>through</b> the city</i>                                |
| per orbem terrārum                 | <b>all over</b> the globe  |
| 2. per hiemem                      | <b>throughout</b> the winter   |
| per noctem                         | <b>during</b> the night  |
| per mediōs hostēs (Position !)     | <i>through the midst of the enemies</i>                                |
| 3. hōc per prōcūrātōrem factum est | <i>{ it was done through the agency<br/>of a steward, by a steward</i> |
| per litterās colloquī              | <i>to converse by (means of) letters</i>                               |
| per vim plūrimū possunt            | <i>they can accomplish much thru violence</i>                          |
| per deōs iūrāre                    | <i>to swear by the gods</i>  |
| per mē <b>licet</b>                | <i>as far as I am concerned, you may</i>                               |
| per valetūdinem venīre             | <i>on account of ill health I cannot</i>                               |
| nōn <b>possum</b>                  | <i>come</i>  |

## 321.

## INTER

- |                                |                                      |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1. inter Sēquanōs et Helvētiōs | <b>between</b> the territory of..... |
| 2. diēs 45 inter bīnōs lūdōs   | <i>between the two games</i>         |
| inter cēnam                    | <b>during</b> dinner                 |
| 3. inter amīcōs                | <i>between (among) friends</i>       |
| inter nōs amāmus               | <i>we love one another</i>           |

## 322.

## PLACE OF THE PREPOSITIONS

The place of the preposition is **immediately** before (sometimes after) its noun; if necessary, the noun must be repeated.

Dē rēbus in urbe gestīs  
 Contrā lēgem et prō lēge  
 Contrā lēgem et prō eā  
 Intrā mūnitiōnēs et extrā (adv.)

## 323.

## QUE and other Enclitics

**should not** be appended to { ab, ā, ad, : ā Caesareque  
 { apud, ob, sub : ob eamque rem

**may** be appended to **ex** and **in** { in eamque rem  
 { inque eam rem

**are** (usually) appended to **all other** prepositions : dēque Caesare.



**324.** Some prepositions retain their **original** use as **adverbs** in the following meanings :

	1.	2.	3.
ante	: <i>in front</i>	<i>previously</i>	—
post	: <i>behind</i>	<i>afterwards</i>	—
suprā	: <i>above</i>	<i>previously</i>	<i>beyond</i>
infrā	: <i>underneath</i>	—	—
cōram	: <i>in one's presence</i>	—	<i>personally</i>
prope	: <i>near</i>	—	<i>nearly</i>
extrā	: <i>without</i>	—	—
ultrā	: <i>on the other side</i>	—	—
circum	: <i>all around</i>	—	—
circiter	: —	<i>about</i>	<i>about</i>

**325.**

## CONJUNCTIONS

(Coniūctiōnēs)

Conjunctions are words used to connect words, phrases, clauses, or sentences. They are of two kinds :

**Co-ordinate** Conjunctions joining coordinate elements (words, phrases, dependent clauses having the same grammatical relation, independent clauses), and

**Subordinate** Conjunctions joining subordinate clauses to principal (leading) clauses.

### COORDINATE CONJUNCTIONS

**326**

#### COPULATIVE CONJUNCTIONS

(Coniūctiōnēs copulātivae)

(Denoting union)

<b>et</b>	<i>and</i>
<b>que</b> (enclitic)	<i>and</i>
<b>ac</b> (only before consonants exc. c, g, q)	<i>and</i>
<b>atque</b> (before any letter)	<i>and</i>
<b>etiam</b>	<i>also, even</i> (105)
<b>atque etiam</b>	<i>and also</i>
<b>quoque</b> (postpositive)	<i>also, too</i>
<b>nē-quidem</b> (separated by the word <i>emphasized</i> )	} <b>not even</b> } <b>not either</b>
<b>neque</b>	
	<b>and not; nor</b> (161)

## USES OF THE PRECEDING CONJUNCTIONS

1. Three or more words are connected as follows:

avus **et** pater **et** filius : Polysyndeton

avus, pater, filius : Asyndeton

avus, pater, filius**que**

Vēnī, vīdī, vīcī *I came, I saw, I conquered*

Abiit, excessit, ēvāsīt, ērūpīt { *He is gone, he has left, he has escaped,*  
*he has rushed out*

2. **Que** unites things that belong to one another:

famēs sitisque, *hunger and thirst*

ferrō ignīque, *with fire and sword*

3. **Atque** and **ac** often emphasize the word following:

Is ā cōstantiā atque ā mente atque ā sē ipse discessit.

4. Et, - que, atque } may express: *and indeed*  
 (often with is) }

summa voluptās et (ea or quidem) sempiterna

multī clārī cīvēs *many famous citizens*

multī **et** clārī cīvēs **many** (and indeed) *famous citizens*

5. **Etiam** nunc morāris? *Even now?* (emphasizing)

**Quoque** joins (usually without emphasis) words only:

Antonius quoque = Antonius etiam

6. Ac nē illud quidem { *and not even this*  
 { *neither ... this*

7. **neque** enim (nōn enim) *for not*  
**neque** tamen (nōn tamen) *yet not*  
**neque**vērō (nōn autem) *but not*

neque enim quisquam *for nobody*

neque enim quicquam *for nothing*

neque enim ūlla causa *for no cause*

neque enim umquam *for never*

NOTE: Et nōn = ac nōn, et nēmō, et numquam etc. emphasize the negative:

breve et nōn difficile *short and not difficult*

## 327.

## DISJUNCTIVE CONJUNCTIONS

(Coniūctiōnēs disiūctivæ)

(Denoting separation)

**aut, vel, -ve, sive, or**

(Ve, enclitic, is used to join words only.)



## 329.

## CAUSAL CONJUNCTIONS

(Coniunctiōnēs causālēs)

(Denoting cause)

**nam, enim** (postpositive) : **for**  
**namque, etenim** (stronger than nam) :  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{for indeed} \\ \text{and in fact} \end{array} \right.$

nam rēx iussit,  
 rēx enim iussit.

## 330.

## ILLATIVE CONJUNCTIONS

(Coniunctiōnēs conclūsivae)

(Denoting inference)

**igitur** (usually postpositive) } *therefore*  
**ergō, itaque, proinde**

## USES

## 1. Ergō and igitur introduce a logical conclusion:

Nihil est praestantius Deō	<i>Nothing is more excellent than God</i>
Ab eō igitur necesse est mundum regī	<i>The world, then, must be governed by him ....</i>
Omnem ergō regit ipse nātūram...	<i>He, therefore, rules all nature himself...</i>
Ergō utrum ignōrant, an vim nōn habent dī...?	<i>Consequently, do the gods not know..., or are they without power...?</i>

## 2. Itaque introduces an actual result following from circumstances.

Nēmō ausus est liber Phōciōnem sepelire. Itaque ā servis sepultus est. *No free man dared to bury Phocion. And so he was buried by slaves.*

## 3. Proinde introduces a command or an exhortation:

proinde tē parā, *hence, prepare yourself!*  
 proinde quīēscant, *let them, therefore, be quiet!*

**NOTE:** a. Ergō, igitur, itaque, proinde are not joined to any other coordinate conjunction (See above example in n. 2):

Itaque  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} 1. \text{ therefore} \\ 2. \text{ and therefore} \end{array} \right.$

b. Ergō and igitur often resume an interrupted thought:

Dicō igitur prōvidentiā deōrum mundum administrārī *I affirm, then, that the universe is governed by the providence of the gods.*

**NOTE:** “**Therefore**” may also be expressed by  
adverbial phrases or adverbs:

*Usually at the beginning*

ob eam rem (causam)

hanc ob rem (causam)

eā dē rē (causā)

quam ob rem

quōcircā

quāpropter

*At any place*

ideō (quod, ut)

ideircō (quod, ut)

propterea (quod, ut)

**NOTE:** Ob **eam** rem etc. refer to something preceding or following (142),  
**quam** ob rem etc. to something preceding,  
**ideō** etc. to something following.

## 331.

## COMBINATIONS OF CONJUNCTIONS

**et - et**

*{ both - and;  
- as well as -*

**neque - neque**  
**nec - nec** }

*neither - nor*

neque aut - aut  
et neque - neque }

*and neither - nor*

**nēmō ...** { **neque - neque**  
                  { **aut - aut**

*no one..... neither - nor*

**neque - et**

*{ on the one hand not  
- and on the other hand*

**et - neque**

*{ on the one hand - and  
- on the other hand not*

**cum - tum**

*both - and especially*

**tum - tum** }

**modo - modo** }

*now - now*

**nōn solum** { **sed etiam** or

**nōn modo** { **vērūm etiam**

*not only - but also*

**nōn modo** {  
or **nōn dicam** } **sed**

*I won't say....., but*

**NOTE:** The expression

**nōn modo or** } **sed nē - quidem** *not only not,*  
**nōn modo nōn** } *but not even*

is used when both members have the same predicate :

**Nōn modo extrā tēctum, sed nē extrā lectum quidem vidēbātur.**

**aut - aut** (327)

**either - or**

**vel - vel,** (sive - sive) **either - or**

### 332. SUBORDINATE CONJUNCTIONS

Subordinate Conjunctions are, like relative pronouns, used to join subordinate to leading clauses. Subordinate are :

Clauses of **Purpose** and **Fear**,  
 Clauses of **Result**,  
**Quīn** - Clauses,  
**Causal** and **Substantive Quod** - Clauses,  
**Temporal** Clauses,  
**Adversative** and **Concessive** Clauses,  
**Comparative** Clauses,  
 Clauses of **Proviso**,  
**Conditional** Clauses.

*The tenses employed in subordinate clauses are independent, when the leading and dependent clauses belong to different periods of time :*

quae imperāvistī, faciam,

*I shall do what you have commanded;*

*they are dependent (following rules of sequence), when both the leading and dependent clause belong to the same period of time :*

quae imperāveris, faciam,

*I shall do what you command*

*i. e. what you will have commanded*

*Note:* The following pages contain **Synopses** of the principal rules of sequence and a list of conjunctions with their modes and tenses :

Sequence in *Indicative* Clauses : Page 131

Sequence in *Subjunctive* Clauses : Pages 132-133

List of *Conjunctions* with their modes } Pages 134-136  
 and tenses (dependent and independent) }



## CONGRUENT (607)

*with a main tense (372) is the same dependent tense*

NOTE: **Cum** and **quod**, **by**, as well as **quam diū**, **dum**, **quoad**, as long as, demand the tenses of congruent action.

cum tacent, clāmant	<b>by</b> being silent they shout
cum tacēbant, clāmābant	their <b>silence</b> was a shout
discēs, dum vivēs	you will learn as long as you <b>live</b>

## CONTEMPORANEOUS (608)

<i>with a main present</i>	<i>is</i>	<i>a dependent present</i>
<i>with a main future</i>	<i>is</i>	<i>a dependent future</i>
<i>with a m. historical t. (592)</i>	<i>is</i>	<i>a dependent imperfect</i>

faciō quod licet	<i>I do what is lawful</i>
faciam quod licēbit	<i>I shall do what <b>is</b> lawful</i>
fēcī quod licēbat	<i>I did what was lawful</i>

## PREVIOUS (611)

<i>to a main present</i>	<i>is</i>	<i>a dependent present perfect</i>
<i>to a main future</i>	<i>is</i>	<i>a dependent future perfect</i>
<i>to a main historical tense</i>	<i>is</i>	<i>a dependent past perfect</i>

faciō quod iussistī	<i>...what you have commanded</i>
faciam quod iusseris	<i>{...what you command</i>
fēcī quod iusserās	<i>{i. e. what you will have c'ded</i>
	<i>what you (had) commanded</i>

NOTE: This sequence is especially observed in the use of the futures and in clauses expressing **repeated** action (610, 612) :

sī sapiēs, hōc faciēs	<i>if you <b>are</b> wise, you will do this</i>
ut sēmentem fēcēris, ita metēs	<i>you will reap, as you <b>sow</b></i>
quotiēns domī sum, scribō	<i>as often as I am at home, I write</i>
quotiēns domī erō, scribam	<i>as often as I <b>am</b> at home, I shall write</i>
quotiēns domī eram, scribēbam	<i>as often as I was at home, I wrote</i>
cum domum vēnī, scribō	<i>when I <b>come</b> home, I write</i>
cum domum vēnerō, scribam	<i>when I <b>come</b> home, I shall write</i>
cum domum vēneram, s'ēbam	<i>when I <b>came</b> home, I wrote</i>

NOTE: Repeated action is introduced by relatives, cum, sī, quotiēns, ut quisque.....

## CONTEMPORANEOUS (617)

with a *principal* tense (616) is the **present** subjunctive

with a *secondary* tense is the **imperfect** subjunctive

videō	quid faciās	...what you <b>are</b> doing (now)
vidēbō	quid faciās	{...what you <b>are</b> doing (then)
vīderō	quid faciās	{i. e. what you will be doing
vidēbam	quid facerēs	{...what you <b>were</b> doing (then)
vīdī	quid facerēs	
vīderam	quid facerēs	

## PREVIOUS (618)

to a *principal* tense is the **perfect** subjunctive

to a *secondary* tense is the **pluperfect** subjunctive

videō	quid fēcerīs	{...what you <b>have</b> done
		{...what you have been doing
		{...what you did
		{...what you were doing
vidēbō	quid fēcerīs	{...what you have done
vīderō	quid fēcerīs	{i. e. what you will have done
vidēbam	quid fēcissēs	{...what you <b>had</b> done
vīdī	quid fēcissēs	
vīderam	quid fēcissēs	
		{...what you had been doing
		{also, but loosely:
		{...what you were doing (before)

NOTE: Clauses dependent on subordinate clauses follow the same rules (624):

	impedīvit	{	nē abīrēs
sciō	quis impedīverit		
	abiit, quia sciēbat	{	quid fēcissēs
nōn dubitō	quā sciēverit		

NOTE: Clauses dependent on a perfect infinitive or participle take the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive; those dependent on other infinitives or participles are governed by the main finite verb (620):

sciō eum impedīvisse	{	nē abirēs
dicēbat sē impedīre		
dixit sē impedītūrum esse		
dicit (dicet) sē impedīre		nē abeās

## I. SUBSEQUENT (619)

<i>to a principal tense</i>	<i>is</i>	<i>the present subjunctive</i>
<i>to a secondary tense</i>	<i>is</i>	<i>the imperfect subjunctive</i>

*when the future character of the dependent clause is suggested in the sentence; as in clauses of purpose (695 sqq., 711), fear (701), likelihood (656, b), deliberation (662) and expectancy (646); also in all clauses of result (705 sqq., 713), except those enumerated in n. 604 and 619, 2:*

<i>edō, edam, ēderō</i>	<i>}</i>	<i>...that I may live</i>
<i>ut vivam (695, 697)</i>	<i>}</i>	<i>...or (in order) to live</i>
<i>verēbar, veritus sum, eram</i>	<i>}</i>	<i>...<sup>1</sup>) that he was going</i>
<i>nē abiret (701)</i>	<i>}</i>	<i>...<sup>2</sup>) that he would go</i>

## II.A. SUBSEQUENT

<i>to a principal tense</i>	<i>is</i>	<i>- ūrus sim</i>
<i>to a secondary tense</i>	<i>is</i>	<i>- ūrus essem,</i>

*when the future character of the dependent clause is not suggested in the sentence; as in indirect questions of fact (641), after nōn dubitō quīn (710, 650), in causal (715), concessive (727), and comparative (731) clauses and in those result - clauses in which the result is to be denoted as yet to come (619):*

<i>videō, vidēbō, viderō</i>	<i>}</i>	<i>...what you will do</i>
<i>quid factūrus sis</i>	<i>}</i>	<i>...what you are going to do</i>
<i>nōn dubitābam, -vī, -veram</i>	<i>}</i>	<i>...that you would do this</i>
<i>quīn hōc factūrus essēs</i>	<i>}</i>	<i>...that you were g. to do this</i>

## II.B. SUBSEQUENT

<i>to a principal tense is the present subjunctive</i>	<i>}</i>	<i>with an adverb of a future character; as</i>
<i>to a secondary tense is the imperfect subjunctive</i>	<i>}</i>	<i>postea, aliquandō,</i>

*when the verb used in the clauses mentioned above in II. a. lacks the form in - ūrus, or is passive:*

<i>nōn dubitō quīn tē</i>	<i>}</i>	<i>I do not doubt that you will</i>
<i>factī brevī paeniteat</i>	<i>}</i>	<i>(soon) be sorry for your action</i>
<i>nōn dubitābam quīn</i>	<i>}</i>	<i>I did not doubt that the city</i>
<i>urbs mox expugnāretur</i>	<i>}</i>	<i>would (soon) be taken</i>

## CAUSAL AND SUBSTANTIVE

**quod, quia**  
quoniam, siquidem

**because**  
*since indeed* { All tenses acc.  
to sequence

**quod** (introducing a subject, object  
or appositive clause)

(*the fact*) **that** { All tenses acc.  
*as to, if* to sequence

## TEMPORAL

**dum** (referring to any period of time)

**while** : Present

**dum, donec, quoad, quam diu** }  
(denoting time only)

**as long as** { All tenses of  
congruent action

**dum, donec, quoad, (d. time only)**

**until**

**antequam, priusquam** } denoting

**before** { Perfect and  
2d Future;  
rarely the Present

**quam** after ante and prius } time only

**postquam, posteaquam** } denoting a

**after** { Perfect

**ut, ubi, simulatque** } single past act

**as soon as**

**cum** temporale et relativum : time only

**when** (723, 673) : All tenses (Sequ.)

**cum** coincidens (607, a)

**by** : All (congruent) t.

**cum** iterativum (610, 612)

**as often as** : All tenses (Sequ.)

**cum** inversum (724)

**when suddenly** : Perfect

## ADVERSATIVE--CONCESSIVE

**quamquam**  
etsi, tametsi

**although** { All tenses (Sequ.)  
**in fact**

**etiamsi** (following the construction of si) *even if*

: All tenses (Sequ.)

## COMPARATIVE

**ut, sicut, quem ad modum**  
**quam** (after comparative ideas)

**as** { All tenses (Sequ.)  
**than**

## CLAUSES OF

## CONDITIONAL

**si id credis, erras** { *if you believe... that (I imply nothing as to the*  
**si id credes..., errabis...** { *fulfilment of the condition), you are ... mistaken*

**nisi** (negating the entire protasis)

**unless**

**si non** (negating a single word)

**if not**

**sin** (introducing a second condition)

**but if**

**qui - si quis, cum - si quando, ubi - sicubi**

} follow si in tenses  
and modes

## QUOD - CLAUSES (715-721)

**quod, quia** { when introducing } **because** { All tenses of  
*quoniam* etc. { *another's* reason } *since indeed* { the Subj. (Sequence) }

**cum,** **since, seeing that** : All tenses (Sequence)

**quod** (introducing a substantive clause with *another's* reason) { *(the fact) that* }  
*as to, if* { All tenses (Sequence) }

## CLAUSES (722-726)

**dum, donec, quoad** { denoting } **until** { Present and  
**antequam, priusquam** { time and } *Imperfect;*  
**quam** after *ante* and *prius* { purpose or } **before** { (the Pluperfect  
*anticipation* { esp. in indir. d.) }

**cum** *historicum* (d. time and situation) **when, after** : **Impf.; Plupf.**

## CLAUSES (727-729)

**cum** *adversativum* **while**  
**cum** *concessivum* **though** { All tenses (Sequence)  
*ut, ut non* *granted that(not)*  
*quamvis* *no matter how*  
*licet* *may* : Present; Perfect  
*etiamsi* *even if* : All tenses (Sequence)

## CLAUSES (730-739)

**quasi, tamquam, tamquam si** { *as if* } { All tenses  
*velut si, proinde ac si* { *as though* } { acc. to Sequence }

## PROVISO (740-741)

*modo, dum, dum modo (ne)* { *it only, so long* } : All tenses (Sequ.)  
*as (not)*

## CLAUSES (742 SQQ.)

**si id credās, errēs, (errāveris)** { *if you should believe that (let me*  
**si id credideris, errēs (errāveris)** { *suppose you will), you would go*  
*wrong*  
**si id crēderēs, errārēs** { *if you believed that (but you do*  
*not), you would go wrong*  
**si id crēdidissēs, errāvissēs** { *if you had believed that (but you*  
*did not), you would have gone wrong*



## PURPOSE AND FEAR (695-701)

<b>ut</b> <b>nē</b> , continued by <b>nēve</b> <b>nē</b> quis, <b>nē</b> quid, <b>nē</b> qua rēs, <b>nē</b> umquam <b>quō</b> (before comparatives) <b>ā</b> tē petō, postulō <b>ut</b> ..... tibi suādeō, imperō <b>nē</b> ...	<b>that, to</b> <b>that not, not to</b> <i>that nobody, that nothing</i> <i>that no thing, that never</i> <b>that the</b> ( - ut eō) <i>I ask, demand from you to</i> <i>I advise, command you not to</i> ..... <i>I refuse to</i> <i>I hinder from</i> <i>I deter from</i>	} <b>Present after</b> principal tenses  <b>Imperfect after</b> secondary tenses
recūsō <b>nē</b> or quō minus impediō <b>nē</b> or quō minus dēterreō <b>nē</b> or quō minus		
vereor <b>nē</b> vereor <b>nē nōn</b> (or ut)	<i>I fear that</i> <i>I fear that not</i>	} <b>All tenses (701)</b>

## RESULT (702-708)

<b>ut</b> <b>ut nōn</b> , ut neque-neque ut nēmō, ut nihil ut nūlla rēs, ut numquam māior quam ut is, tālis, tantus ut tam or adeō bonus (bene) ut ita or usque eō nōn bonus ut ita, sic agit ut	<b>that</b> <b>that not</b> , that neither-nor <i>that nobody, that nothing</i> <i>that no thing, that never</i> <b>too great to</b> <i>such, so great that</i> <i>so good (well) that</i> <i>so little good that</i> <i>he so acts that</i>	} <b>Present after</b> principal tenses, <b>Imperfect after</b> secondary tenses; but <i>Independent t. (604)</i> <i>to denote result as</i> <i>existing : Present</i> <i>past fact : Perfect</i> <i>pres. judgm. : Perf.</i>
--	--	--

## QUIN (709-714)

(Used only after main clauses with negative meaning.)

nōn dubitō quīn	<i>I do not doubt that</i>	: Declaration	} Characteristic	} All tenses
nēmō est quīn	<i>...no one who...not</i>			
quid est quīn	<i>what... that...not</i>			
nōn tam fortis est quīn	<i>not so brave as not to</i>	: Result		
nihil abest quīn	<i>nothing is wanting to</i>	} Purpose	: Pres. and Impf.	
nihil praetermittō quīn	<i>I leave n. undone to</i>			
nihil faciō quīn... (All tenses), <i>I do nothing without</i> ... : Compare n. 714				



## INTERJECTIONS

## 334. (Interiectiōnēs)

<i>Joy</i>	: iō! eue! ō!	<i>hurra! huzza! o!</i>
<i>Sorrow</i>	: heu! eheu! prō! vae!	<i>alas! ah me! woe!</i>
<i>Astonishment</i>	: ēn! ecce! prō! vae!	<i>lo! behold! o! hem!</i>
<i>Disgust</i>	: prō! apage!	<i>fie! begone!</i>
<i>Praise</i>	: ēia! euge!	<i>bravo! well done!</i>
<i>Calling</i>	: heus! ohē! ō!	<i>hey! ho!</i>
<i>Asseveration</i>	: { nē! mē dīus fīdīus (i. e. iuvet!) (mē) hercule! ēdepol! ēcastor!	<i>truly!</i> <i>by the God of Truth!</i> <i>in truth! by Hercules!</i> <i>by Pollux! by Castor!</i>

## PART III. FORMATION OF WORDS

## 335. New words are formed by

**Derivation**, (adding of suffixes to the stems of words) and**Composition**, (linking one word or its stem to another);

Hence there are:

**Primitīva**, Primitives and **Dērivātīva**, Derivatives**Simplicia**, Simple words and **Composita**, Compounds

## I. DERIVATIVES

## 336. SUBSTANTIVES DERIVED FROM VERBS

tor, trīx (fem.)	{ Denoting	victor, victrix	<i>conqueror</i>
sor	{ the <b>Agent</b>	dēfēnsor	<i>defender</i>
or	{ Activity	clāmor	<i>shout</i>
	{ Condition	dolor	<i>pain</i>
tiō	{ <b>Action</b>	mōtiō	<i>a moving</i>
siō	{ as	obsessiō	<i>blockade</i>
us (gen. ūs)	{ in process	mōtūs	<i>a moving</i>
men	{ <b>Means</b> or <b>Instrument</b>	nōmen	<i>name</i>
mentum		ornāmentum	<i>ornament</i>
bulum		vocābulum	<i>vocable</i>
culum		gubernāculum	<i>helm</i>
ulum		iaculum	<i>javelin</i>
crum		sepulcrum	<i>grave</i>
trum		arātrum	<i>plow</i>

## 337. SUBSTANTIVES DERIVED FROM SUBSTANTIVES

culus, a, um	} <b>Dēminūtīva</b> Diminutives (usually following the gender of the primitive)	flosculus	<i>floweret</i>
ulus, a, um		particula	<i>particle</i>
olus, a, um		opusculum	<i>little work</i>
ellus, a, um		puerulus	<i>little boy</i>
illus, a, um		filiolus	<i>little son</i>
		ocellus	<i>little eye</i>
		lapillus	<i>little stone, pebble</i>
idēs	} masc. { <b>Patronymica</b> Greek nouns of descent or relationship	Priamidēs	<i>Son of Priam</i>
īdēs		Atrīdēs	<i>Son of Atreus</i>
adēs		Aeneadēs	<i>Son of Aeneas</i>
ēis		Nērēis	<i>Daughter of Nereus</i>
is		Atlantis	<i>Daughter of Atlas</i>
ias	} fem.	Thaumantias	<i>Daughter of Thaumias</i>
		aerīrium	<i>treasury</i>
ārium		sēminārium	<i>seminary</i>
ētum		quercētum	<i>oak grove</i>
īle		ovīle	<i>sheepfold</i>
	} <b>Place where things</b> (plants, animals .....) are kept		
īna	} <b>Art or (its) place</b>	medicīna	<i>art of healing</i>
		officīna	<i>workshop</i>
		piscīna	<i>fishpond</i>
ātus	<b>Office</b>	cōsulātus	<i>consulate</i>

## 338. SUBSTANTIVES DERIVED FROM ADJECTIVES

tās	} <b>Quality</b>	pietās	<i>piety</i>
tūdō		fortitūdō	<i>bravery</i>
ia		audācia	<i>boldness</i>
itia		amīcitia	<i>friendship</i>

## 339. ADJECTIVES DERIVED FROM VERBS

bundus	} Meaning of present participle increased	moribundus	<i>dying</i>
		furibundus	<i>raging</i>
cundus	} <b>Inclination</b>	irācundus	<i>wrathful</i>
āx		mendāx	<i>given to lying</i>
ulus		crēdulus	<i>credulous</i>

idus	<b>Quality</b>	calidus	<i>warm</i>
ilis	} <b>Capacity</b> (with passive meaning)	docilis	<i>docile</i>
bilis		mōbilis	<i>movable</i>

### 340. ADJECTIVES DERIVED FROM COMMON NOUNS

eus	<b>Material</b>	aureus	<i>golden</i>
ius	} <b>Belonging to</b>	patrius (amor)	<i>fatherly</i>
icius		patricius	<i>patrician</i>
icus		bellicus	<i>warlike</i>
ālis		rēgālis	<i>regal</i>
ēlis		crūdēlis	<i>cruel</i>
ilis		puerīlis	<i>boyish</i>
āris		populāris	<i>popular</i>
ēnsis		castrēnsis	<i>camp -</i>
ester		campester	<i>field -</i>
ānus		urbānus	<i>city -</i>
īnus		divinus	<i>divine</i>
nus		paternus (ager)	<i>fatherly</i>
īvus		aestivus	<i>summer -</i>
tīmus		maritimus	<i>sea -</i>
ōsus	} <b>Fulness</b>	artificiōsus	<i>artistic</i>
lentus		vinolentus	<i>drunk with wine</i>
tus	<b>Supplied with</b>	{ barbātus	<i>bearded</i>
		{ auritus	<i>having ears</i>

### 341. ADJECTIVES DERIVED FROM PROPER NOUNS

ānus	} <b>Names of Persons</b>	Sullānus	<i>of Sulla</i>
īnus		Verrīnus	<i>of Verres</i>
ēus (īus)		Epicurēus	<i>Epicurean</i>
icus		Homēricus	<i>Homeric</i>
icus	} <b>Names of Nations</b>	Germānicus	<i>German</i>
ius		Thrācius	<i>Thracian</i>
ānus	} <b>Names of Places</b>	Thebānus	<i>Theban</i>
īnus		Amerīnus	<i>of Ameria</i>
ās		Arpīnās	<i>of Arpinum</i>
ius		Corinthius	<i>Corinthian</i>
aens		Smyrnaeus	<i>of Smyrna</i>
ēnsis		Cannēnsis	<i>of Cannae</i>

## 342. ADJECTIVES DERIVED FROM ADJECTIVES

us	Dēminūtīvā	{ misellus parvulus	wretched little
----	------------	------------------------	--------------------

## 343. ADJECTIVES DERIVED FROM ADVERBS

ernus ternus tinus tīnus	{ Relating to	hodiernus hesternus crāstinus intestīnus	of to-day of yesterday of to-morrow internal
-----------------------------------	---------------	---	---

## 344. VERBS DERIVED FROM VERBS

scere	Incohātīva :	obdormiscere	fall asleep
āre itāre sāre sitāre	{ Frequentātīva and intēnsīva : repetition or inten- sity; usu. from pf. part.	cantāre cantitāre cursāre cursitāre	sing sing repeatedly > run hither > and thither
urīre	Dēsīderātīva :	ēsūrīre	desire to eat

## 345. VERBS DERIVED FROM NOUNS

āre	Usually transitive :	{ vulnerāre exsulāre (intr.)	wound live in exile
ēre	Only intransitive :	flōrēre (intr.)	bloom
īre ere	{ Trans. and intrans.	{ saevīre (intr.) metuere	rage fear

## 346. ADVERBS DERIVED FROM VERBS

certātim	emulously	cursim	speedily
separātim	separately	praesertim	especially
stātīm	instantly	raptim	hurriedly
caesim	by cuts	sēnsim	gradually

## 347. ADVERBS DERIVED FROM NOUNS

nōminātim	expressly; by name	antiquitus	of old
gradātim	step by step	funditus	utterly
virītim	man by man	rādicitus	radically
furtim	by stealth	penitus	thoroughly

Preposition and Verb :	{	abdere	<i>put away, hide</i>
ā, ab, abs, as = <i>away</i>	{	absterrere	<i>frighten away</i>
	{	asportare	<i>carry away</i>
ō, ob, obs, os	{	obrēpere	<i>approach towards</i>
	{	offerre	<i>offer</i>
	{	ostendere	<i>show</i>
com, con, cō	{	cōferre	<i>carry together</i>
	{	cognōscere	<i>learn to know thoroughly</i>
dē	{	dēicere	<i>throw down</i>
	{	dēvincere	<i>conquer completely</i>
Inseparable Particle	{	ambīre	<i>go round</i>
and Verb :	{	ambūrere	<i>burn around</i>
amb, am	{	amplecti	<i>embrace</i>
= <i>around</i>	{	amputāre	<i>cut around, cut off</i>
au		aufugere	<i>flee away</i>
= <i>away</i>			
dis, dī, dir	{	dīrimere	<i>part</i>
	{	dissolvere	<i>dissolve</i>
sē		sēcernere	<i>distinguish</i>
= <i>apart</i>			

NOTE: **Phonetic changes** occurring in the composition of words appear especially in the composition of verbs; e. g. :

Assimilation of consonants :	aggredi	from adgredi
Elision of consonants :	trādere	from trānsdere
Contraction of vowels :	cōgere	from coagere
Weakening of vowels :	{	conclūdere from conclaudere
	{	concidere from concaedere
	{	cōnicere from coniacere

351.	COMPOUND ADVERBS	
ēminus	= ē manūs	<i>at fighting distance (hands apart)</i>
comminus	= con manūs	<i>in close contest (hands together)</i>
forsitan	= fors sit an	<i>perhaps</i>
hodiē	= hōc diē	<i>to-day</i>
īlicō	= in locō	<i>instantly</i>
intereā	= inter eā	<i>meanwhile</i>
nūdiustertius	= nunc diēs tertius	<i>the day before yesterday</i>
profectō	= prō factō	<i>actually, by all means</i>
scīlicet	= scī (re) licet	<i>evidently, of course</i>

NOTE: The meaning of place denoted by locō and eā (178) is changed into a meaning of time in īlicō and intereā.

## 352.

## APPENDIX

## 1. CORRESPONDING TRANSITIVE AND INTRANSITIVE VERBS

Transitive	Intransitive	Transitive	Intransitive
excitāre	expergīscī	caedere	cadere
fugāre	fugere	occidere	occidere
augēre	accrēscere	calefacere	calēre
minuere	dēcrēscere	obstupefacere	stupēre
accendere	ardēre	patefacere	patēre
combūrere	cōnflāgrāre	assuēfacere	{ assuēvisse (assuēscere)
iacere	iacēre	cōstituere	{ stāre (cōnsistere)
cōgere	convenīre		
suspendere	pendēre		

## 2. ENGLISH AND LATIN WORDS OF SIMILAR SOUND

<b>convince</b>	persuādēre	<b>convincere,</b>	<i>convict</i>
<b>digest,</b>	concoquere	<b>digerere,</b>	<i>arrange</i>
<b>discuss,</b>	disputāre	<b>discutere,</b>	<i>dispel</i>
<b>suspect,</b>	suspiciārī	<b>suspicere,</b>	<i>look up to</i>

## 3. LATIN REFLEXIVES

sē cōferre	<i>go</i>	sē mergere,	<i>dive</i>
sē efferre	<i>become haughty</i>	sē recipere,	<i>retreat</i>
sē iungere	<i>join</i>	sē subducere,	<i>withdraw</i>

## 4. SIMILAR LATIN FORMS

edere	ēdere	fissus	fīsus
possidere	possidēre	cēpī	coepī
cōdimus	condīmus	ābscidī	abscīdī
vīcimus	vincīmus	rētūlit	rētulit
prōdimus	prōdīmus	victūrus	victūrus
āddimus	adīmus	paritūrus	pāritūrus
rēddimus	redīmus	quaéris	quéris
venīmus	vēnīmus	ēducō	ēducō
vēnīmus	vēniimus	appellō, serō	appellō, serō
opertus	oppertus	fundō, mandō	fundō, mandō
oblītus	oblītus	cōnsternō	cōnsternō



## PART IV: SYNTAX

### INTRODUCTORY DEFINITIONS

**353. Syntax** (syntaxis) is the part of grammar that treats of the sentence and its constructions.

#### THE SENTENCE AND ITS PARTS

**354.** A **sentence** is a *finite* verb (184) or a related group of words *containing*  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{used to express} \\ \text{a thought} \end{array} \right.$  or *implying* a finite verb

<i>ī</i>	<i>go</i>
<i>dormit</i>	<i>he sleeps</i>
<i>estne Deus?</i>	<i>is there a God?</i>
<i>periculum in morā</i>	<i>(there is) danger in delay</i>

**355.** The **subject** is *that about which* something is said (380, 516, 544)

**356.** The **predicate** is that which is *said of* the subject (*by means of a finite verb*); thus, in the sentence

Caesar, vir magnā virtute, imperātor fuit (clārus est)

Caesar, vir magnā virtute	<i>is the complete subject</i>
Caesar	<i>is the subject (nominative)</i>
imperator fuit (clārus est)	<i>is the complete predicate</i>
fuit	<i>is the predicate verb</i>
imperātor	<i>is the predicate substantive</i>
clārus	<i>is the predicate adjective</i>
imperātor and clārus	<i>are predicate nominatives</i>

*Note:* There are likewise predicate participles and predicate pronouns.

**357.** An **attribute** in its widest meaning is any pronoun, adjective, participle, substantive or phrase, used to *modify a noun*, being added to it *without a finite verb*:

hic puer, bonus dux	<i>this boy, a good leader</i>
ōrnātissimus adulēscēns	<i>an excellent young man</i>
Cicerō cōsul	<i>the consul Cicero</i>
mōrēs Gallōrum	<i>Gallic customs</i>
civis patriae amāns	<i>a patriotic citizen</i>
vir magnī ingeniī \	<i>a talented man</i>
vir magnō ingeniō \	
cum dignitate ōtium	<i>honorable leisure</i>

**358.** An *attribute loosely added* (an implied finite verb intervening) to its noun is called an **appositive**; it is a shortened predicate:

Cicerō cōsul id fēcit	<i>C., (he was at the time) a consul, did it</i>
dux noster, prūdēns et fortis...	<i>our leader, (he is) prudent and brave</i>
Alexander, rēx Macedonūm,...	<i>Alexander, a king of Macedonia</i>
rēx pugnāns cecidit	<i>the King fell, (he was at the time) fighting</i>

*Note:* The name appositive is frequently restricted to *substantive appositives*.

**359.** An *attribute closely added* (no implied finite verb intervening) to its noun has *no special name* distinguishing it from the attribute in its general meaning;

dux noster prūdēns et fortis	<i>our prudent and brave leader</i>
urbs Rōma (One idea)	<i>the city of Rome (405)</i>

*Note:* The name attribute is frequently restricted to *adjective attributes closely attached to their nouns*.

**360. Transitive** verbs are verbs whose action goes over (trānsit) from the subject to an object *beyond* it. This object, when expressed, takes the accusative in the active (object accusative) and the nominative in the passive (subject nominative):

videō, aedificō, I see, I build	<i>(The object is not expressed)</i>
domum videō, I see a house	<i>(Domum is object accusative)</i>
domus vidētur, a house is seen	<i>(Domus is subject nominative)</i>



**366.** Complements completing the meaning of *copulative verbs* like *be, become, remain, seem, be considered, chosen, made, named*, are called

1. **predicate complements**, because they complete the meaning of the *predicate* proper (the verb);
- or 2. **subject complements**, because they complete the meaning of the *subject*, with which they are connected by means of the copulas;
- or 3. **attribute complements**, because they are real *modifiers* of the subject.

*Note:* Such complements may be (*predicate*) *substantives, adjectives, participles, phrases* or *clauses* :

creābitur rēx :	Substantive	est magnō ūsuī :	Dative phrase
fit, manet beā tus :	Adjective	est magnō ingeniō :	Ablative phrase
est moritūrus :	Participle	vidēris tristis esse :	Infinitive phrase
est magnae virtūtis :	Gen. phrase	es, quī fuisti :	Clause

**367.** Complements completing the predication of *other (non-copulative) verbs* (or of nouns implying verbal action) by denoting the *object* towards which the action of a verb is directed, are called **objective complements**.

*Note:* Such complements may be (*object*) *genitives, datives, accusatives, ablative phrases, infinitives* and *clauses* :

meminī vestri :	} Objective Genitives	dēspērat dē salūte :	} Prepositional
memoria vestri :		recordor dē tē :	} Phrases
memor vestri :		cupiō legere :	Infinitive
noceō tibi :	Dative	sciō Deum esse :	Acc. with Infin.
laudō discipulum :	Accusative	nōvī quid faciās :	} Object clauses
ūtōr cōnsiliō :	Ablative	laudō quod vēnistī :	

*Note.* Distinguish subjective from objective genitives (439).

**368. Adverbial modifiers** are words, phrases and clauses used to modify verbs, adjectives and adverbs by denoting *place, time, number, manner, means, degree, comparison, condition, concession, opposition, cause, purpose, result, assertion* and *denial* :

fortiter pugnāt	<i>he fights bravely</i>
tam fortis	<i>so brave</i>
tam fortiter	<i>so bravely</i>

## SENTENCES AND CLAUSES

**369.** A **simple**-sentence is a sentence that contains only one finite verb (354):

Carolus dormit	<i>Carl is asleep</i>
Carolus et Albertus artē et gra-	} <i>Carl and Albert are soundly</i>
viter in suis lectis dormiunt	
	<i>asleep in their beds</i>

**370.** A **compound** sentence is a sentence that contains two or more simple sentences belonging together (See 373):

vēnit et vīcit	<i>he came and conquered</i>
vēnī, vīdī, vīcī	<i>I came, saw and conquered</i>
Carolus surrēxit, sed Alber-	} <i>Carl got up, but Albert re-</i>
tus in suō lectō mānsit	
	<i>mained in his bed</i>
num dubium erat uter mānsū-	} <i>was it doubtful which of the two</i>
rus, uter surrēctūrus esset?	
	<i>would remain and which get up?</i>

**371.** A **clause** is a simple sentence that belongs to a compound sentence (373).

**372.** **Coordinate** clauses are clauses of equal rank;

**main**, (principal) and **subordinate** } clauses are of  
or independent (leading) and dependent } unequal rank;  
thus, surrēxit *and* mānsit (370,) and uter }  
surrēctūrus *and* uter mānsūrus esset } are coordinate,  
mānsūrus (esset) as well as } subordinate  
surrēctūrus esset are at the same time } to dubium erat

*Note:* A dependent clause may govern another dependent clause: thus, in the sentence

dīcam uter surrēxerit, cum } *I will tell which of the two got*  
cōs excitātum vēnissem } *up, when I came to call them*  
the dependent surrēxerit governs the dependent vē-  
nissem.

**373.** The term *compound* is frequently restricted to sentences that contain two or more clauses none of which is dependent, while sentences that contain independent and dependent clauses are conveniently called (also in this book) *complex* sentences.



## CONNECTIVES OF CLAUSES

**374. Coordinate** clauses are put together

a. without connective particles;

b. by coordinate conjunctions, like *et*, *aut*, *sed*, *nam*, *ergō* (326 sqq.);c. by demonstratives and determinatives, like *hic*, *is*, *idem* (140 sqq.);d. by coordinate relatives: *quī* = *et is*, *sed is*, *nam is*:

a. Carolus surrēxit, Albertus mānsit } *Carl got up, Albert remained*

b. Carolus surrēxit, sed Albertus mānsit } *Carl got up, but Albert remained*

c. T. Labiēnum in Trēverōs mittit. Huic mandat Rēmōs adeat } *he sent T. Labienus to the Treveri*  
 } *commanding him to visit the Remi*

d. statim terga vertērunt. Quōs nostrī cōsecūtī occidērunt } *they took at once to their heels; but*  
 } *our men overtook and killed them*

relinquēbātur ūna per Sēquanōs via, quā (= sed eā) Sēquanīs invītīs ire nōn poterant } *there was still one way left through*  
 } *the territory of the Sequani, which*  
 } *however they could not take without*  
 } *their consent*

**375. Subordinate** clauses are put together

a. without connectives (377);

b. by subordinate conjunctions, like *ut*, *cum*, *quod*, *quamvis*.....

c. by subordinate relatives

1. with pronominal force (674): *quī* with the indicative2. with adjectival force (674) : *quī* with the subjunctive3. with adverbial force (674) : *ut* *ego*, *cum* *ego*...

with the subjunctive:

a. eī mandat Rēmōs adeat } *he ordered him to visit the Remi*

b. quod vēnistī, gaudeō } *I am glad, because you came*

c. 1. hominem dēlēgit ex eīs quōs auxili causā sēcum habēbat } *he chose a man from the number of*  
 } *his auxiliaries*

2. erant omnīnō itinera duo, quibus itineribus domō exire possent } *there were in all two ways by which*  
 } *they could march out of their country*

3. lēgātōs misērunt quī (= ut ii) } *they sent ambassadors to sue for*  
 } *peace*



## CLASSIFICATION OF SUBORDINATE CLAUSES

**376.** Dependent clauses are classified according to their *mode of connection* with the leading clause, their *contents* and their *function* into

Connected and Unconnected Clauses,  
Statements, Questions and Conditions,  
Substantive, Adjective and Adverbial Clauses.

## A. CONNECTED AND UNCONNECTED CLAUSES

**377. Connected** are *Relative* and *Conjunctive* Clauses (375);  
**Unconnected** are

1. *Indirect Questions* (See Note):

sciō quid fēceris, fēceris ne      *I know what you did, whether you did it*

2. *Negatived Demands*:

tibi suādeō nē id faciās      *I advise you not to do it*

3. *Statements of wish, will, permission, propriety, etc. dependent on certain verbal forms; as,*

velim, nōlim, mālim eās      *I should like.....you to go (659)*  
licet, oportet, necesse est eās      *you may, ought to, must go*  
fac eās; cave eās      *do go; beware of going*

4. *Often statements dependent on verbs of willing and demanding:*

vīsne eam?      *shall I go?*  
ōrō, hortor, mandō eās      *I ask, advise, order you to go*

*Note:* Some clauses may be dependent in thought only:

hōc fēcistī; gaudeō      *you did it; I am glad of it*  
veniās; ā tē petō      *may you come; I ask you*

A conjunction will make them dependent in form also:

quod hōc fēcistī, gaudeō      *I am glad because you did it*  
a tē petō ut veniās }  
also: petō veniās      *I ask you to come*

Dependent questions and negatived demands are *unconnected* clauses; for quis, — ne, nē etc. do *not join, but determine* sentences, giving them the form of word or sentence questions and negatived demands.

The rules of sequence are observed, as soon as the clause ceases to be dependent in thought only:

nē fēceris; suādeō tibi      *don't do it; I advise you*  
but: tibi suādeō nē faciās      *I advise you not to do it*  
tibi suāsī nē facerēs      *I advised you not to do it*

## B. STATEMENTS, QUESTIONS AND CONDITIONS

**378. Statements** declare something : thus,

(dixit) ut irēs (optō) ut eās (accidit) ut irēs (es is) quī abīstī	} are <i>conjunctional</i> and <i>relative</i> clauses containing	} Statements of <i>will,</i> <i>desire,</i> <i>fact,</i> <i>fact.</i>
---	---	---

**Questions** inquire about something : thus,

(scīsne) quis ierit ? (sciō) quis ierit	} are <i>unconnected</i> <i>clauses containing</i>	} <i>questions.</i>
--	---	---------------------

**Conditions** assume a prerequisite for something else : thus,

sī hōc dīcis, (errās) quī hōc dīcat, (erret) sī potes, (tacē)	} are <i>conjunctional</i> and <i>relative</i> clauses containing	} <i>conditions.</i>
---	---	----------------------

**NOTE: Exclamations** are statements etc. expressing *strong emotion*.

## C. SUBSTANTIVE, ADJECTIVE AND ADVERBIAL CLAUSES

**379. Substantive** (or noun) clauses are clauses that do the work of substantives, performing the functions of

- a. *subjects,*      b. *direct objects,*      c. *indirect objects,*  
d. *predicate substantives,*      e. *appositives:*

a. quis, ubi... fēcerit nōtum est quī fēcit laudandus est quod rediit mirābile vidētur	nōn dubium est quīn redierit fierī potest ut redierit periculum est nē abeat
b. scīmus quis, ubi... fēcerit quae fēcit laudō quod rediit miror	nōn dubitō quīn redierit perfēcī ut redīret (result) tibi concēdō ut abeās
c. quis prōdest quibus potest?	pārē quibus dēbēs
d. tū es quī nōs liberāstī	vōs estis quī mea legitis
e. omnibus idem faciendum est, ut domō ēmigrent : (Appositive ut-clause explaining the <i>subject</i> .) beneficia commemorō, quod amicus appellātus es, ..... : ( Appos. quod - cl. expl. the <i>object</i> .)	hōc ūnō feris praestāmus, quod colloquimur inter nōs : (Appos. to an <i>adverbial ablative</i> .) tōtum in eō est ut tibi imperēs : (Appositive ut - clause explaining the predicate complement.)

**Adjective** clauses are clauses that do the work of adjectives:

domus in quā nātus sum	annus est cum hōc facis
puer quī pārēre nesciat	locus ubi pārēndum est

**Adverbial** clauses are clauses that do the work of adverbs, modifying verbs, adjectives and adverbs by expressing

a. *purpose*,      b. *result*,      c. *cause*,      d. *time*,      e. *place*,  
f. *concession*,      g. *opposition*,      h. *comparison*,      i. *proviso*,      j. *condition*:

a. ēsse oportet ut vivās; nē caperētur, fūgit;	f. quamquam abest ā culpā, tamen suspiciōne nōn caret;
b. māior est quam ut invideat; nēmō adeō ferus est ut mītēscere nōn possit;	g. mille sumus, cum hostis nōn amplius sescentōs habeat; h. horrent eum quasi cōram adsit;
c. quae cum ita sint, perge; quod tūtus nōn erat, abiit;	ut sēmentem fēceris, ita metēs; plūra dixi quam volui;
d. cum reverterētur, dēcessit; nōn prius abiit, quam vēnit;	aliud dicis ac sentis; i. oderint, dum metuant;
e. quō imperāveris, conveniēmus;	j. si hōc discēs, gaudēbō

**NOTE:** Care should be taken to distinguish *substantive* and *adverbial* clauses of *purpose*, *result*, *cause*, *time* and *place* from one another.

## THE SUBJECT NOMINATIVE

**380.** The **subject** of a sentence is put in the *nominative* (355, 544, 516).

**381.** Any word, phrase, clause or sentence *may be the subject* of a sentence (382).

**382.** *Indeclinable* words as well as phrases, clauses and sentences, are considered neuter and singular (13, 3; 271):

tū est ūnīus syllabae	(the word) tū is monosyllabic
appāret nōs ad agendum	} we are evidently born for work
esse nātōs (Phrase)	
quod v ēnistī, grātum eī est	} your arrival is agreeable to him
(Clause)	
“v ēnī, vīdī, vīcī” illud	} “I came, saw and conquered” is
Caesaris est (Sentence)	
	} the well-known word of Caesar

**383.** As a *personal pronoun* is implied in every finite form of the verb (184, 191), it is *not expressed*, when used as subject, except for the purpose of emphasis:

iī; itō; eat	I went; you, he shall go
ego āiō, tū negās	I say yes, you say no

**384.** The **indefinite subject** *we, you, they, one, it, people, the world* etc., is expressed by

- the personal and impersonal *passive* (364),
  - the *first person plural*, if the speaker includes himself,
  - the *second person singular* with the subjunctive (656)
  - the *third person plural*,
  - quis, aliquis, quispiam* (656):
- laud o r, laudāris, laudāt ur } people praise me, you, him;  
itur, itum est } they are going, they have g.;
  - quae volumus, ea crēdimus } we gladly believe what we  
libenter } desire
  - dīc ās, dīxerīs } one may say; you may say
  - dīcunt, trādunt, ferunt } it is said, related
  - sī quis dīcat (dīcit) } if a person (one) should say

## THE PREDICATE

**385.** Any *finite* form (184) of an *intransitive* verb (361) may be the complete predicate of a sentence:

<b>est</b> Deus	<i>God exists</i>
puer <b>currit</b>	<i>the boy is running</i>

**386.** *Transitive* (360) and *copulative* (366) verbs form complete predicates with the aid of complements (365); transitive verbs require a direct object (362), copulative verbs require nouns, phrases or clauses as their complements (366).

**387.** A **predicate noun** (10; 365) used as complement of copulative verbs is put in the nominative; copulative are e. g.:

<i>be and seem,</i>	<i>remain, become</i>
<i>be regarded,</i>	<i>named and made:</i>

sum, videor beātus	<i>I am, seem happy</i>
maneō beātus	<i>I remain happy</i>
fīunt, evādunt orātōrēs	<i>they become orators</i>
putor, habeor doctus	<i>I am regarded as learned</i>
existimantur acūtī	<i>they are considered as acute men</i>
dīcor, appellor rēx	<i>I am called a king</i>
dēligor, dēsignor cōsul	<i>I am chosen, designated consul</i>
fīo beātus (429)	<i>I am made happy</i>

*Note 1.:* The doubled nominative of the passive becomes a doubled accusative in the active:

*Passive:* rēx ā vōbīs dīcor     *Active:* rēgem mē dīcitīs

*Note 2.:* Esse takes adverbial modifiers both as a verb of complete predication (meaning *exist, live, take place*) and, though less frequently, as copula:

fuit ante Rōmam conditam	<i>he lived before the building of R.</i>
ita sum (= tālis sum)	<i>such am I</i>
sīc est (Impersonal)	<i>so it is (= sīc sē rēs habet)</i>
bene est; mihi melius est (Imp.)	<i>it is well; I feel better</i>
rēctē sunt omnia	<i>all is well</i>



## AGREEMENT

**388. Appositives** (358) always agree with their nouns in *case*; appositive communia (13, 4) in *number* and *case*; appositive mobilia (15) in *gender*, *number* and *case*:

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| a. Rōma, caput Italiae                 | <i>Rome, the capital of Italy</i>           |
| urbem Syracūsās cēpit                  | <i>he took the city of Syracuse</i>         |
| b. sapientia, nātūrae comes            | <i>wisdom, nature's companion</i>           |
| c. stilus, optimus et praestantissimus | <i>the pen, the best and preeminent</i>     |
| dicendi effector ac magister           | <i>{ producer and teacher of eloquence</i>  |
| et genus et fōrmam rēgīna              | <i>{ both birth and beauty the al-</i>      |
| pecūnia dōnat                          | <i>{ mighty dollar gives</i>                |
| illae omnium doctrīnārum               | <i>{ the great originator of all learn-</i> |
| invenitricēs, Athēnae                  | <i>{ ing, Athens</i>                        |

**389. Appositives to possessive pronouns** take the *genitive*:  
 tuum discipulī officium     *your duty as a pupil*

**390. Attributes** (i. e. adjectives, pronouns and participles) agree with their substantives in *gender*, *number* and *case* (359).

Attributes referring to more than one noun agree with the *first* or *last* or, for the purpose of emphasis, with *all*:

- |                                 |   |
|---------------------------------|---|
| a. amīcus certus                | <i>a reliable friend</i>                      |
| eōdem diē                       | <i>on the same day</i>                        |
| praeteritum tempus              | <i>the past time</i>                          |
| b. rēs multae operae et labōris | <i>a task requiring hard work and trouble</i> |
| ingenium, studia, mōrēs tuī     | <i>your ability, studies and habits</i>       |
| omnēs agrī et maria omnia       | <i>all the lands and all the seas</i>         |

**391. Predicates** belonging to a **simple** subject agree with it, as much as possible (388), in *person* and *number*, *gender* and *case*:

- |                                     |  |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| Themistoclēs vēnī ad vōs            | <i>I, Themistocles, have come to you</i> |
| dōs est decem talenta               | <i>the dowry is ten talents</i>          |
| ūsus (vīta) est magister (magistra) | <i>experience (life) is a teacher</i>    |
| tempus est magister (m.!).          | <i>time is a teacher</i>                 |
| dīvitiae quasi ducēs sunt           | <i>wealth is, as it were, a guide</i>    |
| ad voluptātem                       | <i>to enjoyment</i>                      |
| adsentatiō est vitiōrum adiūtrix    | <i>flattery is the helpmate of vices</i> |



## AGREEMENT BY ATTRACTION

**392.** The *verb* usually agrees with *predicate substantives* that are nearer than the subject:

nōn omnis

error stultitia dīcenda est	} not every error should be called folly
error dīcendus est stultitia	
contentum suis rēbus esse (382)	} to be content with one's estate is the greatest wealth
maximae sunt divitiae	

**NOTE:** The *verb* often agrees with *appositives* to names of cities and rivers:

Corinthus, tōtius Graeciae lūmen,	} Corinth, the light of all Greece, has been extinguish'd
extinctum est	
flūmen Rhēnus altum est	the river Rhine is deep

**393.** Predicates belonging to a *preceding compound* subject whose parts are joined by a *simple et*, -*que* or *atque* and denote *living beings only*,

- a. are usually put in the plural number;  
and in case of difference in person or gender
- b. prefer the first person to the other two, and the 2d to the 3d,
- c. and are masculine rather than feminine:

- a. pater et frāter beātī sunt      father and brother are happy  
māter et soror beātae sunt      mother and sister are happy
- b. ego et tū valēmus      you and I are well  
ego et pater valēmus      father and I are well  
tū et pater valētis      father and you are well
- c. pater et māter beātī sunt      father and mother are happy  
pāvōnēs et columbae amīci s.      peacocks and doves are friends

*But*, the predicate sometimes agrees with the nearest subject:

Orgetorīgis filia atque ūnus	} the daughter of Orgetorix and one of his sons were taken prisoners
ē filiis captus est	
vōs ipsī et senātus restitit	you yourselves and the senate resis'd

**394.** In all other cases the predicate usually agrees with the *nearest* single subject, (unless the agreement by sense [395 Note] should be necessary):

- a. beāt **us** est pater et frāter } *father and brother are happy*  
     beātī sunt pater et frāter }  
     pater beāt **us** est et frāter } *father is happy; so is my brother*
- b. pater, māter, frāter beātus est } *father, mother and brother are happy*  
     (or beātī sunt) }  
     et ego et vōs scītis (scīmus) } *both you and I know*  
     nec tū nec illī sciunt (scītis) } *neither you nor they know*  
     aut tū aut illī sciunt (scītis) } *either you or they know*  
     nōn tū, sed illī sciunt } *not you, but they know*
- c. **est** (sunt) in eō virtūs et } *there is worth in him, and honesty and*  
     probitās et summum officium } *the highest sense of duty*  
     impedimenta et ōmnis equitātus } *the baggage and all the cavalry followed*  
     secū **t us** est }

#### AGREEMENT BY SENSE

##### (Cōstructiō ad sēsum)

**395.** The form of the predicate is often determined by the *meaning* (not the form) of the subject:

- pars, milia, capitā cōiūratiōnis } *a part, thousands, the heads of the con-*  
     (i. e. hominēs) caesi sunt } *spiracy were put to death*  
     suum quisque habeant } *let every one keep his own*
- senātus populusque Rōmānus } *the Roman senate and people decreed*  
     dēcrēvit (One idea) }
- tempus necessitasque postulat } *the emergency requires*  
     dux cum militibus capitur (ca-) } *the leader is taken prisoner with*  
     piuntur } *his soldiers*

*Note:* Abstract ideas are frequently expressed or referred to by *neuter* forms of adjectives, participles or verbs.

- triste lupus stabulis } *the wolf is a bane for folds*  
     omnium rerum mors extrēmum } *of all things death is the end*  
     virtūs et probitās inter sē iunguntur } *worth and honesty are bound together*  
     (iūcta or iūctae sunt) }
- beneficium et iniūria inter sē } *kindness and insult are contraries*  
     contrāria sunt }
- honōrēs et victoriae fortuita sunt } *h. and v. are gifts of chance*
- Similarly inanimate objects:*  
     mūrus et porta dē coelō tacta sunt } *wall and gate were struck by lightning*

**396. Pronouns** used as subjects or objects agree (by *attraction*) in gender, number and case with the *predicate common noun* of their clause:

ista quidem vīs est	<i>that is violence, indeed</i>
eum dicō honōrem	<i>that I call honor</i>
quae est libertās?	<i>what kind of liberty is it?</i>
N., quī est vīcus.....	<i>N., a village.....</i>
N., quae est urbs.....	<i>N., a city.....</i>
N., quod est oppidum.....	<i>N., a town.....</i>
Belgae, quam tertiam esse	<i>the Belgians, who we have said</i>
partem Galliaedixerāmus)	<i>constitute a third part of Gaul</i>

**397.** In *all other cases* pronouns used as subjects or objects agree with their *antecedents* in gender and number, as predicates agree with their subjects (391 sqq.); their case, however, depends upon their relation in the clause in which they are:

pater, quī; māter, quae	<i>the father, who; the mother, who</i>
pater et māter, quī	<i>father and mother, who</i>
ūsus ac disciplīna, quam	<i>(the training and discipline which</i>
or quae ā nōbīs accēperant	<i>) they had received from us</i>
flūmen, quod appellātur Rhēnus	<i>a river, called the Rhine</i>
venī, erit id (382) eī grātum	<i>come, you will oblige him</i>
sī ā vōbīs, id quod or quod	<i>(if I should be deserted by you,</i>
nōn spērō, dēserar.....	<i>) which I do not hope</i>
virtūtēs, quārum vīs magna est	<i>virtue, whose power is great</i>

**NOTE:** The accusative of a relative is sometimes attracted into the ablative of the antecedent

nātus eō patre, quō dīxī	<i>born of the father that I said</i>
--------------------------	---------------------------------------

**398.** Pronouns occasionally agree with *appositives* or by *sense*:

flūmen Rhēnus quī or quod...	<i>(the river Rhine which.....</i>
eum or id trānsiērunt...	<i>) they crossed it.....</i>
servilī (=servōrum) tumultū,	<i>(during the rebellion of the slaves</i>
quōs ūsus ac disciplīna sublevābant	<i>) who were helped by.....</i>

<i>Distinguish</i> quae est libertās?	<i>what kind of liberty?</i>
from quid est libertās?	<i>what is (the definition of) liberty?</i>

## POSITION OF ATTRIBUTES

**399.** Possessive and indefinitive pronouns, *ille* in the sense of "that well-known," ordinals and the adjectives *Rōmānus* and *Latīnus* commonly *follow*; all other agreeing attributes oftener *precede* than follow their nouns:

- |                            |                    |                                    |
|----------------------------|--------------------|------------------------------------|
| a. <i>pater tuus</i> ,     | <i>puer quīdam</i> | <i>your father, a certain boy</i>  |
| <i>hōrā tertiā</i>         |                    | <i>at three o'clock</i>            |
| <i>populus Rōmānus</i>     |                    | <i>the Roman people</i>            |
| <i>Sōcrates ille</i> (403) |                    | <i>famous Socrates</i>             |
| <i>Always rēs pūblica</i>  |                    | <i>the state, the commonwealth</i> |
| b. <i>hic vir</i> ,        | <i>is dies</i>     | <i>this man, that day</i>          |
| <i>quī rēx?</i>            | <i>quālis rēx?</i> | <i>what sort of king?</i>          |
| <i>diēs instat</i> ,       | <i>quō diē</i>     | <i>the day is near on which</i>    |
| <i>equitum tria mīlia</i>  |                    | <i>three thousand horse</i>        |
| <i>Marathōnia pugna</i>    | }                  | <i>the battle of Marathon</i>      |
| <i>pugna Marathōnia</i>    |                    |                                    |

**400.** *Summus*, *medius*, *īnfirmus*, *prīmus* and *extrēmus*  
*highest, middle, lowermost, first and last*

often denote a part of an object and usually stand *before* the noun and after the preposition:

<i>summus mōns</i>	{ <i>the top of the mountain</i>
	{ <i>the highest mountain</i>
<i>per mediam urbem</i>	<i>through the middle of the city</i>
<i>prīmō vēre</i>	<i>at the beginning of spring</i>
<i>extrēma hieme</i>	<i>at the end of winter</i>

**401.** Prepositional phrases used as attributes *follow* their nouns and are usually united with them by means of relatives, participles or other attributes:

- |                                   |  |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| a. <i>signum ex ebore</i>         | <i>an ivory statue</i>                         |
| <i>liber dē senectūte</i>         | <i>a book on old age</i>                       |
| <i>mors cum (sine) glōriā</i>     | <i>a glorious (inglorious) death</i>           |
| <i>iter per Sēquanōs</i>          | <i>a journey through the territory of.....</i> |
| <i>reditus in patriam</i>         | <i>the return to one's native place</i>        |
| b. <i>pōns quī est ad Genāvam</i> | <i>the bridge near Geneva</i>                  |
| <i>pugna ad Cannās facta</i>      | <i>the battle at Cannae</i>                    |
| <i>ēius ad amīcum epistula</i>    | <i>the letter to his friend</i>                |

*Note:* English prepositional phrases are usually expressed by genitives and adjectives (See 402 and 439):

a. bellum Venetōrum }	<i>the war against the Veneti</i>
Veneticum bellum }	<i>the war with the Veneti</i>
trānsitus Alpium	<i>the march across the Alps</i>
pāx Ariovistī	<i>peace with Ariovistus</i>
b. victōria cīvīlis	<i>victory over citizens</i>
via Tiburtīna	<i>the road to Tibur</i>
Lysander Lacedaemonius	<i>Lysander of Sparta</i>
maritimae cīvitatēs	<i>states on the sea</i>
tumultus servīlis	<i>rebellion of the slaves</i>

**402.** Attributive genitives are preferably put after their nouns, or inserted:

magnitūdō pecūniae	<i>the great amount of money</i>
magna rērum permūtātiō	<i>a great change of things</i>
vīrtūtēs animī magnae	<i>great moral virtues</i>
illud Platōnis (=Platōnicum)	<i>the well-known saying of Plato</i>

*NOTE:* Stereotyped expressions are e. g. :

plēbis scītum	<i>decree of the people</i>
senātūs cōsultum	<i>decree of the senate</i>
tribūnus plēbis	<i>tribune of the people</i>
magister equitum	<i>chief of the cavalry</i>
magister mōrum	<i>master of morals</i>

**403.** Praising and blaming attributes, except surnames, are added to their nouns with an attached *ille* or an appositive appellative:

Catō ille sapiēns	<i>Cato, the famous sage</i>
fortissimus ille Hannibal	<i>Hannibal, the famous hero</i>
Lūcullus vir summā auctōritāte	<i>Lucullus, a very influential man</i>
Corinthus, urbs opulentissima }	<i>Corinth, a very wealthy city</i>
illa opulentissima Corinthus }	<i>famous and wealthy Corinth</i>
but Alexander Magnus	<i>Alexander the Great</i>



## POSITION OF APPOSITIVES

**404. Appositives**, especially substantives modified by attributes, are oftener placed after than before their nouns :

Cicerō cōnsul *the consul Cicero*

Caesar imperātor *Caesar, the general*

C., imperātor excellentī ingeniō C., *an eminently talented general*

dux noster, prūdens et fortis *our leader, prudent and brave*

Note : Imperātor meaning emperor *precedes its noun* :

Imperātor Tiberius *Emperor Tiberius*

**405.** Rēx, king, when used without attribute, and some geographical names, as urbs, flūmen etc. usually stand before their nouns, forming, as it were, one idea with them; they are attributes rather than appositives (359) :

rēx Xerxēs, flūmen Rhēnus *King Xerxes, the river Rhine*  
*Always urbs Rōma the City of Rome*

**406.** Appositives to possessive pronouns (389) are inserted :

meā ipsīus operā *by my efforts alone*  
 nostrā cōnsulum operā *by our efforts as consuls*

**407.** Appositives (substantives, adjectives and participles), may be rendered by words, phrases or clauses (358; 570 sqq.) :

Cicerō rem pūblicam cōnsul servāvit { *C. saved the state as consul;*  
*or... in his consulship*  
*or... when he was consul*  
 prīnceps in proelium ibat { *he went first*  
*he was the first to go*  
*he was the first who went*

**408.** The principal substantives used as appositives are personal substantives denoting

**age**, as, puer, adulēscēns, iuvenis, senex.....

or **office**, as, cōnsul, lēgātus, praetor, miles, dux.....

quae puerī peccāvimus, senēs } *the old man will expiate the*  
 luēmus } *sins of the boy*

Titus miles abiit, im- } *Titus went away a soldier, and*  
 perātor rediit } *returned as emperor*



**409.** The principal adjectives and participles used as appositives are those that denote

**order or state,  
and sōlus, ūnus, tōtus:**

- a. *prīmus* (of two prior) iit *he went first* (See 407)  
*postrēmus* (posterior) iit *he was the last to go*  
*prīnceps, ultimus* iit *he went first, last*  
*rārī, cōnfertī proeliantur* ...*scattered, in compact order*  
*frēquentēs vērērunt* *they came in great numbers*
- b. *vīvōs eōs combussit* *he burnt them alive*  
*exsanguis et mortuus concidisti* *pale and taint you fell down*  
*laetus; maestus or trīstis* *with joy; full of sadness*  
*(libēns) or libenter, invītus* *gladly, reluctantly*  
*sciēs, īnsciēs* *knowingly; unwittingly*  
*adversus, āversus* *face to face, from behind*  
*praesēs, absēs* *in my, your, his presence, absence*
- c. *sōlus vēnit* *he came alone*  
*ūnī Sēquanī trīstēs* *the Sequanians alone gazed*  
*terram intuēbantur* } *pensively upon the ground*  
*sum tōtus vester* *I am entirely yours*  
*sē tōtōs voluptātibus trādidērunt* *they gave themselves completely to pl.*

*Distinguish prīm us ego vōs docuī from prīm ōs vōs docuī*

**410.** Appositives with *ut* express cause, restriction and comparison:

- ut puer imperītus rērum es* { *since you are only a boy,*  
*you are inexperienced*  
*plūrimae in eō, ut in puerō, }* *for a boy he is very learned*  
*litterae sunt*  
*ut puer loqueris, cum sis adulēscēs* { *you talk like a boy, though you are*  
*a young man*

**NOTE:** Comparison is also expressed by *quasi* and *tamquam*:

- nostrae causae ducēs et quasi }* *they have been the leaders and as it*  
*signiferi fuērunt* } *were the standard bearers in our cause*  
*tamquam serpēs tē intulisti* *you have entered like a serpent*

**411.** Appositives are often replaced by phrases:

- prō occīsō (- tamquam occīsus)* } *he was left for dead*  
*relictus est*  
*prō cive sē gessit* *he acted like a citizen*  
*obsidum locō, (nōmine or }* *he demanded them as hostages*  
*numerō) eōs poposcit* }

## THE ACCUSATIVE

**412.** The **accusative** is the case of the **direct object** (362).

### ACCUSATIVE OF THE INNER OBJECT

**413.** The *inner object* may be

- a. a substantive differing from the verb in meaning,
- b. a substantive related to the verb in meaning, (cognate accusative, usually modified by an attribute),
- c. a neuter pronoun or numeral adjective:

a. urbem condere	<i>to found a city</i>
b. deōrum vītam vīvere	<i>to live a divine life</i>
turpissimam servitūtem servīre	<i>to serve in the most shameful slavery</i>
stadium currere	<i>to run a race</i>
longam īre vīam	<i>to be on a long journey</i>
c. hōc (-hāc rē) gaudeō	<i>I am glad of this</i>
id (-dē eā rē) dubitō	<i>I doubt it</i>
omnia (Nom.) dubitantur	<i>everything is doubted</i>
id ūnum studeō	<i>this is my only aim</i>
nihil aliud (-nūllī aliīrēi) st.	<i>I have no other aim</i>
multum potest (valet) apud...	<i>he has great influence over.....</i>
pauca querar	<i>I shall make a few complaints</i>
cētera (-in cēterīs rēbus)	<i>I agree with you in (regard to)</i>
tibi assentior	

**414.** The accusative of the inner object is often used adverbially, rarely attributively:

a. quid rīdēs?	<i>why are you laughing?</i>
id temporis (-eō tempore) vēnit	<i>he came at that time</i>
multum sunt in venātiōne	<i>they are much engaged in hunting</i>
magnam partem	<i>to a great extent</i>
aliquid, nōn nihil	<i>to some extent, somewhat</i>
nihil; summum	<i>not at all; at most</i>
b. homo id aetātis (-eā aetāte)	<i>a man of that age (357)</i>

**NOTE:** The accusative of space and time is related to that of the inner object (531; 536; 413, b.).



**419. eum sequor****eum fugiō**

vōx, vīrēs mē dēficiunt

*But ab eō dēficiō***eum** omnī virtute adaequat*But eī virtūte pār est***eum** ulcīscor prō iniūriīs

iniūriās ulcīscē, amīcōs

meliōra spērāre

bellum parāre

bonōs imitārī, aemulārī

eum conveniam (274)

pretium inter nōs convenit

mihi tēcum convenit, ut...

*Note:* All compounds of **sequor** and **fugiō** may take the accusative; **obsequor**, however, takes the dative:

huic, hūius voluntātī obsequor

*I go **after** him, follow him**I flee **before** (escape) him**my voice, my strength gives out**I fall away from him**he is his equal in every virtue**he equals him in virtue**I take revenge **on** him for...**to **avenge** wrongs, friends**to hope **for** better circumstances**prepare **for** war**to imitate, vie with the good**I will go to see him**we agree on the price**we agree to...**I yield to him, humor his wishes*

**420. eum** superās, eī praestās }  
**eum** or eī antecēdis doctrīnā }

*you excel him in learning*

inter eōs excellit

*he excels them***421. Verbs transitive in Latin, but intransitive in English are**

inīre cōsulātum

*to enter **upon** the consulship*

horrēre crūdēlitātem

*to shudder **at** the cruelty*

refōrmīdāre bellum

*to stand **in** awe of war*

rīdēre fāmae mendācia

*to laugh **at** rumor's untruths***422. Verbs expressing painful emotions take the accusative or dē with the ablative:**

dolēre cāsum, dē cāsū

*to grieve **at** or **for** the misfortune*

mīrārī singulārem impudentiam

*to wonder **at** the extraord'y impudence*

maerēre, lūgēre mortem patris

*to mourn, weep **over** the death of his f.*

gemere ignōminiam, dē i'ā

*to sigh **over** the disgrace*

queri fātum, dē suō fātō

*to complain **of** one's fate*

dēspērāre pācem, dē pāce

*to despair **of** peace*

dēspērāre dē sē or sibi

*to despair **of** oneself**But gaudēre, laetārī rē**to be glad **of**, rejoice in*

exultāre, glōriārī rē

*to exult **over**, glory in*

## DOUBLE ACCUSATIVE (Inner and Outer)

## 423. Teach and Conceal

tē artem doceō *I teach you an art*

*Note:* The passive of docēre, to teach, is usually discere, to learn:  
artem ā mē discis; or, artē ā mē ērudīris

*But:* calamitāte doctus *taught wit by misfortune*

Graecis litteris doctus *versed in Greek letters*

*Note:* docēre, to teach, is to be distinguished from docēre, to inform:

tē dē caede doceō *I inform you of the murder*

*Passive:* dē caede ā mē docēris *you are informed by me of the murder*

tē clādem cēlō *I conceal the defeat from you*

tē dē clāde cēlō *I keep you in the dark about the ...*

*Passive only:* dē clāde cēlāris *you are kept in the dark about the defeat*

## 424. Transport

Verbs denoting "transport," astrādūcere, trāicere, trānsportāre keep the accusative of the inner object in the passive:

exercitum Axonam trādūxit *he led his army across the Axona*

exercitus Axonam trāductus est *the army was led across the Axona*

## 425. Poscō, reposcō, flāgitō

tē ōr ā tē pācem poscimus *we demand peace from you*

*Pass. only:* pāx ā tē poscitur *peace is demanded from you*

*But:*

postulō and petō aliquid ā tē *I demand something from you*

quaerō aliquid ex, ab, dē tē } *I ask you about something*  
(inter) rogō tē dē aliquā rē }

## 426. Moneō and cōgō; rogō, interrogō and ōrō,

take as an inner object a neuter pronoun or adjective, which remains in the passive:

hōc tē admoneō *I give you this advice*

id cōgit omnēs poenā *he compels all to it by punishment*

*Passive:* istud rogātus sum *this request was made to me*

427. Aliquem sententiam rogāre *to ask one's (official) opinion*

*Passive:* princeps sententiam rogāris *you are the first to be asked for y. o.*



**428.**                    *Regard as, give and take,  
and choose and name and make*

take a *double accusative* (object and predicate accusative) in the active, and a *double nominative* (subject and predicate nominative) in the passive (365):

tē virum fortem putō, }	<i>I regard you as ( judge</i>
dūcō, iūdicō, arbitror... }	<i>you to be) a man of courage</i>
vōs obsidēs relinquō, dō	<i>I leave (give) you as hostages</i>
vōs nōbīs sociōs sūmimus, }	<i>we take (receive, admit) you as</i>
accipimus, adsciscimus }	<i>our allies</i>
tē imperātōrem dēligimus, }	<i>we choose you, appoint you as</i>
creāmus }	<i>our leader</i>
te patrem patriae vocāmus, }	<i>we call (name) you, speak of you</i>
nōmināmus, dīcimus }	<i>as the father of our country</i>
<i>Passive: cōsul fīs</i>	<i>you are made consul</i>
vir fortis ā mē putāris	<i>you are regarded by me as a brave man</i>

**NOTE:** The inner object (virum fortem, obsidēs...) is a predicate accusative complement in the active, and becomes a predicate nominative complement in the passive (365).

**429.** *Reddere and efficere, render, make,* take only predicate adjectives as their complements; their passive is replaced by *fieri*:

avāritiā eōs caecōs reddit, }	<i>avarice makes them blind</i>
facit, efficit }	<i>avarice blinds them</i>
avāritiā caecī fiunt	<i>they are blinded by avarice</i>

**430.** *Ha b ē re, have,* takes a predicate accusative:

habeō tē amīcum	<i>I have a friend in you</i>
The active of <i>ha b ē re, regard as,</i> takes only phrase complements:	
habeō, d ū c ō, putō tē pr ō amīcō, }	<i>I regard you as a friend</i>
in amīcīs, amīcōrum lo c ō... }	
habēris hostis, hostium numerō,	<i>you are r. as an enemy of the country</i>

**431.**                    *Sē praestāre, sē praebēre*

fortem, virum tē praestā	<i>show yourself brave, a man</i>
fortem, ignāvum sē praebuit	<i>he proved to be brave, a coward</i>
fortiter, ignāvē sē gessit	<i>he acted courageously, cowardly</i>

*Sē praestāre* requires a praising predicate accusative, *sē gerere* an adverb.)



**432.** An object accusative is used in **exclamations** (564) :

(heu or ô) mē miserum !	(ah) <i>wretched man that I am!</i>
ô tempora, ô mōrēs !	<i>O the times, O the ways of men!</i>

**NOTE:** Ecce ! usually takes the nominative, vae ! the dative :

ecce alius cursor !	<i>behold, another racer !</i>
vae victis !	<i>woe to the vanquished !</i>

Accusative of extent : 531-533; 536.

Accusative with the infinitive : 544-560.

## THE GENITIVE

**433.** The genitive is used as a complement of substantives, adjectives and verbs (357, 365, 367).

### ATTRIBUTIVE AND PREDICATIVE GENITIVE WITH SUBSTANTIVES

**434.** The genetivus **explicātivus** (epexegeticus) is used to specify certain abstract and collective nouns; as, vōx, nōmen, genus, virtūs, vitium, praemium, poena, periculum; clāssis, cōpiae, auxilia, praesidium :

nōmen Caesaris, carendī	<i>the name Caesar, the word want</i>
nōmen or vōx amicitiae	<i>the word friendship</i>
virtūs iūstītie, fidēi	<i>the virtue of justice, honor</i>
clāssis mille nāvium	<i>a fleet of (consisting of) 1000 ships</i>

### POSSESSIVE GENITIVE

(Genetivus possessivus)

**435.** The possessive genitive denotes ownership; instead of the possessive genitive of personal pronouns possessives are used in agreement with their nouns :

domus <b>rēgis</b> (-domus rēgia)	<i>the king's palace</i>
ad Castoris (supply aedem)	<i>at Castor's (temple)</i>
Flaccus Claudī (i. e. servus)	<i>Flaccus, a slave of Claudius</i>
<i>But:</i> amīcus meus	<i>a friend of mine</i>
domus <b>est</b> rēgis	<i>the house belongs to the king</i>
domus est nostra, vestra	<i>the house is ours, yours</i>
domus <b>fit</b> eius	<i>the house becomes his property</i>

**436.** The impersonal **est** with the genitive or a neuter possessive denotes *a. characteristic, b. duty and c. requirement*:

<i>a. stultī est or stultum est</i>	<i>it is the part of a fool</i>
<i>stultitiae or stultitia est</i>	<i>it is the mark(sign,proof) of folly</i>
<i>cūiusvīs hominis est errāre</i>	<i>every man is liable to error</i>
<i>b. condemnāre iūdicis est</i>	<i>{ to condemn is the duty,</i>
	<i>{ (affair, business) of the judge</i>
<i>meum, tuum, eōrum est</i>	<i>it is my, your, their duty</i>
<i>c. multae operae est</i>	<i>it requires hard work</i>
<i>magnī labōris est</i>	<i>it requires great labor</i>

NOTE: Adjectives of one ending take the genitive only:

<i>prudentis est</i>	<i>it is the mark... of a prudent man</i>
----------------------	---

**437.** Explanatory adjectives are sometimes added to possessive genitives and possessives:

<i>amicōrum sunt communia omnia</i>	<i>{ friends own everything as their</i>
	<i>{ common property</i>
<i>id est cūiusque proprium,</i>	<i>{ what a person is permitted to</i>
<i>quō quisque fruītur atque ūtitur</i>	<i>{ use and enjoy, is his property</i>
<i>mea propria est domus</i>	<i>the house is my own property</i>
<i>īnsula deōrum sacra est</i>	<i>the island is a sanctuary of the gods</i>

Note: Commūnis, proprius and sacer also take the dative:

<i>omni aetātī mors est communis</i>	<i>death is common to every age</i>
<i>īnsula dīs sacra est</i>	<i>the island is consecrated to the gods</i>

**438.** **Causā, grātiā, īnstā, ergō** follow the possessive (genitive):

<i>ēius causā, eōrum causā</i>	<i>on his (their) account</i>
<i>amicī grātiā</i>	<i>for the love of the friend</i>
<i>exemplī grātiā</i>	<i>for example</i>
<i>meā causā, nostrā causā</i>	<i>for my (our) sake (435)</i>
<i>meā ipsius causā</i>	<i>for my own sake (389, 406)</i>
<i>nostrā ipsōrum causā</i>	<i>for our own sake</i>
<i>suā causā id fēcīt</i>	<i>he did it for his own sake</i>
<i>montis īnstā equus</i>	<i>a horse like a mountain</i>
<i>virtūtis ergō (rare)</i>	<i>on account of valor</i>

## SUBJECTIVE AND OBJECTIVE GENITIVE

(Compare 367 and 402)

**439.** A genitive depending on a substantive that contains the idea of an action is called

a. genitīvus **subjectīvus** or **actīvus**,

when it points out the object of the action :

amor patris (=pater amat) *love of the father*

But amor meus (-ego amō) *my love* (435)

b. genitīvus **objectīvus** or **passīvus**,

when it points out the object of the action:

amor patris (-patrem amat) *love of (=toward) the father*

fīdūcia Deī (= Deō fīdit) *trust in God*

amor eōrum *love for them*

amor meī, tuī, nostrī, vestrī *love for me, you, us, you*

grātia beneficiī *gratitude for kindness*

amicitia omnium *friendship with all*

cōsuētūdō hominum *intercourse with men*

precātiō Deī *prayer to God*

fuga hostium *fleeing from the enemy*

iūdicium bellī *judgment about the war*

spēs vincendī *hope of victory*

amor suī, tuitiō suī *self-love, self-preservation*

cognitiō suī, fīdūcia suī *self-knowledge, self-reliance*

NOTE: The objective genitive is rarely replaced by possessives :

dēsīderium vestrum { *longing for you*  
*Commonly: your longing*

**440.** Instead of the objective genitive, **in** (ergā, adversus) with the accusative is often used, in order to express a disposition towards a person, especially when a double genitive would cause an ambiguity:

odium in hominum genus) *hatred against mankind*  
odium generis hūmānī }

fīlī in patrem amor *the love of the son for his father*

But only: puerī amor litterārum *the love of the boy for letters*

## GENITIVE AND ABLATIVE OF QUALITY

(Genetivus et ablātivus quālītātis)

**441.** Both the genitive and the ablative of quality are always accompanied by an attribute; the **genitive** is used to express **measure and class**; the (genitive or) **ablative**, to express **quality**.

- |                                |  |
|--------------------------------|--|
| a. fossa decem pedum est       | <i>the trench is ten feet wide (or deep)</i> |
| puer decem annorum             | <i>a boy of ten years</i>                    |
| b. hūius generis difficultātēs | <i>difficulties of such a kind</i>           |
| rēs nullius pretiū             | <i>things of no value</i>                    |
| rēs magnī mōmentī              | <i>things of great importance</i>            |
| c. homō humili statūrā (est)   | <i>(he is) a man of low stature</i>          |
| praestantī prūdentiā vir       | <i>a man of surpassing prudence</i>          |
| vir magnō ingeniō }            | <i>a talented man</i>                        |
| vir magnī ingeniū }            |  |
| vir magnī animī                | <i>a magnanimous man</i>                     |
| vir magnae cōstantiae          | <i>a man of character</i>                    |
| d. vicus oppidi magnitūdine    | <i>a village, the size of a town</i>         |
| clāvī digitī crassitūdine      | <i>nails as thick as a finger</i>            |

**NOTE:** The adjectives commonly used with genitives are magnus, maximus, summus and tantus. Transitory qualities are expressed by the ablative:

nōn semper bonō animō est *he is not always of good cheer*

## GENITIVE OF THE WHOLE

(Genetivus partitīvus)

**442.** The partitive genitives designates the **whole** to which a part belongs. It is used with *substantive of quantity*:

- |                           |   |
|---------------------------|---|
| magna vis tritici         | <i>a great (indefinite) amount of wheat</i> |
| magnus numerus vini       | <i>a great (measured) quantity of wine</i>  |
| medimnus frumentī         | <i>a medimnus of corn</i>                   |
| (pars,) duo milia militum | <i>(a part of,) two thousand soldiers</i>   |

**443.** The partitive genitive of the personal pronouns are:

*Sg.* : meī, nostrī; tuī, vestrī; eius

*Pl.* : nostrum; vestrum; eōrum etc.

*Ref.* 3d ps. sg. : suī

*Ref.* 3d ps. pl. : Replaced by : suī generis, ē suō numerō :

melior pars nostrī animus	<i>the better part of our being is the</i>
est	<i>soul</i>
pars nostrum fūgit	<i>some of us fled</i>
Reflexive : partem ē suō numero	} <i>they say that some of their number</i>
fūgisse dicunt	
	} <i>have fled</i>

#### 444. The partitive genitive often accompanies

*a.* the neuter singular (nominative and accusative) of pronouns and adjectives used as substantives of quantity;

*b.* the adverbs *satis*, *parum*, *ubi*, *nūquam*, *eō*, used substantively :

<i>a.</i> hōc or id labōris }	<i>this degree of exertion</i>
hīc or is labor }	
<i>But only</i> : sine hōc labōre	<i>without this exertion</i>
aliquid temporis = aliquod tempus	<i>some time</i>
nihil damni = nūllum damnum	<i>no loss, no harm</i>
multum, plūs, plurimum damni	<i>much, more, very much harm</i>
paulum, minus, minimum damni	<i>little, less, very little harm</i>
tantum, quantum, nimium damni	<i>so much, how much, too much harm</i>
<i>b.</i> satis ēloquentiae, }	<i>enough eloquence,</i>
sapientiae parum }	<i>of wisdom too little</i>
ubi terrārum, ubi gentium?	<i>where in the world?</i>
rēs eō est loci, quō.....	<i>the thing is in that condition, in which...</i>
<i>But satis magna pecūnia</i>	<i>enough money</i>
eatis multi tēstēs	<i>enough witnesses</i>

**445.** Adjectives of the second declension except *aliud*, *may*, when used as substantives and without any addition, be put in the partitive genitive :

nihil novī and nihil novum	<i>nothing new</i>
nihil certī and nihil certum	<i>nothing certain</i>
aliquid novī or aliquid novum	<i>something new</i>
<i>But always:</i>	
nihil aliud, quid aliud?	<i>nothing else, what else?</i>
nihil tē dignum	<i>nothing worthy of you</i>
nihil dīvinum et caeleste	<i>nothing godlike and heavenly</i>
nihil grave	<i>nothing of importance</i>
nihil māius, nihil melius	<i>nothing greater, nothing better</i>



**446.** The genitive of the whole is also used with

*a. comparatives, superlatives and ordinals,*

*b. pronouns, (but uterque and quisque take the partitive genitive of other pronouns only);*

<i>a. māior frātrum</i>	<i>the older of the brothers</i>
<i>fortissimī Gallōrum</i>	<i>the bravest of the Gauls</i>
<i>primī cīvitatīs</i>	<i>the first men of the state</i>
<i>prīnceps omnium</i>	<i>the first of all</i>

*b. quis vestrum, nostrum? who of you? who of us?*

*aliquis philosophōrum one of the philosophers*

*nēmō eōrum none of them*

*quōrum utrīque to each one of whom*

*uterque nostrum, eōrum both of us, of them*

*But uterque cōsul both consuls*

**447.** Numeral adjectives, cardinals (regularly *ūnus*) and *quīdam* prefer **ex** or **dē**, or **agree** with their nouns:

*paucī, complūrēs dē nostrīs } a few, several of our men*  
*or paucī, complūrēs nostrī }*

*duae ex nāvibus nostrīs } two of our ships*  
*or duae navēs nostrae }*

*ūnus ex amicīs one of his friends*

*quīdam ex amicīs a certain friend of his*

*ex quibus ūnus, quīdam one, some one of whom*

*But also quōrum, hōrum ūnus one of whom, one of these*

**448.** The English “*of...*” in “**all of**” and other prepositional phrases expressing no partitive relation, cannot be rendered by a Latin genitive, except in the phrases *omnium nostrum* and *vestrum*:

*nōs omnēs all of us = we all*

*But nostrum omnium of all of us*

*hī utrīque both (of) these parties*

*trecentī sumus there are three hundred of us*

*tam paucī estis there are so few of you*



## II. GENITIVE WITH ADJECTIVES

**449.** The objective genitive is used with adjectives that are incomplete in their meaning, and with similar present participles used adjectively (i.e. denoting a lasting quality):

a. with **adjectives** meaning

skilled, master of and conscious

full, sharing and desirous,

*and their opposites :*

peritus (imperitus) iūris

mentis compos

impotēns irae

cōnsciūs, (nesciūs) sceleris

cōnsciūs **sibi** est sceleris

fōns plēnissimūs piscium

rationis expers

particeps praedae

avidus, cupidus pecūniae

studiōsus tui

fastidiōsus litterarum

*skilled, (unskilled) in law*

*in control of one's senses*

*not master of his temper*

*privy to, (not knowing of) the crime*

*he is conscious of **his** crime*

*a fountain swarming with fish*

*devoid of reason*

*with a share in the booty*

*grasping after money*

*your wellwisher*

*scorning letters*

b. with **present participles** used adjectively :

patriae amāns, amantissimūs

vērītātis diligēns

religiōnis colēns

neglegēns officiī

labōris fugiēns

labōris patiēns

suī dēspiciēns est

tui observantissimūs

*Distinguish*

appetēns glōriae

*from* appetēns glōriam

*patriotic, a devoted patriot*

*careful (a lover) of the truth*

*religious*

*forgetful of duty*

*shirking exertion*

*able to stand hard work*

*he is humble*

*respectfully yours*

*ambitious (as a characteristic)*

*striving (in this instance) after glory*

**450.** **Similis** and **dissimilis** take the genitive of the person, and the genitive or dative of things:

meī similis, nostrī similis

patris simillimus

mors somnō (or somnī, similis est

vērī similis

*like me, similar to us*

*the counterpart of the father*

*death is the likeness of sleep*

*probable*

## III. GENITIVE WITH VERBS

**451. Remind, be mindful and forget**

take a. their complement in the genitive,

but b. neuter pronouns and adjectives }  
used as substantive complements } in the accusative.

(Meminisse and oblivīscor take names of things in the genitive or accusative).

a. admoneō tē veteris amicitiae *I remind you of your old frie'dship*

meminī, oblivīscor ēius *I am mindful of, forget him*

meminī, oblivīscor rei or rem *I am mindful of, forget the thing.*

b. id ūnum tē admoneō *I remind you of one thing*

praeterita meminit *he remembers the past*

Note: meminī eum *I recall him*

ēius mihi in mentem venit  
(impersonal) = ēius meminī } *I recollect him*

Admoneō often takes dē.

Recordor usually takes dē with persons, (dē) or the accusative with things.

## VERBS OF JUDICIAL ACTION

**452. Accuse, convict, condemn, acquit**

take the genitive of the charge (genetivus crīminis):

capitis aliquem accūsāre *bring a capital charge against...*

prōditiōnis arguere, insimulāre *charge with, accuse of treason*

pecūlātus aliquem reum facere *indict one for embezzlement*

ambitūs coarguere, convincere *convict of unlawful canvassing*

coniūratiōnis condemnāre *find guilty of conspiracy*

capitis absolvere *acquit of the capital charge*

**453.** The penalty is usually expressed by multāre with the ablative:

pecūniā multātus est

*he was fined a sum of money*

agrīs multāti sunt

*they were mulcted of their fields*

exsiliō, morte multāre

*punish with exile, death*

capite or capitis damnāre

*sentence to death*

duplī condemnāre

*sentence to pay twofold*

**454.** The genitives of the charge are genetīvī explicatīvī of **crīmine**, nōmine, lēge, iūdicīō; these ablatives are sometimes added :

prōditōnis (crīmine, nōmine) }	<i>the defendant is charged with treason</i>
reus accusātus est }	

<b>455.</b> Also <b>dē</b> vī accūsāre	<i>accuse of an act of violence</i>
dē venēficiīs accusāre	<i>charge with poisoning</i>
dē (pecūniīs) repetundīs }	<i>accuse one of extortion</i>
aliquem postulāre }	
inter sicariōs accūsāre	<i>charge with assassination</i>

**456.** In extra-judicial language the accusative is used :  
accūsō, condemnō neglegentiam tuam; also : in hōc tē accūsō.

#### GENITIVE AND ABLATIVE OF PRICE

(Genetīvus et ablātīvus pretiī)

**457.** **Be worth** and **esteem** express the value by

magnī, <b>plūris</b> , plūrimī	<i>much, more, most (very highly)</i>
parvī, <b>minōris</b> , minimī	<i>little, less, least (very little)</i>
<b>tantī, quantī</b> , maximī	<i>so much, how much, very much</i>
permagnī and prō nihilō	<i>most highly and as naught :</i>

magnī <b>est</b> , plūrimī est	<i>he... is of (very) great value</i>
--------------------------------	---------------------------------------

eum permagnī <b>aestimō</b> , }	<i>I esteem him (highly)</i>
dūcō, putō, faciō }	

magnī <b>fit</b> , magnī <b>habētur</b> (430)	<i>he is prized, highly esteemed</i>
---	--------------------------------------

quantī est, tantī fit	<i>his worth is duly appreciated</i>
-----------------------	--------------------------------------

rem prō nihilō putō	<i>I consider the thing worthless</i>
---------------------	---------------------------------------

Also eum nōn hūius faciō, }	<i>I do not care that much (a snap) for him, not a lock of wool (a fig)</i>
nōn floccī...	

But maximās dīvitīās habet	<i>he is worth a great sum of money</i>
----------------------------	---

*Note:* Tantī is also used in the meaning of operae pretium :  
est mihi tantī *it is worth my while*

*Note:* Magnī est stands for magnī pretiī est (441); similarly, the other genitives are attributes to an implied pretiī.

# 458. Estimate, cost, buy and sell express the value by

- a. the genitives tantī, quantī, plūris and minōris;
- b. in all other cases by the ablative:

domum magnō aestimāre	to rate the house high
parvō stāre, cōnstāre	to cost little
id grātis (=grātiis) stat	it costs nothing (=the thanks)
magnō (parvō) emere	to buy dear (cheap)
aurō patriam vēndidit	he sold his country for gold
minōris quam ceterī vēndō	I sell cheaper than the rest
quantī habitās?	what is the rent of your lodgings?

# 459. Interest and rēfert, { it is for the interest of it ought to concern

express *that which* is for the interest of

by neuter pronouns, infinitives, accusatives with infinitives or indirect questions (271);

*the degree or extent of interest*

by accusatives, adverbs and some genitives; **as**,

a. multum, plūs, plurimum; paulum, minus, minimum;  
aliquid and nihil; tantum and quantum;

b. magnō opere, magis, maximē; vehementer and minimē;

c. magnī, permagnī; parvī, tantī, quantī;

*the person whose interest is concerned*

by the ablatives meā, tuā, nostrā; suā (refl.);

interest also by *genitives of substantives* or other words used as substantives:

1. meā, tuā, nostrā, vestrā, **ēius, eōrum** interest  
**meā, tuā, nostrā, vestrā**, — — rēfert  
*It is for my (thy, our, your, his, their) interest*
2. dīcit, (dīcunt) **suā** (reflexive!) interesse **or** referre,  
*he says (they say) that it is in his (in their) own interest*  
dīcit, (dīcunt) **ēius** (non-reflexive) interesse,  
*he says (they say) that it is in his (another person's) interest*
3. id tuā, magnō opere, magnī, { *that is greatly to your interest*  
multum, vehementer interest } *it ought to concern you greatly*

4. meā interest abīre                      *it is to my interest to go*  
     meā interest tē abīre                  *it is... that you go*  
     meā interest quis abeat               *I am concerned as to who goes*
5. cīvium, reipublicae interest       *it concerns the citizens, the state*  
     omnium nostrum interest (424)      *it concerns us all*
6. quid rēfert?                              *what does it matter?*  
     nihil rēfert                               *it makes no difference*

NOTE: The *thing* concerned commonly takes the accusative with *ad*:

*ad* honōrem tuum interest                *it is for the interest of your honor*

## THE DATIVE

460. The dative is used to denote the end toward which an action is directed; it answers the questions

*to whom?* by pointing out the indirect object of a transitive or intransitive action;

*for whom?* by pointing out the person interested in the action (*dativus possessoris, auctōris, commodi et incommodi, ēthicus, iudicantis*);

*for what end?* by pointing out that for which the action serves or the purpose for which it is intended.

NOTE: Distinguish the *indirect object* of a verb from the *goal* of a verb of motion; the former is expressed by the *dative*, the latter by the *accusative* (governed by a preposition):

dō <b>tibi</b> librum	{	<i>I give <b>you</b> a book</i>
(tibi is indirect object of dō)		<i>I give a book <b>to you</b></i>
eō <b>ad</b> tē; Rōmā m	{	<i>I go <b>to you</b></i>
(tē and Rōmā are the goals of eō)		<i>I go <b>to Rome</b></i>

### 461. INDIRECT OBJECT WITH TRANSITIVE VERBS

#### D A R E

dō tibi librum	<i>I give you a book</i>
litterās tibi reddō	<i>I deliver the letter to you</i>
litterās <b>ad</b> tē dō, scrībō	<i>I write a letter to you</i>
aurum tibi crēdō	<i>I trust the gold to you</i>
urbī fossam <b>circumdō</b> \	<i>I dig a trench around the city</i>
urbem fossā circumdō }	<i>I surround the city with a trench</i>
eī corōnam <b>dōnō</b> \	<i>I present a crown to him</i>
eum corōnā dōnō }	<i>I present him with a crown</i>



## OTHER TRANSITIVE VERBS

exercitū eum praeficiō	<i>I put him in charge of the army</i>
sibi manūs adfert, infert	<i>he commits suicide</i>
Gallīs bellum infert	<i>he makes war on the Gauls</i>
eī timōrem iniciō	<i>I frighten him</i>
mortem eī minor, minitor	<i>I threaten him with death</i>
equitātum civitātī imperō	<i>I exact cavalry of the state</i>

## INDIRECT OBJECT WITH INTRANSITIVE VERBS

462. **Help and harm; please, obey;**

medeor, persuādeō; nūbō, parcō, studeō  
male dīcō, supplicō; obtrectō and invidēō

eī auxiliior, opem ferō	<i>I help him, bring aid to him</i>
eī subveniō, succurrō	<i>I come, run to his aid</i>
eī adsum, prōsum	<i>I assist, am useful to him</i>
<b>eum</b> iuvō, adiuvō	<i>I help him</i>
eī noceō	<i>I harm him, do harm to him</i>
eī dēsum	<i>I do not assist him, neglect him</i>
eī obsum, advorsor	<i>I hinder him, oppose him</i>
<i>eum</i> laedō	<i>I injure him, offend him</i>
eī placeō, displiceō	<i>I please him, displease him</i>
eī faveō, studeō	<i>I favor, am attached to him</i>
eī indulgēō	<i>I am kind, indulgent to him</i>
mīlītēs ducī pārent	<i>the soldiers obey their leader</i>
eī dīc tō audientēs sunt	<i>they obey him promptly</i>
auctōritātī obtemperāmus	<i>we submit to, obey authority</i>
precibus eiūs obsequor (419, note)	<i>I yield to his wishes</i>
eī serviō, eī ministrō	<i>I am his servant, I wait upon him</i>
<b>medērī</b> morbō = morbum sārāre	<i>to heal a disease</i>
persuādeō eī ut abeat	<i>I persuade him to go</i>
persuādeō eī Deum esse (a. c. i.)	<i>I convince him of God's existence</i>
filia alicui nūbit	<i>the daughter marries some one</i>
filius virginem uxōrem dūcit	<i>the son marries a girl</i>
victīs parcō = victōs cōservō	<i>I spare the conquered</i>
huic artī studeō	<i>I devote myself to this art</i>
nēmīnī male dīcō	<i>I speak ill of no one</i>
victōrī supplicant	<i>they humbly beg their conqueror</i>



inimicō obtrectō	<i>I work against my enemy</i>
ēius virtūtī obtrectō	<i>I disparage his valor</i>
tuae virtūtī invidēō	<i>I begrudge, envy your valor</i>

## 463.

## cēdere

cēdō tibi; resistō tibi	<i>I yield to you; I resist you</i>
cēdō tibi possessionē hortōrum	<i>{ I give up to you the possession of my { park</i>
accēdit tibi animus (fig. sense)	<i>your courage is growing</i>
accēdō ad urbem (local sense)	<i>I approach, come near to the city</i>
appropinquō urbī	<i>I approach the city</i>
eī, in ēius locum succēdō	<i>I am his successor</i>
succēdō sub collem	<i>I approach to the foot of the hill</i>

464. Compounds of **cum** commonly repeat the preposition:

cōferre Gallōs cum Germānīs	<i>to compare the Gauls with the Germans</i>
cōsentīre cum aliquō (419)	<i>to agree with some one</i>

## 465. Many other verbs take the dative; as,

exercituī praesum	<i>I am in command of the army</i>
tibi ignōscō, respondeō	<i>I pardon you, I answer you</i>
tibi alicuius rei auctor sum	<i>I advise you, instigate you to something</i>
tibi imperat ut...	<i>he commands you to...</i>

## 466. PASSIVE OF INTRANSITIVE VERBS (364):

mihi, tibi, eī invidētur	<i>I, you, he is envied</i>
nōbīs, vōbīs, eīs obtrectātum est	<i>we, you, they have been envied</i>
mihi persuāsī = mihi persuāsum est	<i>I am convinced</i>
sibi persuāsit = eī persuāsum est	<i>he is convinced</i>
tibi persuādē	<i>be convinced</i>
iīs persuādērī nōn potest	<i>they cannot be convinced</i>
iīs persuādērī nōn posse appāret	<i>they evidently cannot be convinced</i>

NOTE: As the passive of deponents, so also that of intransitive verbs is often replaced by circumlocutions (218):

eī invidētur = in invidiā <b>est</b>	<i>he is envied</i>
cōsulātus invidiam <b>habet</b>	<i>the consulship is an object of envy</i>
rēs in summam invidiam } <b>addūcuntur</b>	<i>the things are made objects of bitter envy</i>

## DATIVE OF THE POSSESSOR (435)

(Datīvus possessīvus)

**467. Esse with the dative** points out the *possessor* of anything *except qualities* (441):

est mihi domus = habeo domum	<i>I have, possess a house</i>
est mihi domi pater	<i>I have a father at home</i>
est mihi controversia tecum	<i>I have a dispute with you</i>
But: est magnā vī corporis	<i>he has great physical strength</i>
ēius est eloquentia praestans	} <i>he has an extraordinary eloquence</i>
in eō est eloquentia praestans	
est eloquentiā praestanti	
est eloquentissimus	

**468. With nōmen est,** the name is often put in the dative, by attraction to the dative of the person:

eī nōmen est Caesar	} <i>his name is Caesar</i>
eī Caesarī nōmen est	

*Note:* Esse with the genitive emphasizes the owner and his ownership; the dative, the possessor and his actual possession, (See also 436.)

## DATIVE OF THE AGENT

(Datīvus auctōris)

**469.** The dative is used to point out the *agent*:

- regularly with the *future passive participle* (213,)
- often with the *perfect passive participle* and the forms compounded with it;
- rarely with *other* passive forms:

a. sua cuique sors ferenda est	<i>every one has his own lot to bear</i>
nōbīs eundem est	<i>we have to go; we must go</i>
b. mihi elabōrātum est	} <i>I have it worked out</i>
elabōrātum id habeo	
c. honesta bonis quaeruntur	<i>noble ends are aims for the good</i>

**470. Note:** **Ab** with the ablative is sometimes used to avoid confusion with an object dative or to effect a sharper contrast:

tibi ā mē respondendum est	<i>I must answer you</i>
tē ā mē hortandum putō	<i>I think I must exhort you</i>

## DATIVE OF REFERENCE

**471.** The dative of reference denotes the person (or thing) whom the action concerns, or to whom it is referred; unlike the dative of the indirect object, which modifies the verb only, it qualifies the whole sentence; it includes the dative of advantage or disadvantage, the ethical dative, and the dative of the person judging.

## DATIVE OF ADVANTAGE OR DISADVANTAGE

(Dativus commodi aut incommodi)

**472.** The dative points out the person for whose advantage or to whose prejudice the action is performed:

nōn scholae sed vitae discimus	<i>we learn for life, not for the school</i>
praeterita, iniuriās tuās }	<i>I overlook your past actions,</i>
frātri condōnō }	<i>your wrongs, in deference to your brother</i>

**473.** **cōsulō, timeō, moderor**

eī, eius rēbus <b>cōsulō</b> , }	<i>I take care of him, consult</i>
prōvideō, prōspiciō }	<i>his interests</i>
cōsulite vōbīs !	<i>look out for yourselves !</i>
<i>But: rem frumentāriam prōvideō,</i>	<i>I provide for grain</i>
futūra prōspiciō	<i>I foresee the future</i>
eī <b>timeō</b> , metuō	<i>I fear for him</i>
eum timeō, metuō	<i>I fear him</i>
ōrātiōnī <b>moderārī</b>	<i>to moderate, control one's speech</i>
nāvem, equum moderor	<i>I govern a ship, a horse</i>
parcere, temperāre victīs	<i>to spare the conquered</i>
vīnum temperāre	<i>to mix wine</i>
ab iniuriā temperō	<i>I abstain from wrong</i>

**474.** **Take away**

hōc tibi adimō, auferō }	<i>I take this from you</i>
ēripiō, dētrahō, extorqueō.. }	

## ETHICAL DATIVE

(Dativus ethicus)

**475.** The ethical dative is a dative of a personal pronoun loosely attached to the sentence for the purpose of showing or causing an emotion.

quid <b>mihi</b> Celsus agit?	<i>what is my Celsus doing?</i>
quid <b>tibi</b> vīs, insāne?	<i>what do you want, madman?</i>
quid <b>sibi</b> hōc vult?	<i>what is the meaning of this?</i>

## DATIVE OF THE PERSON JUDGING

(Datīvus iūdicantis)

**476.** The dative denotes the person from whose point of view the statement is made:

multīs est eloquēns	<i>in the eyes of many he is eloquent</i>
mihi ūnus est īstar omnium	<i>he is to me worth them all</i>
eī purgātus nōn es	<i>you are not justified in his eyes</i>
est urbe ēgressīs tumulus	<i>{ there is, as you leave the city,</i> <i>{ a mound</i>

## DATIVE OF SERVICE AND PURPOSE

(Datīvus finālis)

**477.** The dative of **abstract** substantives with *esse* and *dare* denotes that for which a thing serves; with *venire* and *mittere*, that for which it is *intended* to serve; this dative is often accompanied by another dative of the person whom the thing serves:

**esse, dare, tribuere, vertere**

rēs tēstimōniō est	<i>the fact serves as a proof</i>
cui bonō?	<i>to whom is it of advantage?</i>
suīs salūtī est	<i>he is the salvation of his men</i>
rēs mihi dōlōrī est	<i>the matter is painful to me</i>
rēs mihi magnō dōlōrī est	<i>the matter is very painful to me</i>
id tibi laudī (vitiō) dō, { dūcō, vertō, tribuō }	<i>I praise (blame) you for it</i>
id ignāviae dō, tribuō	<i>I interpret it as cowardice</i>

**478. venire, mittere, arcessere, relinquere**

Nerviūs auxiliō veniunt	<i>they come to assist the Nervii</i>
eōs tibi subsidiō mittō	<i>I send them to relieve you</i>
But: eōs ad te lēgātōs mittō	<i>I send them to you as legates</i>

**479.** Also a dative of **concrete** substantives is used in some phrases to express purpose; as,

locum castrīs dēligere	<i>to choose a site for a camp</i>
diem colloquiō dīcere	<i>to set a day for a conference</i>
receptuī canere	<i>to sound a retreat</i>

## DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES

480. Many adjectives take the dative; as,

nōtus, pār sum tibi	<i>I am known, equal to you</i>
nihil difficile amanti	<i>nothing is hard to a lover</i>
ignōtus, dispar	<i>unknown, unequal</i>

481. Adjectives of inclination take the dative or in, ergā, adversus with the accusative:

amicus eī or in eum es	<i>you are friendly to him</i>
inimicus eī or in eum es	<i>you are hostile towards him</i>
grātus, ingrātus eī or in eum es	<i>you are (un) grateful to him</i>
cōmis ergā frātre	<i>courteous towards your brother</i>
iniūcundus adversus malōs	<i>unpleasant towards the wicked</i>

482. Adjectives used as substantives commonly take the genitive of persons:

amicissimus eī est (adj.)	<i>he is very friendly to him</i>
amicissimus eius est	<i>he is his intimate</i>
inimicissimus eius est	<i>he is his greatest enemy</i>
familiarissimus meus, eius	<i>my, his most familiar acquaintance</i>

483. Adjectives of use and fitness commonly express purpose by ad with the accusative:

id mihi ad hōc ūtile, idōneum, aptum, necessārium est	} <i>this is useful, suitable, fit, necessary to me for this purpose</i>
---	--

NOTE: About similis see 450;

about propior, proximus see 312;

about proprius, communis, sacer see 437:

omnia mihi cum amicis } communia sunt }	<i>I have everything in common with my friends</i>
--	--



## THE ABLATIVE <sup>1)</sup>

**484.** The ablative is the *adverbial* case (368); it expresses

*Separation,                      Association                      and   Location,*  
as the **from-**                      **with-**                      and **in-**case.

**485.** The **separative** ablative (*ablātīvus sēparātīvus*) expresses,

in a **literal** sense :

*separation*, (after verbs, 486; adjectives : 487; prepositions : 299 and 524);

in a **figurative** sense :

*source*, (agency : 488; parentage : 489; material : 490);  
*comparison* : 491-495.

The **sociative** ablative (*ablātīvus sociātīvus*) expresses,

in a **literal** sense :

*association* : 496-497, (including quality : 441; manner : 498-499; attendant circumstances : 500);

in a **figurative** sense :

*means or instrument* : 501-502, (including route : 523; plenty : 503;  
    *ūtī... nītī...* : 504; *stīpātus...* : 505; *opus est* : 506-507;  
*cause* (including *fidere*) : 508-509;  
*accordance* : 510;  
*respect* (including *dignus...*) : 511-513;  
*standard* : 514;  
*amount of difference* : 515;  
*price* : 457 sqq;  
the *ablative absolute* : 516-517.

The **locative** ablative (*ablātīvus locātīvus*) expresses

in a **literal** sense : *place* : 518 sqq;

in a **figurative** sense : *time* : 534 sqq.

---

1) There are widely divergent and even contrary opinions as to the *nature* and consequent classification of some ablatives; e. g., of the ablatives of cause, accordance, respect, manner, time, the ablatives with *opus est*, *fidere*, *nītī*, *facere*, and the ablative absolute; besides, ablatives that have *different uses* belong to different classes and may be placed in any or all of them.



## THE SEPARATIVE ABLATIVE

## 486. Verbs of separation

- a. compounded with **sē** and **dis**, **ab** and **re**; } take the ablative  
 b. **protect**, **deter**, and **liberō** **ab** aliquō } with **ab**, (**ex**, **dē**);  
 c. all other verbs of *separation* (may) take the ablative **without** a preposition.

- a. **sēiungo** **ab**, **sēparō** **ab**      *I separate from*  
**discēdō** **ab** *or* **ex** **urbe**      *I leave the city*  
**dissentiō** **ab** *or* **cum** **cēterīs**      *I differ from others in opinion*  
**manūs** **ā** **scelere** **abstineō**      *I keep my hands from crime*  
**hostem** **ab** **urbe** **repellō**      *I repel the enemies from the city*
- b. **vōs** **ab** **iniūriā** **dēfendō**, } *I protect you against injury*  
**tueor**, **prohibeō** }  
**ā** **vōbīs** **caedem** **dēpellō**      *I ward off slaughter from you*  
**ā** **prōpositō** **tē** **dēterreō**      *I deter you from your plan*  
**tē** **ab** **eō** **liberō**      *I free you from him*
- c. **metū**, (**periculō**) **tē** **liberō**      *I free you from fear, (danger)*  
**mūrum** **dēfēnsōribus** **nūdat**      *he strips the wall of defenders*  
**levā** **mē** **hōc** **onere**      *relieve me from this burden*  
**canis** **solūtus** **catēnā**      *a dog loosened from the chain*  
**privāre**, **orbāre**, **spoliāre** **aliquem** **aliquā** **rē** } *to deprive one of something*  
**medicinā** **nōn** **egeō**      *I do not need a remedy*  
(**cōnsiliō** *or*) **cōnsiliū** **indigeō**      *I need advice*  
**domō** **carēō**, **tē** **careō**      *I have no home; I must do without you*  
**culpā** **vacāre**      *to be free from guilt*
- But* **huic** **ūnī** **negōtiō** **vacō**      *I devote myself to this one thing*
- spē** **dēiectus**      *deprived of hope*  
**locō** **aliquem** **movēre**      *to dislodge one*  
(**ā**) **commeatū** **tē** **intercludō** } *I cut you off from supplies*  
**commeātum** **tibi** **intercludō** }  
**Galliā** **eī** **interdixit**      *he ordered him to quit Gaul*  
**aquā** **et** **ignī** **eī** **interdixit**      *he proscribed (banished) him*

(ē) vītā, patriā cēdere	<i>to die, to leave the country</i>
(ē) castrīs cōpiās ēdūcere	<i>lead the troops out of the camp</i>
(ab) iniūriā (sē) abstinēre	<i>refrain from wrong</i>
But: proeliō abstinēre proeliō supersedēre }	<i>refrain from, avoid the battle</i>

**487. Adjectives** of separation and aversion take **ab** with persons, may take **ab** with things:

līber, vacuus <b>ab</b> aliquō	<i>free from some one</i>
liber, vacuus (ab) aliquā rē	<i>free from something</i>
tūtus ā periculō, calōre	<i>safe from danger, heat</i>
urbs nūda praesidiō	<i>a city without defence</i>
ā mē aliēnus est	<i>he is averse, unfriendly to me</i>
ā litterīs aliēnus est	<i>he is a stranger to letters</i>
(ā) dignitatē aliēnum	<i>inconsistent with his dignity</i>

#### ABLATIVE OF SOURCE

**488.** The *living doer* (persons, things personified, personal collective substantives, and animals) is denoted by **ab** with the *ablātīvus agentis*:

ā Socrate ērudītus	<i>educated by Socrates</i>
ā nātūrā datum	<i>given by Nature</i>
<b>ab</b> exercitū oppressus	<i>crushed by the army</i>
ā canibus laniātus	<i>torn by dogs</i>

**489.** The ablative of origin (*ablātīvus originis*) usually designates:

- a. *remoter origin* by **ortus ab** or *oriundus* (ab);
  - b. *parents* by **nātus** (ex); pronouns regularly take **ex**;
  - c. *social rank* by **nātus** or **ortus** without a preposition:
- |                                  |   |
|----------------------------------|---|
| a. ortī sunt <b>ab</b> Germānīs  | <i>(the Belgians) were descended from the Germans</i> |
| b. (ex) Iove, (ex) Venerenātus   | <i>a son of Jupiter, of Venus</i>                     |
| ex eō, ex quō nātus; ex eā nātus | <i>his son; her son</i>                               |
| c. honestō, nōbilī locō ortus    | <i>of a distinguished family</i>                      |
| amplissimō genere nātus          | <i>of a very noble stock</i>                          |
| obscurō, humilī locō nātus       | <i>born of a low family</i>                           |

**490.** The ablative of **material** regularly takes *ē* or *ex*; *do with* and *become of* are expressed by *facere* and *fierī* with the ablative:

- a. *vās ex ūnā gemmā* (401) *a vase from a single gem*  
*ex animō cōstāmus et corpore* *we consist of soul and body*  
*Figuratively denoting the condition out of which:*  
*dē templō carcer fit* *a prison is made out of the temple*
- b. *quid hōc (huic) faciās?* *what is one to do with this man?*  
*quid hōc fiet?* *what will become of him?*  
*Also: quid hōc futūrum est?* *what will become of him?*

### ABLATIVE OF COMPARISON

#### (Ablātivus comparātiōnis)

**491.** The ablative instead of *quam* with any nominative or accusative

- a. **may** be used, if no ambiguity arises,  
 b. is **preferred** in sentences with negative meaning,  
 c. **must** be used with relatives:

- a. *filius māior est quam pater* *the son is greater than the father;*  
*filius patre māior est* *i. e. compared with the father*  
*sciō eum patre māiorem esse* *I know he is greater than the father*  
*longius tridui viā abest* *he is farther a. than a three days' march*  
*But tē magis quam illum amō:* *I love you more than him*  
*for illō would be ambiguous: I love you more than he or him*  
*melle dulcior, lūce clārior* *honey-sweet, clear as light*
- b. *lacrimā nihil citius arēscit* *nothing dries more quickly than a tear*
- c. *amīcitiā, quā nihil melius* *friendship than which we have*  
*habēmus* *nothing better*

**492.** Some ablatives are used for brevity in place of clauses of comparison:

- opīniōne celerius =* *faster than one would think*  
*celerius quam opīniō fuit* }
- aequō plūs = p. quam pār est* *more than is fair*
- necessāriō longius* *farther than was necessary*

**493.** Plūs, amplius, longius, **more than**, and minus, **less than**, are inserted before words of number or measure without effect upon the case:

plūs decem annī	<i>more than ten years</i>
plūs annum in urbe est (536)	<i>more than a year</i>
spatium plūs decem pedum	<i>a space of more than ten feet</i>

**494.** With **annōs nātus**, however, **māior** and **minor** are commonly used:

māior decem annōs nātus (536)	} <i>more than ten years old</i>
māior decem annīs (491)	
plūs decem annōs nātus (493)	

**495.** Substantives compared are not as in English represented by pronouns:

hōrum fortūna gravior est	} <i>their lot is harder than</i>
quam cēterōrum	
hōrum ōrātiō cum perfugīs	} <i>this report agrees with</i>
(or perfugārum) convenit	

### THE SOCIATIVE ABLATIVE (303)

(Ablātīvus sociātīvus)

**496.** Accompaniment of persons or things is expressed by **cum** with the *ablative*:

cum aliquō esse (299)	<i>to be in one's company</i>
cum imperiō esse	<i>to be commander-in-chief</i>
cum tēlō esse	<i>to go armed, carry a weapon</i>
cum febrī domum rediit	<i>he came home with a fever</i>
cum aliquō sē coniungere	<i>to unite oneself with someone</i>
cum rēge pācem cōfirmāre	<i>to make peace with the king</i>
prudentiam cum eloquentiā iungere	<i>to join prudence with eloquence</i>

**497.** In military language **cum** may be omitted, if the substantive has any modifier except a definite numeral:

cum equitātū eum mittō	<i>I send him with the cavalry</i>
cum duābus lēgiōnibus eō	<i>I go with two legions</i>
(cum) omnibus cōpiīs eō	<i>I go with all the troops</i>
(cum) pedestribus cōpiīs eō	<i>I go with the infantry</i>

## ABLATIVE OF MANNER

## (Ablatīvus modī)

498. The manner of the action is expressed by the ablative, as follows :

- a. **with cum**, if the ablative is not modified;
- b. **with or without cum**, if the ablative is modified by an adjective;
- c. **without cum**, if the ablative is modified by *hōc*, *eō*, *quō*;  
if it expresses a mental or bodily state;  
if it is *modō*, *ratione* or *ordine* :

a. cum virtūte vivere	<i>to live virtuously</i>
cum gravitāte loquī	<i>to speak with dignity</i>
b. (cum) magnā gravitāte loquī	<i>to speak with great dignity</i>
c. hāc mente, eō cōsiliō	<i>with this intention</i>
pedibus pugnāre	<i>to fight on foot</i>
nūdō corpore pugnāre	<i>to f. with the body unprotected</i>
aequō animō morī	<i>to die with a calm mind</i>
parī modō, similī modō	<i>in like manner, in a similar way</i>
aliō modō, nūllō modō	<i>in another way, nowise</i>
aliquō modō, aliquā ratione	<i>in some way or other</i>
ordine	<i>in an orderly way</i>

499. The ablative **modō** may not be connected with such adjectives as express definite qualities :

turpiter, or cum ignōminia *in a disgraceful manner*

## ABLATIVE OF ATTENDANT CIRCUMSTANCES

500. Circumstances accompanying an action are preferably expressed by the ablative without *cum*, except when it has no modifier;  
circumstances following, preferably by the ablative with *cum* :

a. bonis auspiciis proficisci	<i>to set out <b>under</b> good auspices</i>
maximō imbrī ire	<i>to go in a heavy shower</i>
magnō comitatū adesse	<i>to be present with a great retinue</i>
longō intervallō sequi	<i>to follow at a great distance</i>
ēius ductū dēlēti sunt	<i>they were annihilated under his leadership</i>

Also: silentiō *in silence*

But : cum clamōre *with shouting*

b. cum tuā perniciē proficiscere	<i>set out to your ruin</i>
magnō cum periculō fugit	<i>he fled in the face of great danger</i>
cum commodō civitātis	<i>with advantage to the state</i>



## ABLATIVE OF MEANS OR INSTRUMENT

## (Ablātīvus instrūmentī)

**501.** The ablative without a preposition is used to denote persons or things as means or instruments; (**per** denotes *persons* as *agents* of others, and *things* as *means*):

fossam **eā** **legiōne** dūcīt  
 ā mē **secūrī** occīsus est  
 ā mē **per** tē occīsus est  
 urbem **per** vim cēpit  
 urbem **vī** cēpit  
 per fraudem, per litterās

he digs a trench **with** that legion  
 he was killed by me **with** an axe  
 he was killed by me **through** your agency  
 he took the city by (means of) force  
 he took it by storm (an act of violence)  
 through fraud, by means of letters

**502.** The idea of instrument in Latin does not always correspond to a similar idea in English:

linguā Latīnā loquī  
 proeliō lacessere  
 proeliō vincere, vincī  
 tībīs, fidibus canere  
 pilā, āleā lūdere  
 currū, equō vehī  
 pedibus, nāvī redīre  
 bellō exercitātus  
 labōre assuētus, assuēfactus  
*But* labōris insuētus  
 omnēs laetitīā **afficit** (254 note)  
 dōnāre, circumdare rē (451)

to speak Latin  
 to provoke to a battle  
 to win, lose a battle  
 to play the flute, upon the lyre  
 to play ball, with dice  
 to ride in a chariot, on horseback  
 to return on foot, by boat  
 trained in warfare  
 accustomed to hardship  
 not used to hard work  
 he gladdens all  
 present, surround with

**503.** **Fill and abound, furnish, instruct**

montem hominibus complet	he covers the mountain with men
nāvem militibus complet	he mans the ship with soldiers
nāvem lapidibus onerat	he freights the ship with stone
villa abundat haedō et agnō	the farm abounds with kid and lamb
redundāre, affluere rē	to be full of, overflow with
ornāre, instruere rēbus omnibus	{ to furnish with everything
instituere, imbuere artibus	to teach, instruct in arts
ornātus, praeditus, onustus rē	{ equipped, endowed, laden with
refertus rēbus omnibus	filled with everything
refertus hominibus or hominum	filled with men
But plēnus rērum, hominum	full of things, of men



**504. ūtī, fruī, fungī; vēscī and potīrī;  
nītī, continēri**

vestrā operā ūtar	<i>I will use your services</i>
īsdem ducibus ūsus est	<i>he used the same men as guides</i>
ūtitur mē facilī patre	<i>he has in me an indulgent father</i>
frueris vitā	<i>you are enjoying life</i>
officiō, mūnere fungimur	<i>we perform a duty</i>
lacte et carne vēscuntur	<i>they live on milk and meat</i>
magnā praedā potītus est	<i>he obtained great booty</i>
But rērum potīrī	<i>to get control of affairs</i>
totīus Galliae potīrī	<i>to become master of Gaul</i>
hastā, (in) virtūte nītī	<i>to rest on a spear, depend upon virtue</i>
nostra salūs virtūte continētur	<i>our safety depends on bravery</i>

**505. stīpātūs, comitātus**

stīpātūs sicāriīs	<i>surrounded by assassins</i>
puerīs comitātus (219)	<i>attended by boys</i>

**506. opus est, there is need of, use for**

The **impersonal** opus est takes

- a. the ablative of the *person* or *thing* needed,  
 b. the ablative of the pass. perf. part. } of the *action*  
 c. the (accusative with the) infinitive } needed:

a. duce nōbīs opus est	<i>we need a leader</i>
pecūniā mihi opus est	<i>I need money</i>
b. properātō opus est	<i>there is need of haste</i>
quid opus est factō? }	<i>what must be done?</i>
c. quid opus est fierī? }	
quid opus est facere? }	

**507. The personal opus est and opus sunt take the subject nominative of neuter pronouns and adjectives:**

hōc mihi opus est	<i>I need this</i>
multa mihi opus sunt	<i>I am in need of many things</i>

## ABLATIVE OF CAUSE

(Ablātīvus causae)

**508.** Cause, especially with adjectives and verbs denoting a *mental state*, is expressed by the ablative (422):

- a. laetus, trīstis nūntiō      *glad, sad at the news*  
 contentus suis rēbus      *content, satisfied with his estate*  
 frētus virtūte, vōbīs      *relying on valor, on you*  
 fessus labōre diēi      *tired out from the toil of the day*
- b. gaudēre, laetārī rē      *to rejoice in*  
 exsultāre, glōriārī rē      *to exult over, glory in*  
 maerēre, dolēre rē or rēm      *to mourn over, be afflicted at*
- c. (cōn) fidō virtūte (virtūtī)      *I trust in valor*  
*But only: cōnfidō tibi      I rely on you*  
 diffidō tibi, (virtūtītūae)      *I distrust you, (your valor)*
- d. civitās lūxuriā labōrat      *the state suffers from luxury*  
 (ex) invidiā, (ex) inscitiā      *of envy, from ignorance*

*Note:* Ex is also used to denote the seat of suffering:

ex capite, ex dentibus labōrat      *he has a headache, a toothache*

**509.** The ablative of cause *may* be strengthened by a *passive perfect participle*:

irā in cēnsus, inflammātus      *hot with wrath*  
 inopiā adductus, coāctus      *in his want*  
 metū, timōre perterritus      *out of fear*  
 nūntiō commōtus      *at this news*  
 cupiditāte obcaecātus      *in his passion*  
 amōre impulsus,      *out of love*  
 lūctū pressus      *bowed down with grief*

*Note:* Cause is also expressed by

a. propter, causā, grātiā : 312; ob : 313;

b. **prae** (in sentences with an expressed or implied negative):

vivere nōn quit prae maciē      *he cannot live on account of his leanness*  
 vix sibimet ipsī prae necopī- } *they barely believe themselves*  
 nātō gaudiō crēdunt      } *because of their unexpected joy*  
 silentium prae metū      } *there was silence for fear of the*  
 cēterōrum fuit      } *rest*

**510.** The ablative of **accordance** is a variety of the ablative of cause, inasmuch as it denotes that according to and influenced by which one acts:

meā sponte (76, c.)	<i>of my own accord</i>
tuō iūdiō, tuā sententiā	<i>according to your judgment, opinion</i>
iussū (76 c.), iniussū rēgis	<i>by, without command of the king</i>
ēius cōnsiliō, impulsū	<i>on his advice, at his instigation</i>
nostrō admonitū, rogātū	<i>by our advice, request</i>
mōre, cōnsuetūdine	<i>according to custom, from habit</i>
fātō, cāsū	<i>by fate, by accident</i>
lēge, iūre, iniūriā	<i>by law, by right, unjustly</i>
omnium cōsēnsū	<i>unanimously</i>
eā cōdiciōne	<i>on these terms</i>

#### ABLATIVE OF RESPECT OR SPECIFICATION

(Ablātīvus respectūs, limitātiōnis)

**511.** The ablative of respect *limits* the application of the predicate or attribute:

nōmine, rē (vērā)	<i>in name, reality, truth</i>
genere, nātiōne Gallus	<i>a native Gaul</i>
speciē, linguā	<i>in appearance, in language</i>
claudus alterō pede	<i>lame of (in) one foot</i>
difficile dictū (587)	<i>difficult to tell</i>
tuā sententiā hōc, illud meā } faciendum est (485 foot note) }	<i>in your opinion, this must be done, in my opinion that (510)</i>

**512.** *Respect may also be expressed by ā, ex, ad and dē :*

ā pecūniā parātī sumus	<i>as far as money is concerned...</i>
ex omnī parte perfectus	<i>perfect in every respect</i>
ad hanc rem, dē hāc rē	<i>in regard to this affair</i>

**513.** summā laude **dignus** *most praiseworthy (677, b.)*  
 honōre indignissimus *most unworthy of honor*  
 mē, tē, eō **indignus** *unworthy of me, you, him*  
 suis māiōribus dignus est *he is worthy of his ancestors*

**514.** The standard of measure with verbs of *measuring* and *judging* is put in the ablative (with *ex*):

virtūte mētīrī	to measure <b>by</b> merit
fortūnā iūdicāre	to judge by success
ex opīniōne aestimāre	to value by opinion

#### ABLATIVE OF THE AMOUNT OF DIFFERENCE

(Ablātīvus discrīminis)

**515.** The **amount** of difference is put in the ablative:

mēnsis ūnō diē longior est	the month is one day longer
duōbus pedibus minor	two feet smaller
dīmidiō minor	smaller <b>by</b> a half
multō, aliquantō māior	much, considerably larger
paulō post (537)	a little afterwards
paucīs ante diēbus	a few days before
quō melius, eō rārius	the better, the rarer
quantō plūs, tantō pēius	the more, the worse

*NOTE:* This ablative is also used with *abesse* and *distāre*, *antepōnere* and *praestāre*, *īfrā*, *suprā*, *ultrā*, and any other words implying a comparative.

#### ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE

(Ablātīvus absolūtus)

**516.** The ablative absolute **is** an ablative limited by a *predicate* participle (substantive or adjective), and *used adverbially without* any grammatical dependence on the rest of the sentence.

It **expresses**

*time, situation, cause, opposition,  
condition, means and manner;*

it is **translated** by

- a. *English nominatives absolute,*
- b. *active participles (with their objects),*
- c. *co- and subordinate conjunctive clauses,*
- d. *prepositional phrases.*

**Dārēō rēgnante**

Subject Ablative

Predicate

**Dārēō rēgnante**(= cum D. rēgnābat : *Time*or cum D. rēgnāret : *T. and situat' n*)

hōc factum est

**when** *Darius was reigning...*  
*in the reign of Darius...*  
*Darius reigning...*

**dux urbe captā rediit**(= postquam urbs capta est : *Time*,or cum urbs capta esset : *T. and sit.*

or ut urbem cēpit, cum... cēpisset

or quī urbem cēperat etc.)

**after** *he had taken the city...**after the city had been taken...**after (the) taking (of) the city...**having taken the city...**he took the city and...***insciente dominō iit** : *Situation without the master's knowledge***tē auctōre proficīscar**(= cum tū auctor sīs : *Cause*)**since** *you advise it...**upon your advice...***nūllō prohibente effūgit**(= quod nēmō prohibēbat : *Cause*)*he escaped, because there was**nobody to prevent him***tē invītō abībō**(= quamquam nōn vīs : *Opposition*)*I will go, although you**object; or: in spite of.....***tē invītō nōn abībō**(= sī nōlīs : *Condition*)*I will not go, if you should**be displeased; or against your wish***intribus iūctīs flūmen****trānsībant** : *Means**they were crossing the river on**(=by means of) a bridge of boats***nūllō negōtiō id facere****potes** (facillimē : *Manner*)*you can do that without any**difficulty: i. e. very easily*

**NOTE:** The ablative absolute is used only when its subject is not referred to by any other word of the sentence. (573.)

**517. Rule for rendering English phrases and clauses expressing time, situation, cause, opposition, condition, means or manner (416) into Latin ablatives absolute:**

1. Change the English expression, if necessary, into an adverbial clause whose subject does not occur in the main clause.
2. Omit the conjunction of the dependent clause.
3. Change the finite verb into the corresponding participle (See page 196).
4. Put the subject and the predicative term in the ablative.



EXAMPLES (*compare 573*):

## 1. This happened in the reign of Darius:

1. The *phrase* "in the reign of Darius" is equivalent to the *clause* "when Darius was reigning or reigned."
2. Omitting "*when*" we get the clause "*Darius reigned.*"
3. The verb "*reigned*" denotes action **contemporaneous** with the action of the main verb "*happened*" and must therefore be rendered by the participle of contemporaneous action (539): the *present* participle.
4. Therefore "*in the reign of Darius*" = *Dārēō rēgnante*.

## 2. The leader returned after he had taken the city:

1. The clause "*after he...*" whose subject is the same as that of the main clause, is equivalent to "*after the city had been taken* [by him is understood], whose subject does not occur in the main clause.
2. Omitting "*after*" we get "the city (had been) taken."
3. "*Had been taken*" is **previous** to "*returned*", demanding the participle of previous action (539): the *perfect* participle.
4. Therefore the dependent clause = *urbe captā*.

CONSTRUCTIONS OF SPACE AND TIME  
INCLUDING THE LOCATIVE ABLATIVE

## RELATIONS OF SPACE

## 518. The Question "Where?"

is answered by **in** with the ablative (297); names of towns and small islands, however, take, if they are singulars of the 1st and 2d declensions, the genitives (locatives) **ae** and **ī**, in all other cases the **ablative** without preposition:

*Nātus est*

**in** Graeciā, **in** Crētā, **in** Euboeā, **in** urbe, **in** castris;  
*But* Rōmae, Corinthī, Cypri, Athēnīs, Carthāgine (*or-ī*);

**519.** Appositive substantives, when *modified*, stand *after* the name of the town, when not modified, before (404, 405):

<i>in urbe Rōmā</i>	<i>in the city of Rome</i>
<i>(in) ipsā Rōmā</i>	<i>in Rome itself</i>
<i>Rōmae (in) urbe maximā</i>	<i>in the great city of Rome</i>
<i>Athēnīs in forō</i>	<i>on the market place of Athens</i>
<i>Lutetiae, (in) urbe Galliae</i>	<i>at Paris, a city of Gaul</i>



**520. Locus** in all its meanings, and names of places with **tōtus** usually take the ablative without a preposition:

<i>hōc locō</i>	<i>in this place</i>
<i>aequō locō, iniquō locō</i>	<i>in a favorable, unfavorable place</i>
<i>(in) locō, suō locō</i>	<i>at the right place or time</i>
<i>tōtā urbe, tōtā Graeciā</i>	<i>in the whole city, throughout Greece</i>

### 521. Place, fix and write

Verbs of placing except **impōnere**, take **in** with the ablative or adverbs answering the question where? (178):

<i>pōnō, locō, collocō rem hīc</i>	<i>I put the thing here</i>
<i>statuō cōstituō eum in mūrō</i>	<i>I place him on the wall</i>
<i>Rōmae praesidium collocō</i>	<i>I station the garrison in Rome</i>
<i>cōsistō, cōsidō ibi</i>	<i>I place myself, sit down there</i>
<i>oculōs in terrā dēfigō</i>	<i>I fix my eyes upon the ground</i>
<i>studium in ūnā rē cōsūmō</i>	<i>I put my energy to one thing</i>
<i>in sapientibus numerātur (430)</i>	<i>he is reckoned among the wise men</i>
<i>spem in Deō pōnō</i>	<i>I place my hope in God</i>
<i>in statuā inscribō</i>	<i>I make an inscription upon the statue</i>
<i>But alicui lēgem impōnere</i>	<i>to impose a law upon one</i>
<i>exercitum in nāvēs impōnere</i>	<i>to embark the army</i>

### 522. stāre, abide by

<i>dēcrētō stāre</i>	<i>to abide by, submit to the decree</i>
<i>meō prōmissō stābō</i>	<i>I will keep, fulfil my promise</i>
<i>eō stābitur cōsiliō</i>	<i>that plan will be adhered to</i>

**523. Route** and place are often considered as instruments and accordingly put in the ablative:

<i>a. terrā, marī, flūmine</i>	<i>by land, by sea, by river</i>
<i>tērrā marīque</i>	<i>on or by land and by sea</i>
<i>portā introīre, ērumpere</i>	<i>to enter by, break out of a gate</i>
<i>eōs hōc ponte mittō</i>	<i>I send them over this bridge</i>
<i>Appiā viā proficīscī</i>	<i>to travel by the Appian road</i>
<i>rēctā viā</i>	<i>straightway, right on</i>
<i>adversō colle</i>	<i>up the hill</i>
<i>secundō (adversō) flūmine</i>	<i>down (against the) stream</i>

<i>b. castrīs sē tenēre</i>	<i>to remain in camp</i>
<i>domō aliquem invītāre</i>	<i>to invite a person to one's house</i>
<i>tēctō tē recipiō</i>	<i>I receive you into my house</i>
<i>But (in) secundō librō agitur dē...</i>	<i>the second book treats of.....</i>
<b>in</b> <i>secundō librō</i>	<i>in a passage of the second book</i>

## 524. The Question "Whence?"

is answered by the ablative with **ab**, **ex**, **dē** (300, 301, 302); names of towns and small islands, however, take the **ablative** without preposition:

### Vēnit

**ab** urbe (from), **ex** urbe (out of), **dē** coelō (down from);  
*But Rōmā, Corinthō, Athēnīs, Delphīs, Carthāgine*

<i>ex urbe Rōmā (519)</i>	<i>out of the city of Rome</i>
<i>Rōmā, ex urbe maximā</i>	<i>out of the great city of Rome</i>
<i>Rōmā ex forō</i>	<i>from the forum in (of) Rome</i>
<i>Carthāgine, ex urbe Africae</i>	<i>from Carthage, a city of Africa</i>

## 525. Latin whence? English where?

<b>ex</b> <i>equō pugnāre</i>	<i>to fight on horseback</i>
<i>ex itinere</i>	<b>on</b> <i>the way</i>
<i>ex utrāque parte</i>	<b>at</b> <i>each side</i>
<i>ex omnī parte, undique</i> )	<b>on</b> <i>all sides</i>
<i>ex or ab omnibus partibus</i> )	
<i>ā fronte, ā tergō, ā latere</i>	<b>in</b> <i>front, behind, on the flank</i>
<i>collis erat ā septentriōnibus</i>	<i>there was a hill on the North</i>
<i>ā Sēquanīs</i>	<b>on</b> <i>the side of the Sequani</i>
<i>ā mīlibus passuum tribus</i>	<b>at</b> <i>a distance of three miles</i>
<i>(ā) dextrā, (ā) sinistrā</i>	<i>on the right, on the left</i>

## 526. Hang, begin and side with

<b>ab</b> , <b>ex</b> <i>in arbore pendet</i>	<i>he is hanging (intr.) on a tree</i>
<i>ab, dē arbore sē suspendere</i>	<i>to hang oneself on a tree</i>
<i>unde oriar? unde incipiam?</i>	<i>where shall I begin?</i>
<i>ā flūmine initium capit</i>	<i>it begins at the river</i>
<i>Rhēnus ex Lepontiīs oritur</i>	<i>it rises in the territory of the L.</i>
<i>Rōmā (hinc) nāvem cōnscendō</i>	<i>I board the ship at Rome (here)</i>
<i>Rōmā Kalendīs Iānuāriīs</i>	<i>Rome, January 1st. (Date)</i>
<i>ab aliquō stāre</i>	<i>to side with one</i>

## 527. The Question "Whither?"

is answered by **in** with the accusative (297); names of *towns* and *small islands*, however, take the accusative without preposition :

### Proficiscitur

**in** Graeciam, **in** prōvinciam, **in** rēgnum patrium;

*But:* Rōmam, Corinthum, Cyprum, Delphōs, Carthāginem.

in urbem Rōmam (519) *into the city of Rome*

Rōmam, (in) urbem maximam *into the great city of Rome*

Rōmam, in Italiam *to Rome in Italy*

Tarquiniōs, in urbem Etruriāe *to Tarquinii, a city of Etruria*

## 528. Latin whither? English where?

### Assemble, arrive; land and hide

Rōmam convēnimus *we assembled (i.) at Rome*

cōpiās in ūnum locum cōgere *to collect the troops in one place*

quō pervēnit? eō, in urbem *where did he arrive? there, in the city*

ad Dēlum (nāvem) appellere *to land at Delos*

in silvās sē abdere }  
(in) silvīs sē occultāre } *to hide in the woods*

in silvīs abditī latēbant *they were lying hidden in the woods*

nocturnus in urbem adventus *arrival in the city by night*

## 529. PECULIARITIES

humī, humō, humī *on, from, to the ground*

rurī, rūre, rūs (53) *in, from, to the country*

dōmī, domō, domum *at, from, (towards) home*

domī militiaeque }  
domī bellique } *in peace and in war*

**in** pāce, **in** bellō *in peace, in war*

domum revertimur *we return home*

domum reditō *return home*

## 530. Domī, domō, domum, take possessive attributes :

domī **meae**, tuae, **ēius** *in my, your, his house*

domī Caesaris (in domō Caesaris) *at Caesar's*

domī aliēnae (in domō aliēnā) *in another's house*

domōs suās revertuntur *they return to their homes*

*But:* **in** novā domō *in a new house*

**531.** The questions

“How **long?** how **wide?** how **deep?** how **high?**”

are answered by the *accusative of extent* (441, a.):

fossa ducentōs pedēs longa	<i>a trench 200 feet long</i>
fossa quīdecim pedēs lāta	<i>a trench 15 feet broad</i>
fossa quīdecim pedēs alta	<i>a trench 15 feet deep</i>
mūrus quīdecim pedēs altus	<i>a wall 15 feet high</i>

**532.** The questions “How **thick?** how **large?**” are answered by the *ablatives of quality crassitūdine and magnitūdine* (441, d.):

pariēs sex pedum crassitūdine *a wall six feet thick*

**533.** The question “How **far?**” is answered by the *accusative of extent* or the *ablative of difference* (followed by *ā, from*):

urbs mīlle passūs ā Rōmā distat	} <i>the city is one mile from Rome</i>
urbs mīlle passibus ā Rōmā abest	

rēx mīlle passūs (longē) *or* mīlle passibus ā Rōmā cōnsēdit

rēx mīlle passuum spatiō *or* intervallō ā Rōmā cōnsēdit

*the king pitched his camp at a distance of one mile from Rome*

### RELATIONS OF TIME

**534.** The question “**When?**” or “**Within what time?**” is answered by the *ablative without preposition* (215, 2; 321, 2):

initiō, principiō	<i>at the beginning</i>
diē, interdiū, lūce	<i>by day</i>
noctū	<i>by night</i>
illō diē, eā nocte	<i>on that day, on that night</i>
multō diē, multā nocte	<i>late in the day, late in the night</i>
posterō diē	<i>on the following day</i>
vespere, vesperī	<i>in the evening</i>
prīmā lūce, māne	<i>at daybreak, in the morning</i>
hōrā decimā (121)	<i>at 10 o'clock</i>
meridiē	<i>at noon</i>
proximō annō	<i>last year, or next year</i>
īnsequentī annō	<i>in the following year</i>
superiōre annō	<i>in the preceding year</i>
autumnō, aestāte	<i>in fall, in summer</i>
ineunte <i>or</i> primō vĕre	<i>at the beginning of spring</i>
mediā, extrēmā hieme	<i>in the middle, at the end of winter</i>
ortū, occāsū sōlis	<i>at sunrise, at sunset</i>

ocmitiis (cōsulāribus)	<i>at the (consular) election</i>
lūdīs, spectāculīs	<i>at the games, at the shows</i>
Līberālibus	<i>on the festival of Liber</i>
antīquīs temporibus	<i>in ancient times</i>
temporib <b>us</b> L <sup>y</sup> curgī	<i>at the time of L<sup>y</sup>curgus</i>
patrum memoriā (309, 2)	<i>at the time of our fathers</i>
adventū meō, (cum advēnissem)	<i>at my arrival</i>
ēius discessū, (cum discessisset)	<i>at his departure</i>
prīmā (extrēmā) pueritiā	<i>at the beginning (end of) boyhood</i>
summā senectūte	<i>in extreme old age</i>
prīmō Pūnicō bellō	<i>in the first Punic war</i>
quārtō cōsulātū	<i>in his fourth consulship</i>
biduō sciēmus	<i>we shall know <b>within</b> two days</i>
hōc bienniō id faciēs	<i>you... <b>within</b> the next two years</i>
trienniō eō nōn vēnit	<i>he... <b>for</b> three years</i>
(in) diēbus proximīs decem	<i>within the next ten days</i>

**535.** Other ideas *rather* than the time at or within which are denoted by **in** with the ablative:

<b>in</b> pueritiā	<i>in <b>boyhood</b></i>
<b>in</b> cōsulātū (nostrō)	<i>in my <b>consulship</b></i>
<b>in</b> bellō, <b>in</b> pāce	<i>in war, in peace</i>
<b>in</b> summā senectūte	<i>in spite of old age</i>
<b>in</b> illō tempore	<i>at that crisis</i>
<b>in</b> tālī tempore	<i>in such a state of affairs</i>
<b>in</b> tempore, (suō) tempore	<i>at the right time</i>
<b>in</b> hōrā saepe id fēcit (297)	<i>he often did it in one hour</i>
bis <b>in</b> diē, ter <b>in</b> annō	<i>twice a day, thrice every year</i>

**536.** The Question "**How long?**" is answered by the *accusative*:

cum tridu <b>um</b> iter fēcisset	<i>when he had marched three days</i>
diēs continu <b>os</b> decem	<i>for ten days together (in succession)</i>
Also: per triennium rēgnāvit (320)	<i>he reigned three years</i>
eā tōtā nocte iērunt (534)	<i>the whole of that night</i>
quīnque hōrīs pugnāvērunt	<i>they fought for five hours</i>



tertium iam diem abest	<i>he has been absent for two days</i>
nōn ultrā duōs diēs aberat	<i>...not longer than two days</i>
abhinc decem annōs fuit	} <i>he lived ten years ago</i>
abhinc decem annīs fuit (515)	
ante hōs decem annōs fuit	
decem annōs nātus	<i>ten years old (104)</i>
decimum annum agēns	<i>in his tenth year</i>
puer decem annōrum (441)	<i>a boy of ten years</i>

### 537. How long before or after?

(Compare 298, 300-302, 317)

paulō ante, multō post (515)	<i>shortly before, long after</i>
decem annīs ante	} <i>ten years before</i>
ante decem annōs	
decimō annō ante	
decimō ante annō	
annō post, trienniō post	<i>one, three years after</i>
annō post Christum nātum	<i>one year after the birth of Christ</i>
annō ante quam nātus est	<i>a year before his birth</i>
prīdiē quam nātus est	<i>the day before his birth</i>
annō post quam nātus erat	<i>a year after his birth (736)</i>
postrīdiē quam nātus erat	<i>the day after his birth</i>

## NOUN FORMS OF THE VERB

538. The infinitive, participle, gerund and supine are called *noun forms* (184, 186) of the *verb*, because they have some properties of the noun and some qualities of the verb :

### As nouns

- the *participle* and *gerund* are declined (63; 200);
- the *infinitive* and *supine* have the endings of individual cases; the infinitive in *e* of an old locative, that in *ī* of a dative; the supine in *um* is an accusative, that in *ū* an ablative;
- the *infinitive* may be modified by a neuter pronoun or adjective (382):  
tōtum hōc laudāre      *all this praising*



## As verbal forms

d. all are modified by **a d v e r b s** (not by adjectives except the case mentioned in c.):

prūdentē laudāre	<i>prudent praising</i>
prūdentē laudāns	<i>prudently praising</i>
facētē dictum	<i>a witty remark</i>
rēctē facta	<i>right actions</i>

e. they may govern a **d a t i v e**, **a c c u s a t i v e**, or **a b l a t i v e** :

fīdere Deō, fīdēns Deō, <i>but</i> fīdūcia Deī (439)
amāre Deum, amāns Deum, <i>but</i> a mōr Deī
ūtī ratiōne, ūtēns ratiōne, <i>but</i> ūsus ratiōnis

NOTE: The participle takes the *genitive* when used as adjective (449, b.)

f. they have some properties of **v o i c e** and **t e n s e** (186; 539):

laudāre, laudārī; laudāns, laudātus...;
laudāvisse, laudātūrum esse, laudātum irī...;

## TENSES OF THE NOUN FORMS (620 SQQ.)

539. The tenses of the *verbum infinitum* denote *relative* time; i. e., they express the act as

*in progress, yet to come, or completed;*

and as **c o n t e m p o r a n e o u s** with, **s u b s e q u e n t** or **p r i o r** to the time of the *verbum finitum* on which they depend (589 sqq.):

	<i>Act in Progress</i>	<i>Act completed</i>	<i>Act yet to come</i>
<i>Infinitives:</i> {	scribere	scripsisse	scriptūrum esee
	scribī	scriptum esse	scriptum irī
<i>Participles:</i> {	scribēns	cohortātus	scriptūrus
	—	scriptus	scribendus
<i>Supine:</i>			questum
<i>Gerund:</i>			querendī causā

## Contemporaneous Action

## Real Time (608)

dīcit sē scribere, <i>he says that he is writing (now)</i> :	scribit
dīcet sē scribere, <i>he will say that he is writing (then)</i> :	scribet
dixit sē scribere, <i>he said that he was writing (then)</i> :	scribēbat
scribit sedēns, <i>he writes (while) sitting</i> :	sedet
scribet sedēns, <i>he will write while sitting</i> :	sedēbit
scripsit sedēns <i>he wrote while sitting</i> :	sedēbat



**541.** The infinitive implies an *indefinite accusative subject*; its predicate noun complement (387) is put in the same case :

- a.* errāre = (a lī quem) errāre *to err - that a person should err*  
*b.* rēgem esse, bonum esse *to be king, to be good*  
 laudātūrum esse (200) *to be about to praise*  
 negligentem esse turpe est *to be careless is a disgrace*

**542.** When **licet** (and sometimes other impersonals) are accompanied by a dative, the complement of the infinitive is usually attracted into the same case :

- mihi negligentī esse nōn licet *I am not allowed to be careless*  
*But:* negligentem esse nōn licet *it is not allowed to be careless*  
 mediōs esse iam nōn licēbit *it is not lawful any more to be neutral*

**543.** The infinitive is used as an **objective complement** of many verbs (367):

**can** and **must** and **will**; **intend**, **prepare** and **dare**;  
**begin**, **continue**, **cease**; **am accustomed**, **know** :

- possum** īre, īre nōn possum *I can go, I cannot go*  
*But* valeō ad luctandum *I am in condition to wrestle*  
 valeō ad rem (faciendā) *I have the power of doing it*  
 īre dēbeō, īre nōn dēbeō *I am (not) obliged to go*  
 volō, nōlō, mālō īre *I will, will not, prefer to go*  
*But* praeferō aliquid *I prefer something*  
 cupiō, aveō, studeō, contendō *I wish, crave, am eager, strive*  
*But* nōn optō ut lauder *I do not desire to be praised*  
 neglegō, omittō, praetermittō *I neglect, omit, fail to*  
 Caesarem nōn cūrō legere *I don't care to read Caesar*  
 cōgitō, mihi est in animō } *I purpose, intend*  
 meditor, habeō in animō }  
 cōstituō, (in) animum indūcō *I decide, resolve*  
 parō, parātus sum proficiscī *I prepare, am prepared to set out*  
 audeō, cūctor, vereor, timeō *I dare, delay, fear*  
 nōn dubitō abire *I do not hesitate to go away*  
 cōnor īre, (sī īre pōssim: 646) *I try to go*  
 incipiō (277), instituō *I begin*  
 contendō, fēstinō, properō, mātūrō *I hasten*  
 pergō, perseverō *I continue, persist*  
 dēsinō, (277), dēsistō *I cease*

quī mentīrī <b>solet</b> , pēierāre\	}	<i>he who is wont to lie, is ac-</i>
cōsuēvit		
vincere <b>scīs</b> , Hannibal;\	}	<i>how to win, Hannibal, you know;</i>
victōriā ūtī nescīs		
pārere didicistī		<i>you have learned to obey</i>

## INFINITIVE WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE

(Accūsātīvus cum īnfīnītīvō)

Deum esse cōstatDeum esse sciō

Subject of cōstat

Object of sciō

**544.** In each of the two above sentences the accusative *Deum* is regarded as the subject of the indefinite form *esse* (541). The accusative with the infinitive *Deum esse* is however no sentence, because *esse* is no finite verb (354); in the first of the two sentences *Deum esse* is subject, in the second object. Translated into English, however, it may appear as a complete clause (371):

*It is certain that God exists**I know that God exists*

## A. c. i. as Subject

**545.** The accusative with the infinitive is used as *subject* (544) with *impersonal* expressions (271):

pār, æquum, iūstum est	<i>it is right, fair, just</i>
ūtīle est, prōdest, expedit (274)	<i>it is useful</i>
turpe est, indignum est	<i>it is a disgrace, intolerable</i>
convenit (274), decet (273)	<i>it is fit, becoming</i>
vērī simile est, appāret (274)	<i>it is probable, clear</i>
fāma est, rūmor est	<i>there is a rumor</i>
spēs est, opīniō est	<i>there is hope, an opinion</i>
fās est, nefās est	<i>it is lawful, unlawful</i>
mōs est, cōsuētūdō est	<i>it is customary</i>

NOTE: See *opus est* n. 506, *interest* n. 459.

**546.** *Necesse est* and *oportet* may also take the subjunctive without *ut*:

lēgem brevem esse oportet	}	<i>a law ought to be short</i>
lēx brevis sit oportet		
hominem (hominī) necesse est morī	}	<i>man must die</i>
homō moriātur necesse est		

**A. c. i. as Object**

**547.** The accusative with the infinitive is used as *object* (544) with many classes of verbs:

**Perceive and say**

(Verba sentiendī et dīcendī)

<b>sentiō</b> , videō, audiō, discō	<i>I perceive, see, hear, learn</i>
cognōscō	<i>I become acquainted</i>
reperiō, comperiō	<i>I find out, ascertain</i>
nūntium accipiō, sciō <sup>1</sup> )	<i>I receive word, know</i>
īgnōrō, crēdō	<i>I do not know, believe</i>
putat animōs interīre	<i>he thinks that the souls perish</i>
nō n putō eōs interīre	<i>I think that they do not perish</i>
spērō, cōnfīdō (553)	<i>I hope, trust</i>
<b>dīcō</b> , adfīrmō	<i>I say, affirm</i>
negō animōs interīre	<i>I affirm that the souls do not perish</i>
tibi respondeō, ad tē scribō	<i>I answer you, write you</i>
nūntiō, nūntium adferō	<i>I announce, bring word</i>
ducem certiōrem faciō	<i>I inform the leader</i>
fateor, simulō, dissimulō	<i>I confess, pretend, disguise</i>
iūrō, minor, polliceor (553)	<i>I swear, threaten, promise</i>

**548. Rule:** With the verbs of *perceiving* and *saying*

a *statement* is expressed by the **accusative** with the infinitive,

a *question* is expressed by the **subjunctive**,

*purpose* is expressed by the **subjunctive** with or without *ut*:

eī dīxī Marcum scripsisse	<i>I told him that Mark had written</i>
eī dīxī quis scripsisset	<i>I told him who had written</i>
eī dīcō (ut) scribat	<i>I tell him to write</i>
eī dīxī nē scriberet	<i>I told him not to write</i>

1) *Distinguish* nōvisse, scīre and accēpisse, know:

eōs nōvī	<i>I know, (am acquainted with) them</i>
probē or plānē sciō quī sint	<i>I well know who they are</i>
hōc ex mē scit	<i>he knows this from me</i>
Latīnē scit	<i>he knows (understands) Latin</i>
accēpimus or memoriae }	<i>we know</i>
(memoriā) trāditum est }	<i>(used of historical facts)</i>



*Distinguish:*

mē monet **ut** ad sē scribam  
 mē monuit **nē** proficiscerer  
 mē monet **adesse** hostem  
 tibi concēdō **ut** librum legās  
 tibi concēdō beātum **esse** Deum  
 eī persuāsit **ut** sibi parceret  
 sibi persuāsit ita rem sē **habēre**

*he urges me to write him*  
*he warned me not to set out*  
*he reminds me that the enemy is near*  
*I permit you to read the book*  
*I acknowledge that God is happy*  
*he persuaded him to spare him*  
*he is convinced that the case is so*

**549.****Iubēre, vetāre, sinere, patī,**

*order, forbid, allow, permit,*

take the accusative with the present infinitive :

eōs pontem **facere** iubet (561)

*he orders them to build a bridge*

*But* **pontem fierī** iubet

*{ he has a bridge built*  
*{ he orders to build a bridge*

*Note:* When the person ordered... is not mentioned in English, the accusative with the infinitive of the passive must be used in Latin (Second example.)

**550.****Velle, nōlle, mālle, cupere**

take the accusative with the present infinitive, when the two verbs have different subjects, the infinitive, when they have the same subject:

volō eum hōc facere

*I want him to do this*

*But* volō hōc facere

*I want to do it*

*NOTE:* Exceptions occur especially with *esse* or a passive infinitive :

mē clēmentem esse cupiō  
 sē amārī quam timērī māvult  
 hōc factum volō (557)  
 volō ut hōc faciās  
 velim mihi dicās

*I wish to be kind*  
*he wishes to be loved rather than feared*  
*I want this done*  
*I wish that you do this*  
*please tell me*

**551.** Cōgō, assuēfaciō tē pārēre }  
 (561)

*I compel, accustom you to obey*

doceō tē parvō contentum esse

*I teach you to be satisfied with little*

prohibeō tē īre

*I prevent you from going*

arguō, īnsimulō tē fūgissee

*I accuse you of having fled*

*But* accūsāt tē quod fūgerīs (666)

*he accuses you of having fled*



## Verbs of Emotion

**552.** Verbs of emotion take the accusative with the infinitive; (*sometimes, a quod-clause, if the cause of the emotion is to be emphasized as a fact*):

gaudeō, laetor; doleō	<i>I rejoice, grieve</i>
indignor, queror	<i>I am indignant, complain</i>
aegrē, graviter ferō	<i>I am annoyed, distressed</i>
inīquō animō ferō	<i>I take amiss</i>
aequō animō ferō	<i>I bear calmly</i>
mīror tē abīsse }	<i>I wonder that you left</i>
mīror quod abīstī }	

## Hope and promise, swear and threaten

**553.** *Subsequent action* (539), especially after verbs of hoping, promising, swearing and threatening, is expressed by

a) the *future infinitive*,

b) *posse, dēbēre, velle...* with the *present infinitive*:

spērō, iūrō me <b>itūrum</b> esse	<i>I hope, swear to go</i>
pollicēris tē ventūrum esse	<i>you promise to come</i>
minātur sē id factūrum esse (130)	<i>he threatens to do that</i>
cōnfidit sē hōc facere posse	<i>he feels sure he can do this</i>
dicit sē hōc factūrum esse }	<i>he says he will do this</i>
dicit sē hōc facere velle }	
putat sibi hōc faciendum esse }	<i>he thinks he ought to do this</i>
putatsē hōc facere dēbēre (211) }	

But spērō eam suspiciōnem falsam esse, I hope = I wish

spērō mē tibi causam probāvisse, I hope = I think

NOTE: About iubeō and vetō see 549, about volō etc. see 550.

**554.** Instead of the future infinitive of the verb, **fore ut** or **futūrum esse ut** with the present and imperfect subjunctive of the verb *may* be used; it *must* be used with verbs that have no participial stem:

sciō tē laudātum irī or sciō fore ut laudēris  
 scīvī tē laudātum irī or scīvī fore ut laudārēris  
*But only spērō fore ut discās, litterīs studeās*

**555.** The infinitive of the **second future** is formed by *fore ut* with the *perfect* and *pluperfect subjunctive* in the active, by *fore* with the *perfect participle* in the deponent and passive:

crēdō fore ut librum scripseris	<i>I believe you will have written the book</i>
crēdebam fore ut librum scripsissēs	<i>I believed you would have written the b.</i>
crēdō librum scriptum fore	<i>I believe the book will have been written</i>
crēdebam tē profectum fore	<i>I believed you would have set out</i>

**556.** To avoid ambiguity, the infinitive passive is often used:

“dīcō tē eum vincere posse” is ambiguous,  
 “dīcō eum ā tē vinci posse” excludes doubt.

**557.** In the a. c. i. - constructions the *governing* verb, the subject *accusative* and the infinitive *esse* are sometimes omitted, when they are implied in or can be easily understood from the context.

**558.** Infinitives of *impersonal* constructions have *no subject accusative*:

videō pluere	<i>I see that it is raining</i>
putat vinci posse	<i>he thinks victory possible</i>
scit sibi moriendum esse	<i>he knows that he must die</i>

**559.** Nouns *compared* with a subject accusative take the same case, when the verb implied is the same:

cōstat mē prius hūc vēnisse quam tē (= quam tū vēnistī)  
 ait mē idem facere quod illum (= quod ille faciat)

### Translation of the a. c. i. into English

**560.** The Latin accusative with the infinitive may be rendered by a *substantive*, an *infinitive*, an *accusative with an infinitive*, a *dependent clause*, or a *leading clause*:

a. Deum esse cōstat	<i>God's existence is certain</i>
b. dīcit sē scīre (oth. ex. 583)	<i>he affirms to know</i>
gaudet sē hīc esse	<i>he is glad to be here</i>
c. audiō eum loquī	<i>I hear him speak</i>
d. putō eum hōc fēcisse	<i>I believe (that) he did it</i>
rūmor est eum fūgisce	<i>they say of him that he fled</i>
e. cōstat hōc factum esse	<i>this is an evident fact</i>
cōstat hōc factum esse	<i>this, evidently, is a fact</i>
putō hōc factum esse	<i>this, I think, is a fact</i>
putō hōc factum esse	<i>this, in my opinion, is a fact</i>

<i>f. nōn putō,</i>	<i>I do not think... or, I believe that...not</i>
<i>negō,</i>	<i>I deny... or, I affirm that...not</i>
<i>nōlō,</i>	<i>I do not wish... or, I desire that...not</i>
<i>vetō,</i>	<i>I forbid... or, I command that...not</i>

## INFINITIVE WITH SUBJECT NOMINATIVE

(Infīnītīvus cum nōminātīvō: 365)

**561.** The personal construction of the nominative with the infinitive is used

*a. with all passive forms of*

**iubērī, vetārī, vidērī,**  
*and cōgī, sinī, prohibērī;*  
*exīstimārī, putārī,*  
*and dīcī, iūdicārī;*

*b. with*            *trāditur, trāduntur,*  
*fertur and feruntur:*

<i>iussī, vetitī sunt abīre</i>	<i>they were told (not) to leave</i>
<i>cōgeris bellī socius esse</i>	<i>you are forced to be our ally</i>
<i>lēge prohibēmur haec facere</i>	<i>we are forbidden by law to do this</i>
<i>vidēmur hōc facere</i>	<i>we are <b>seen</b> doing this</i>
<i>vidēminī hōc facere</i>	<i>you <b>seem</b> to be doing this</i>
<i>videntur hōc facere</i>	<i>it <b>seems</b>, appears, as though they...</i>
<i>vidēbantur victum irī</i>	<i>they seemed likely to lose the battle</i>
<i>videor (mihi) rēctē fecisse</i>	<i>I believe to have acted rightly</i>
<i>vīsus est sibi beātus esse</i>	<i>he believed himself happy</i>
<i>But vīsum est eī hōc facere</i>	<i>he saw fit, pleased to do this</i>
<i>= placuit eī hōc facere</i>	
<i>beātus esse dīcor, putor(562)</i>	<i>I am <b>said</b>, thought to be happy</i>
<i>iūstus esse dictus est</i>	<i>he was said to be just</i>

<i>caecus fuisse trāditur, fertur</i>	<i>he is said to have been blind</i>
<i>But trāditum est poētam</i>	<i>it is related that the poet was blind</i>
<i>caecum fuisse</i>	

**562.** The accusative with the infinite, however, is used with the following *impersonal expressions*:

trāditum est, dīcendum est     *it is related, it must be said*  
 mihi dīcitur eum discessisse *I am told that he has left*  
 tibi, eī, nōbīs, vōbīs, eīs dīcitur *you, he, we, you, they are told*  
 dīcī potest, vērē dīcitur     *it can be said, it is truly said*  
 rēctē, nōn sine causā dīcitur     *it is not said without reason*  
 rēctē dīcitur tē dēceptum esse *it is rightly said that you h. b. d.*  
 But dīceris dēceptus esse     *you are said to have been deceived*

**563.** Many other verbs occasionally take the nominative with the infinitive; as, arguī, audīrī, cognōscī, dēmōnstrārī, intellegī, nūntiārī, ostendī, perspicī, reperīrī, scribī...

### The a. c. i. in Exclamations

**564.** A simple infinitive or an accusative with an infinitive is used in exclamations of surprise, indignation and regret (432):

hōc dīcere     *the idea of saying this!*  
 tē (or tēne) hōc dīcere!     }  
 tū (or tūne) ut hōc dīcās!     } *you to say this!*  
 tū hōc dīcās     }  
 mēne inceptō dēsistere!     *I to give up my plan!*

**565.** The infinitive is also used as a predicate or appositive noun (356, 358):

eī vīvere est cōgitāre     *to him living is thinking*  
 hōc eum dēlectat, cōgitāre     *this is a pleasure to him, to think*

NOTE: For the historical infinitive see n. 595, note.

### USES OF THE PARTICIPLES

(Study 538, 539; Compare 186, 200, 211, 214, 219, 221-223)

**566.** Participles are used as **attributes** (359) or in place of relative clauses; those in ūrus, however, except futūrus and ventūrus, are commonly united with a form of esse (211):

cīvis bene merēns     *a well-deserving citizen*  
 cōnsentiēns laus     *unanimous praise*  
 mala opīnāta (219)     *imaginary evils*  
 victōria parta     *a victory gained*  
 signa rērum futūrārum     *sighs of future events*  
 librī legendī     *books worth reading*

**567.** Some participles have become complete adjectives (see 449 a) or substantives:

<i>a māns</i> amicus, <i>vir sapiēns</i>	<i>a fond friend, a wise man</i>
<i>vir doctus</i> , <i>homō ērudītissimus</i>	<i>a learned man, a most accomplished man</i>
<i>nōmen invicti imperātōris</i>	<i>the name of the invincible leader</i>
<i>īnsectantēs dēpellō</i>	<i>I drive off my pursuers</i>
<i>cōnsuētūdō valentis</i>	<i>the habit of a healthy man</i>
<i>male parta male dībābuntur</i>	<i>ill got, ill spent</i>

**568.** The English participles entitled, above-mentioned, so-called are expressed by *relative clauses* in Latin ( 691):

<i>liber quī īnscribitur Laelius</i> }	<i>the book entitled "Laelius"</i>
<i>liber quī Laelius īnscriptus est</i> }	
<i>cōpiaē quas suprā commemorāvī</i>	<i>the above-mentioned troops</i>
<i>vestra quae dicitur vīta</i>	<i>your so-called life</i>
<i>Hermæ quōs vocant</i>	<i>the so-called Hermes-pillars</i>

**569.** Participles are also used as **predicates** (356):

<i>fuit temporibus īnserviēns</i>	<i>he was a time-server</i>
<i>Gallia est dīvīsa</i>	<i>Gaul is divided</i>
<i>est moritūrus</i> (211)	<i>he is about to die</i>
<i>ea iniūria ferenda nōn est</i>	<i>that wrong is intolerable</i>

**570.** Participles are chiefly used as **appositives** (shortened predicates: 358); the **present** participle is employed mainly with

verbs signifying represent or denoting an action of the senses; as,

*facere, indūcere; vidēre, audīre,*  
*represent, introduce; see, hear:*

<i>facit Socratem disputantem</i>	<i>he represents Socrates discussing</i>
<i>indūcit Socratem loquentem</i>	<i>he introduces S. as speaking</i>
<i>videō eōs pugnantes</i>	<i>I see them fighting</i>
<i>videō eōs pugnāre</i>	<i>I see them fight</i>

*But for lack of a perfect active participle and a present passive participle the corresponding infinitives must be used with those verbs:*

<i>fēcit Verrem plūs accēpisse</i>	<i>{ he represented Verres as having received</i>
	<i>{ more</i>
<i>cōstruī ā Deō mundum facit</i>	<i>he r. the world as being built by God</i>
<i>videō legiōnēs premi</i>	<i>I see the legions hard pressed</i>



**571.** The **perfect** participle is employed

a) with **habēre**, *have*; **tenēre**, *hold*, to denote the action as and the **perfect** system of **esse** } *lasting in its results*:

fidem tuam spectatam habeo	<i>I have tested your fidelity</i>
cohortēs cōstitutās habeo	<i>I have my cohorts stationed</i>
cognitum, cōstitutum habeo	<i>I know, have decreed</i>
eōs comprehēnsōs teneo	<i>I hold them under arrest</i>
Iānus bis... clausus fuit	<i>the temple of J. was twice (kept) closed</i>

b) with **facere**, *make*, and **velle**, *wish*, to express an action *energetically*:

fac eōs missōs	<i>discharge them</i>
missa haec fac	<i>let this pass</i>
mē probātum voluī	<i>I wished myself well approved</i>

c) in dependence on a preposition, substantive or verb, and also in the nominative, in order to express an *idea more important* than the noun to which it is added:

dē homine occisō quaeritur	<i>the murder of a man is investigated</i>
ante conditam urbem	<i>before the founding of the city</i>
post nātōs hominēs	<i>since the creation of man</i>
glōria patriae liberatae	<i>the glory of liberating the country</i>
recuperatam libertatem ei } grātulor	<i>I congratulate him on the recovery of his liberty</i>
Sicilia āmissa eum angit	<i>the loss of Sicily worries him</i>

*Note:* Also the gerundive (579) expresses an idea more important than the noun to which it is added:

occasiō Caesaris occidendī	{ <i>an opportunity for the murder of Caesar</i>
----------------------------	--

**572.** The **appositive** participle is often **equivalent** to

coordinate clauses (*plus et* or *sed*), or to  
 subordinate clauses expressing } *time and situation,*  
*cause, opposition, condition,*  
*means or manner:*

It may be **translated** by

coordinate clauses (*plus and* or *but*), or by  
 subordinate clauses, *prepositional phrases* or *participles*;  
 (a negated participle may also be rendered by "*without ...ing*"):



Platō scribēns mortuus est) *Plato died, as he was writing;*  
 (=cum scriberet: *T. and Situ.*) *{ Plato died while writing*

Carthāgine expulsus Ephesum vē-  
 nit exsul; (cum expulsus esset: *Time*  
*and Situation*) *{ (after he had been) driven from C.,*  
*{ he came an exile to Ephesus*

urbem captam dēlēvit, or *{ he took and destroyed the city;*  
 urbem cēpit, captam dēlēvit *{ he took the city and destroyed it;*  
 (*Time and Situation*) *{ having taken.., when he had..*

interdiū stellās nōn cōspici-  
 mus sōlis lūce obscurātās; *{ we cannot see the stars by day,*  
 (=quā obscuratae sunt: *Cause*) *{ because they are darkened*  
*{ by the light of the sun*

rīsum cupientēs tenēre nequimus; *{ in spite of our efforts we cannot*  
 (=quamquam c.: *Opposition*) *{ restrain our laughter*

miserum est nihil proficientem *{ it is pitiful to worry without ac-*  
 angī; (=cum nihil proficiās: *Opp.*) *{ accomplishing anything*

capitis absolūtus pecūniā multātus *{ though acquitted of the capital*  
 est; (=cum absolūtus esset: *Oppos.*) *{ charge, he was fined a sum of money*  
*{ or he was acquitted, but fined...*

damnātum poenam sequi oportē-  
 bat; (=sī damnātus esset: *Condition*) *{ if condemned, punishment had to over-*  
*{ take him*

sōl oriēns diem cōficit; *{ the sun by its rising makes the*  
 (=cum oritur or oriendō: *Means*) *{ day*

haec properantēs scrip-  
 simus; (=properē: *Manner*) *{ I have written this hastily*

**573.** Almost any English clause whose subject is *identical* with a word of a leading or coordinate clause may be rendered by a Latin appositive *participle in agreement with that word* (participium coniunctum; see 516, Note, and 517).

**Rule for rendering English phrases or clauses by Latin appositive participles:**

1. Change the English *subordinate clause, phrase, or preceding coordinate clause* into any clause whose *subject is identical* with a word of a leading or coordinate clause.
2. *Omit the introductory relative or conjunction.*
3. Change the finite verb into the corresponding *active, deponent or passive participle* (See page 216).
4. Put the participle *in agreement* with the word it modifies.

## EXAMPLES (COMPARE 517)

1. *a.* When the soldiers saw the enemy, they attacked them:

"Saw" denotes action **previous** to "attacked"; hence either of two participles may serve in translating, a *deponent* with active meaning, or a *passive* participle.)

militēs hostem cōnspiciātī petivērunt; or "them" must re-  
militēs hostem cōnspectum adgressi sunt } *main untranslated.*

(In the first translation the participle refers to and agrees with the subject, in the second with the object of the sentence.)

1. *b.* The soldiers take delight in the leader who is well deserving of them:

militēs duce bene dē sē meritō dēlectantur (130);

*But* duce, quī bene de iīs meritus est, dēlectantur.

(The participle agrees with duce, the object of the verb.)

2. I met your friend on his way home:

(The phrase "on his way home" is equivalent to the clause, "while he was going home, or as he was returning home"; it denotes action **contemporaneous** with "met".)

amicō tuō domum redeuntī obviam factus sum;

(The participle agrees with amicō, the indirect object of the verb.)

3. *a.* The Germans attacked and defeated the legions;  
or the Germans attacked the legions and defeated them:

(According to the rule, the clause to be expressed by a participle is the **first** one: the Germans attacked [the legions]; and, as "attacked" is **previous** to "defeated", either a *deponent* participle in agreement with the *subject* or a *passive* participle agreeing with the *object* may be employed in translating.)

Germānī legiōnēs adgressī dēvicērunt; "them" remains un-  
or Germānī legiōnēs petitās dēvicērunt } *translated.*

3. *b.* We saw them flee, but did not pursue them (570):

fugientēs cōnspiciātī nōn persecūtī sumus

or fugientēs cōnspectōs persecūtī nōn sumus.

**574. The lacking Perfect Active Participle**

is supplied by synonymous deponents, ablatives absolute, participia coniuncta, cum-, ubi-, postquam- or relative clauses:

cālōnōs caedem cōspiciātī	}	seeing (i. e. having seen, 539) the
or caede cōspectā fūgērunt		slaughter, the camp-followers fled
urbem captam diripuērunt		having taken the city, they plundered it
eō cum pervēnisset, (ubi pervēnit,	}	having arrived there (when..., after...)
postquam pervēnit) castra posuit		he pitched his camp
militēs, quī fortiter pugnāverant.		having fought bravely, the soldiers...

**575. The lacking Present Passive Participle**

is supplied by synonymous present active participles, cum-, dum-, or relative clauses:

suīs labōrantibus succurrit	}	he sent help to his hard pressed
		(i. e. being hard pressed, 539) men
hostēs, cum obsidērentur (= quī or	}	being besieged (during the siege)
dum obsidēbantur), magnā inopiā		the enemy suffered great want
premēbantur		
quī obsidentur, premuntur		being besieged they suffer (539)
quī obsidēbuntur, prementur		being besieged they will suffer

## THE GERUND AND THE GERUNDIVE

**576.** The **gerund** supplies the lacking oblique cases of the present active infinitive (200); but in the accusative it is not used as an object of a verb, but only after prepositions:

legere est ars	reading is an art
ars legendī	the art of reading
operam dat legendō	he devotes himself to reading
prōpēnsus est ad legendum	he is given to reading
But cupiō legere	I desire to read
discimus legendō	we learn by reading

**577.** The gerund may govern a genitive, dative or ablative; also an accusative of a neuter pronoun or adjective used substantively, but rarely an accusative of a substantive (578):

officium obliviscendī in ūriārum	the duty of forgetting wrongs
cōsiliū parcendī hostī	the plan of sparing the enemy
mōs vivendī lacte et carne	the custom of living on milk and meat
ars vēra et falsa diiudicandī	} the art of distinguishing truth from
	} falsehood
cupidus sum id discendī	I am desirous to learn that

**578.** Instead of the oblique cases of the gerund with an accusative of a substantive (578), the construction of the **gerundive** is commonly employed, i. e. the substantive is put in the case of the gerund, and modified by a gerundive (186):

ars scribendī epistulam  
ars scribendae epistulae } *the art of writing a letter*

operam dat discendō litterās  
operam dat discendīs litterīs } *he devotes himself to the study of letters*

urbem trādit ad diripiendum  
urbem trādit diripiendam } *he gives up the city to plunder*

dēlectāmur discendō litterās  
dēlectāmur discendīs litterīs } *we delight in the study of letters*

**579.** The *gerundive*, like the future passive participle, is *future* in meaning, expressing an act as yet to come (539):

Caesar occīdendus est (Participle) *Caesar is to be murdered*

occāsio Caesaris occīdendī (G.) } *an opportunity for the murder of Caesar*

However, while the future passive participle is passive in form and meaning and denotes necessity, the gerundive (and gerund) are *passive in form*, but rather *active in meaning*, and *do not denote necessity* (See 571, note):

epistula scribenda est (Partic.) *the letter must be written*

ars scribendae epistulae (G've) *the art of writing a letter*

ars scribendī (Gerund) *the art of writing*

#### USES OF THE GERUND AND THE GERUNDIVE

**580.** In general,  
the **gerund** is necessary with

- a. intransitive verbs (577),
- b. transitive verbs followed by an accusative of a pronoun or adjective (577);

the **gerundive** is necessary with

- a. cūrāre, dare, suscipere (583),
- b. transitive verbs followed by an accusative of a substantive,  
if the gerund would be a dative (582)  
or depend upon a **preposition** (583, 584);

the gerundive is the *usual construction*,

- a. if the gerund would be a genitive or an ablative (578),
- b. with ūtī, fruī, fungī, potīrī, vēscī (581).

**581.** The **genitive** of the gerund and the gerundive is used with

- a. *substantives*, especially *causā* and *grātiā*;
- b. *adjectives* incomplete in their meaning (449);

**NOTE:** The genitives *meī*, *tui*, *sui*, *nostrī* and *vestrī* always take the gerundive in *ī* without regard to the gender or number of the substantives referred to :

- |                                     |   |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| a. <i>fīnem facere dīcendī</i>      | <i>to finish speaking</i>                   |
| <i>spēs patriae liberandae</i>      | <i>the hope of freeing the country</i>      |
| <i>patriae liberandae causā</i>     | <i>for the sake of freeing the country</i>  |
| <i>praedandī causā</i>              | <i>for the sake of plundering</i>           |
| <i>nostrī liberandī causā</i> (443) | <i>for the sake of freeing ourselves</i>    |
| <i>cae sui purgandī causā eunt</i>  | <i>they go in order to clear themselves</i> |
| b. <i>perītus bellī gerendī</i>     | <i>skilled in waging war</i>                |
| <i>cupidus vestrī videndī</i>       | <i>desirous of seeing you</i>               |

*Distinguish:*

- |  |                                    |
|--|------------------------------------|
| <i>spēs potiundōrum castrōrum</i> (G'dive) | <i>the hope of taking the camp</i> |
| <i>castris potiendum est</i> (Partic.)     | <i>the camp must be taken</i>      |

**582.** The **dative** of the gerund and the gerundive is used with

- a) *comitia*, *election*, *-virī*, *-men*,
- b) *pār*, *equal*, *accomodātus*, *suitable*
- c) *praeesse* and *praefficere*, *be or put in charge of*, *diem dicere*, *appoint a day*, *locum capere*, *choose a place*, *operam dare*, *studere*, *labōrem impertire*, *give attention to*
- d) some other expressions :

- |                                      |   |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| a. <i>comitia cōsulibus rogandīs</i> | <i>comitia for the election of consuls</i>                        |
| <i>comitia decemvirīs creandīs</i>   | <i>election for the nomination of decemvirs</i>                   |
| <i>decemvirī lēgibus scribendīs</i>  | <i>decemvirs for the preparation of laws</i>                      |
| b. <i>tempora dēmetendīs</i>         | } <i>seasons suitable for gathering</i><br><i>fruits</i>          |
| <i>frūgibus accommodāta</i>          |   |
| c. <i>praeesse nāvī aedificandae</i> | <i>to be in charge of the building of the fleet</i>               |
| <i>locum capere castrīs</i>          | } <i>to choose a place for the pitch-</i><br><i>ing of a camp</i> |
| <i>mūniendīs</i>                     |   |
| <i>lēgibus cognōscendis</i>          | } <i>I give my attention to the study</i><br><i>of laws</i>       |
| <i>studeō</i>                        |   |
| d. <i>solvendō nōn sum</i>           | <i>I am not solvent, cannot pay</i>                               |
| <i>scribendō adsum</i>               | <i>I sign a decree of the senate</i>                              |



**583.** The **accusative** of the gerund and the gerundive is used with

a. *prepositions*, especially **ad**, (*in*, *inter*, *ob*);

b. *verbs* denoting

**care for**; **as**, *cūrāre*,

**undertake**; **as**, *suscipere*, *conducere*,

**give**; **as**, *dare*, *trādere*, *hand over*; *locāre*, *let a contract*;  
*mittere*, *send*; *relinquere*, *leave*; etc.

a. **ad** *pugnandum* *parātus sum* *I am prepared to fight*

*ad pācem petendam veniunt* *they come to ask peace*

*inter lūdendum* *during play*

b. *pontem faciendum cūrō* *{ I provide for (see to, attend to)*  
*{ the building of a bridge*

*puerum educandum suscipiō* *I undertake the training of the boy*

*signum Iovis collocandum* *{ I let (take) the contract of*  
*locō, (condūcō)* *{ erecting the statue of Jupiter*

*tibi aurum servandum dō* *I give you the gold to keep*

**NOTE:** The passive has the double nominative:

*urbs diripiēda concēditur* *the city is given up to plunder*

**584.** The **ablative** of the gerund and the gerundive is used

a. as an **ablative of instrument**;

b. with **ā**, **dē**, **in**, (*ex*, *prō*):

a. *mēns alitur discendō* *the mind is nourished by learning*

*loquendī ēlegantia augētur* *{ elegance in speech is increased by*  
*legendis orātōribus et poētis* *{ reading orators and poets*

b. *dētērrēre ā pugnandō* *to deter from fighting*

*dē bene beātēque vivendō* *{ to debate on the art of a good*  
*disputāre* *{ and happy life*

*celeritās in rē gerendā* *swiftness in execution*

## THE SUPINE

(Compare 186, 200, 511, 538, 529)

**585.** The **supine** in **um** is used to express *purpose* of acting after verbs of motion (*īre, venīre, proficīscī, convenīre, mittere...*), but not after verbs of hastening (543):

<b>sessum</b> it	<i>he is going to take his seat</i>
<b>cēnātus cubitum</b> iit	<i>after dinner, he went to bed</i>
<b>patriam dēfēnsūm</b> revocātus est	<i>he was called home to defend the country</i>
<b>Also nūptum dare</b> or <b>collocāre</b> to give in marriage	
<b>But ad vōs venīre</b> properō <i>I hasten to come to you</i>	
<b>filiōs Athēnās mīsērunt</b>	} <i>they sent their sons to Athens</i>
<b>ērudīendōs</b> or <b>ut ērudīrentur</b>	
	<i>for education (to be educated)</i>

**586.** **Purpose** is regularly expressed by

- ut** or **quī** with the present and imperfect subjunctive;
- ad** with the accusative of a substantive, gerund or gerundive;
- causā** followed by the genitive of a substantive, gerund or gerundive;
- sometimes by **dē**, the supine in **-um**, or the participle in **-ūrus**:

<i>a.</i> <b>addūcō tē ut</b> abeās	<i>I induce you to go</i>
<b>lēgātōs mīsērunt quī eum</b> }	<i>they sent legates to accuse him</i>
<b>absentem accūsārent</b> }	
<i>b.</i> <b>ad pācem</b> hortor	<i>I exhort to peace</i>
<b>ad persēvērandum</b> inflammō	<i>I rouse to perseverance</i>
<b>ad pācem petendam</b> vēnērunt	<i>they came to sue for peace</i>
<i>c.</i> <b>reī pūblicae causā</b> (grātiā)	<i>for the interest of the state</i>
<b>animī causā</b>	<i>for the sake of amusement</i>
<b>agendī causā</b> (581)	<i>for the sake of acting</i>
<b>ingenīi acuendī causā</b>	<i>to sharpen the intellect</i>
<i>d.</i> <b>lēgātōs dē pāce</b> mittō	{ <i>I send ambassadors to treat of</i>
	<i>peace</i>

**587.** The **supine** in **ū** is used as an ablative of respect (511) with adjectives and **fās**; it never takes an object.

The *supines* in **ū** commonly occurring are  
dictū, factū, vīsū, audītū, cognītū, inventū.

The *adjectives* commonly used with supines in **ū** are :  
facilis, difficilis; mirābilis and ūtilis;  
optimus, honestus and turpis; iucundus, incrēdibilis :

mīrābile vīsū                      *wonderful to behold*  
 id dictū quam rē facilius est   *it is easier said than done*  
 hōc est optimum factū          *this is best to do*  
 sī hōc fās est dictū              *if this is right to say*  
 With dictū: nefās dictū        *it is a sin to say*

**588.** After *facilis*, *difficilis* and *iūcundus* other constructions are preferred; as,

rēs facilis est ad cognōscendum;  
 facile est rem cognōscere;  
 rei cognitiō facilis est;  
 rēs facile cognōscitur, (cognōscētur);  
 rem facile cognōscēs or cognōscās.

## THE TENSES

**589.** The *tenses* are verbal forms used to represent an act in its relation to *time*, pointing out either

the **period** of time to which the act belongs (*absolute time*),  
 or the **stage** of advancement at a time which is in mind (*relative time*),  
 or both the *period* of time and the *stage* of advancement.

### AORISTIC TENSES

**590.** The *historical* perfect or perfectum historicum (always) and frequently the present and the *first* future tenses represent the act merely as belonging to the past, present or future period of time; the tenses thus used are said to be *aoristic* or *indefinite*; they are merely *narrative*, representing the act as act:

scribō  
*I write*

scripsi  
*I wrote*

scribam  
*I shall write*

## DESCRIPTIVE TENSES

**591.** The *present*, *imperfect* and *future*,  
the *present perfect*, *past perfect* (*pluperfect*) and *f. perfect*,  
the *present*, *imperfect* and *future* of the periphrastic  
conjugation

may (590) represent the act not only as *present*, *past* or *future*,  
but also as *going on*, *completed*, or *yet to come* at a time which  
is in mind; the tenses thus used are said to be *definite* or *de-*  
*scriptive*, pointing out the period of the act and its stage of  
advancement at a time which is in mind:

Stage of Act	Period of Act		
	Present	Past	Future
<i>Going on:</i>	scribō <i>I am writing at the present time</i>	scribēbam <i>I was writing at a past tense</i>	scribam <i>I shall be writing at a future time</i>
<i>Completed:</i>	scripsi (Pres. Perf.) <i>I have done writing at the present time</i>	scripseram <i>I had done writing at a past time</i>	scripserō <i>I shall h. done writing at a future time</i>
<i>Yet to come:</i>	scriptūrus sum <i>I am going to write at the present time</i>	scriptūrus eram <i>I was going to write at a past time</i>	scriptūrus erō <i>I shall be going to w. at a future time</i>

**Note:** The **beginning** of an action is expressed by

- inchoatives*: 255 sqq.;
- incipiō*, *coepi*, *incipiam* (*scribere*): 277;
- the *aoristic* tenses, (if no ambiguity arises): 590.

**592. PRINCIPAL AND SECONDARY TENSES**

**Principal** tenses are

the *present*, *present perfect* and the *two futures*.

**Secondary** or **historical** tenses are

the *imperfect*, *historical perfect* and *pluperfect*.





- c. mōns impendēbat      *a mountain overhung*  
     ī bā m forte viā sacrā      *I happened to go along the via sacra*  
     memoriā tenēbat, putābat      *he remembered, thought*
- d. iam diū lectō tenēbātur      *he had long been bedridden*
- e. nōn ferēbat labōrem      *he could not endure the exertion*

NOTE: In vivid descriptions the descriptive infinitive (*infīnītīvus historicus* or *dēscriptīvus*) is used instead of the imperfect (Caes. I. 16; III. 5), but only in leading clauses.

### 596.                      The Present Perfect (591, 571)

The *present perfect*, which corresponds to the English perfect with "have" denotes an act as past *with* reference to the present time (*perfectum praesēns*):

#### a) as now **completed** :

- scripsī                      *I have done writing*  
     dixī                      *I have finished speaking*

#### b) as now **lasting** in its results :

- abiit, excessit, evāsīt,      { *he is gone, he has left, he has*  
     erūpit                      { *escaped, he has broken away*
- fuimus Trōes, fuit Ilium } *we have ceased to be Trojans*  
    { *Ilium is no more*
- dē mē āctum est              *I am undone*  
     cōstitī = stō              *I have placed myself = I stand*  
     cōsuēvī = soleō              { *I have formed the habit =*  
    { *I am in the habit*
- cognōvī = sciō              *I have found out = I know*  
     statuī = mihi in animō est      *I have resolved = I intend to*

#### c) as now *judged upon or estimated* :

- hōc bene fēcīt              *he has done this well*  
     ūnus homō nōbīs cūctandō } *one man has raised our cause*  
     restituit rem              { *again by lingering*

### 597.                      The Historical Perfect (590, 594)

The *historical perfect*, which corresponds to the English "past tense" and the Greek "*aorist*," denotes an act as past **without** any reference to the present time, merely answering the question, "what happened at that time?"

- scripsī                      *I wrote*  
     vēnī, vīdī, vīcī              *I came and saw and conquered*

*NOTE:* The historical perfect is often accompanied by the imperfect, the former *going on* in narrating the main facts which happened and followed one another in the past, the latter *stopping* to describe the scene and the circumstances of the action, the character, opinions and motives of the acting persons (595) ("Perfectō prōcēdit, imperfectō īnsistit ōrātiō"):

in finēs Ambianōrum pervēnit;	{	<i>he advanced into the territory of the</i>
quī sē sine morā dēdidērunt.		<i>Ambiani, who submitted immediately</i>
Eōrum finēs Nervii attingēbant		<i>Adjoining to them were the Nervians</i>

**598.** The historical perfect is sometimes used to express a universal truth (*gnomic perfect*, corresponding to the *gnomic aorist* in Greek):

omne tulit pūctum quī miscuit	{	<i>"he who precept with amusement blends,</i>
ūtile dulci		<i>wins every suffrage"</i>

**599.**

### Epistolary Tenses

In letters the writer, when referring to the time of composing them, often uses those terms which he would employ, if he were to arrive himself instead of the letter; e. g.,

the **imperfect** and **pluperfect** instead of the present and perfect;  
eō diē, pridīē, postridīē instead of hodiē, herī, crās:

nihil habēbam, quod scrīberem (595)	{	<i>I have nothing to write:</i>
		<i>nihil habeo quod scrībam</i>
ad omnēs tuās epistulās rescripseram pridīē (611)	{	<i>I answered your letters yesterday:</i>
		<i>ad...epistulās rescrīpsī herī</i>
erat tamen rūmor comitia dilātum iri	{	<i>but there is a rumor that the</i>
		<i>election will be postponed</i>
haec scrīpsī ante lūcem (597)	{	<i>I have written, I wrote or I write</i>
		<i>(scrībō) this before daybreak</i>
scrībēbam		<i>I am writing (scrībō)</i>

### TENSES IN DEPENDENT CLAUSES

**600.** The tenses in dependent clauses are either grammatically independent of or dependent on (i. e. determined by) those of the main clauses; they are 1. **independent**,

a) when by the *nature* of the thought conveyed by them they express *absolute* time only (589, 590); (always, when the two tenses belong to different periods, and in inserted clauses 601, 606)

b) when they are fixed by *usage*, although they express both absolute and relative time (602, 622, 623.).

c) in single instances, when the writer, for reasons of his own, chooses to make an exception from the rule (603);

## 2 dependent,

when the act expressed by them *belongs to the same period* as that of the main clause *and* is either

a) (*coincident*), *congruent* or *contemporaneous* with (607, 608, 617, 622),

b) *previous to* (611, 618) or

c) *subsequent to* (615, 619) that same main act.

NOTE: See exceptions n. 600: 1, b and c.

## INDEPENDENT TENSES IN INDICATIVE CLAUSES

**601.** Independent by *nature* (600, a) are those tenses which express *absolute* (589) time only:

quod veritus sum factum est:	<i>tenses of the same period</i>
quod dīcam factum est	} <i>tenses of different periods</i>
quae imperāvistī faciam	
sī ita est, perībunt	
illī, ut dīximus, revertērunt:	<i>tense in an inserted clause</i>

**602.** Independent by *usage* (600, b) is

a. the present taken by **dum, while;**

b. the perfect taken by

**postquam** or **posteaquam;** after,

ut, ubi, simul atque,	} as soon as, (when denoting a single
ut primum, ubi primum,	
cum primum,	
	} past act: see 610; 736)

a. <b>dum</b> in his locis morātur	} while he tarried in these regions,
lēgātī ad eum vēnērunt	} legates came to him
dum haec (or ea) geruntur,	} while this was going on (meanwhile),
Caesarī nūntiātum est	} it was announced to Caesar

b. eō postquam pervēnit,	} after Caesar arrived there,
obsidēs poposcit	} he demanded hostages
id ut audīvit, abiit	as soon as he heard that, he left

**603.** Independent by *exception* is e. g. Caes. dē bellō Gall. 1, 23:

id fēcit, quod nōluit (instead of	} he did this, because he did not want
nōlēbat : 595) eum locum vacāre	} that land to be left vacant

## INDEPENDENT TENSES IN SUBJUNCTIVE CLAUSES

**604.** Clauses of **result** take the subjunctive of the

- a. *present*, to denote the result as existing at the time of the speaker,
  - b. *historical perfect*, to denote it as a past fact,
  - c. *present perfect*, to denote it as a present judgment on a past fact:
- a. Siciliam ita vexāvit, ut { *he harried Sicily so thoroughly*  
restituī nōn possit } *that it cannot be restored*
  - b. adeō excellēbat abinentiā, { *he so excelled in self-control*  
ut iustus sit appellātus } *that he was called the just*
  - c. ardēbat dicendi cupiditāte sic, ut { *he was so hot with desire of speaking*  
flagrantius studium nōn viderim } *that I have not seen a more burn'g ardor*

**605.** Indirect **questions** take the subjunctive of the *present perfect* in order to denote the past act *with reference* to the time of the speaker (596); in all other cases they usually follow the rules of sequence, often contrary to the English idiom:

Athēniēnsium clāssis quantae } *how much the Athenian fleet has*  
salūtī fuerit ūniversae } *contributed to the welfare of*  
Graeciae bellō cognitum est Persicō } *Greece was seen in the Persian war*  
*But quantā cōscientiae* } *he showed how great the power*  
*esset (rarely sit) vīs ostendit* { *of conscience is*

**606.** The tenses of

- a. *inserted or introductory clauses*,
  - b. *conditional clauses contrary to fact*,
  - c. *clauses expressing surprise, deliberation or indignation, obligation, possibility or likelihood* are not influenced by the governing verb: 656, 657, 662, **619**:
- a. nē ignōrēs, cecidit { *lest you be ignorant of the fact,*  
 } *he fell*
  - b. vereor nē peccārem, si irem } *I fear I should sin, if I went*
  - c. quaerō ex tē { *I ask you*  
quid respondērem? } *what I should have answered?*  
cū eum nōn dēfenderem? } *why I s. not have defended him?*  
vērī simile nōn est, ut religiōnī } *it is not likely that he would (have) set*  
suae pecūniam antepōneret } *money above his conscience*

**NOTE:** Independent tenses occasionally occur in all other (except final) clauses.





**609.** Equivalent to a future is any other expression which is future in meaning; as, the future imperative, the future passive participle, the hortative, jussive or optative subjunctive, oportet, opus est, posse, velle, debere &c. :

cum relaxare animos volent, } *when they wish to ease them-*  
 caveant intemperantiam or } *selves, let them beware of excess;*  
 cavenda est intemperantia } *excess must be guarded against*

**610.** The sequence of tenses is especially observed in the use of the futures and in clauses expressing repeated action, introduced by *relatives*; cum, si quotiens, *as often as, whenever*; ut quisque, *as often as one*; ubi, simul atque, *as soon as*; (see 502.):

a. nātūrā, si sequemur } *if we follow nature as our*  
 ducem numquam aberrābimus } *guide, we shall never stray*  
 si sapiēs, hōc faciēs } *if you are wise, you will do this*

b. quotiens domi sum (am), ad tē litterās dō (write)  
 quotiens domi erō (am), ad tē litterās dabō (shall write)  
 quotiens domi eram (was), ad tē litterās dabam (wrote: 595)

**611.****PREVIOUS ACTION**

(Completed before the main act begins)

**Rule:****PREVIOUS**

<i>to a main present</i>	<i>is a dependent present perfect</i>
<i>to a main future</i>	<i>is a dependent future perfect</i>
<i>to a main historical tense (592)</i>	<i>is a dependent past perfect (pluperfect).</i>

faciō quod iussistī	<i>what you have commanded</i>
faciam quod iusseris	<i>what you command</i>
fēcī quod iusserās	<i>what you (had) commanded</i>

**612.** Also the sequence for previous action is especially observed in the use of the *futures* and in clauses expressing *repeated* action (609; 610):

si mē assequī potueris,	} <i>if you are able to find me, bury</i> <i>me</i>
sepelītō	
ut sēmentem fēceris, ita metēs	<i>as you sow, you will reap</i>
quidquid acciderit, ferāmus,	} <i>no matter what happens, let us bear</i> <i>it; we must bear it; bear it bravely</i>
ferendum est, fortiter fertō	
quod Deus fēcerit, appro-	} <i>whatever God does, we will,</i> <i>we must think it well</i>
bāre volumus, debēmus	

cum domum vēnī, scribō	when I come home, I write
cum domum vēnerō, scribam	when I come home, I shall write
cum domum vēneram, scribēbam	when I came home, I wrote

**613.** Repeated contemporaneous and previous action is sometimes expressed by the imperfect and pluperfect of the subjunctive, especially after *cum* and *sī*; (cf. Caesar I, 25.).

**614.** A *future perfect* in both clauses denotes both the main and dependent action as completed at the same future time:

quī Antōnium oppresserit,	{ he who crushes Antony, will have finished the war
is bellum cōnfecerit	

### 615. SUBSEQUENT ACTION

(Following the main act)

#### Rule: SUBSEQUENT

to a main present	is a dependent <i>sum</i> with a future part.
to a main future	is a dependent <i>erō</i> with a future part.
to a main historical tense	is a dependent <i>eram</i> with a future part.

parō bellum, quod gestūrus sum, ...which I am going to wage  
 parābō bellum, quod gestūrus erō ...which I am going to wage  
 parāvī bellum, quod gestūrus eram ...which I was going to w.

## Sequence of Tenses

### in Dependent Subjunctive Clauses

(Study n. 600)

**616.** For this sequence the following tenses are considered as principal and secondary:

**Principal** tenses are:

- the **present** and the **two futures**;
- the independent (potential and prohibitive) perfect subjunctives; only a few present perfects, which are equivalent to a present; especially *nōvī, oblītus sum, meminī*;
- usually the historical present and the present of quotation:

**Secondary** tenses are:

- the **imperfect, historical perfect and pluperfect**;
- the historical infinitive and, usually, the present perfect;
- sometimes the *historical present* (always with *cum narrātivum*) and the present used in quotations.

**617. Rule: CONTEMPORANEOUS (600, 608)**

*with the principal tense*(616) *is the present subjunctive;*

*with a secondary tense is the imperfect subjunctive:*

videō quid faciās

...what you **are** doing (now)

vidēbō quid faciās }

...what you **are** doing, (then)

vīderō quid faciās }

i. e. what you will be doing

vidēbam quid facerēs

vīdī quid facerēs

vīderam quid facerēs

...what you **were** doing (then)

quis dubitāverit (nē dubitāverīs)  
quīn in virtūte dīvitiae sint?

{ who doubts (don't doubt) that there  
are riches in virtue

nōvī (= sciō) quis sit (616)

I know who he is

**618. Rule:****PREVIOUS (600, 611)**

*to a principal tense*

*is the perfect subjunctive*

*to a secondary tense*

*is the pluperfect subjunctive:*

videō quid fēcērīs }

*Direct:*

quid faciēbās? }

or quid fēcistī? }

...what you **have** done

...what you have been doing

...what you did

...what you were doing

vidēbō quid fēcērīs }

vīderō quid fēcērīs }

...what you have done

i. e. what you will have done

vidēbam quid fēcissēs }

vīdī quid fēcissēs }

vīderam quid fēcissēs }

...what you **had** done

...what you had been doing

Also, but loosely:

...what you were doing(before)

oblītus sum (= nesciō) quid }  
fēcērīs }

I have forgotten (= I do not know) what  
you did...

cognōvī (= sciō) quid fēcērīs

I have found out (= I know...)

multī et sunt et fuērunt quī }  
tranquillitatem expetentēs ā }  
negōtiis pūblicis sē remō verint }  
ad ōtiumque pertūgerint }

there are many and there have been  
many who longing for retirement have  
withdrawn from public life and sought  
leisure

**NOTE:** About independent tenses expressing previous action, see 604-606.

**619. Rule:** I. SUBSEQUENT (600;615)

<i>to a principal tense</i>	<i>is the present subjunctive</i>
<i>to a secondary tense</i>	<i>is the imperfect subjunctive,</i>

when the **future** (i. e. subsequent) character of the dependent clause is **suggested** in the sentence; as in

- a. clauses of *purpose* (695 sqq., 711) and *fear* (701, a. and b.);
- b. clauses of *likelihood*..., *deliberation*..., and *expectancy* (See note and 646);
- c. clauses of *result*, except those mentioned in n. 604 and 619, II. :

- a. edō, edam, ēderō ut viv**am** { *I eat... **that** I may live,*  
*or: (in order) to live*  
 verēbar, veritus sum, { <sup>(1)</sup> *I feared... that he **was** going,*  
 veritus eram nē abiret { <sup>(2)</sup> *I feared... that he **would** go*
- b. quaerō cūr ille id faci**at** ...*why he **is** likely to do that*  
 quaerēbam cūr id faceret { ...*why he **was** likely to do that*  
*{ i. e. at the time of the asking*  
 cōsultum it quid faci**at** ...*what he is to (shall) do*  
 cōsultum iit quid faceret ...*what he was to (should) do*  
 exspectābat quid facer**ent** { *he was waiting (to see)*  
*{ what they would to*  
 exspectō sī eant { *I am waiting to see*  
*{ whether they will go*
- c. ita vivit ut iīs **sit** cārus ...*that he **is** dear to them*  
 eī contigit ut nōs liberāret *he succeeded in freeing us*  
 accidit ut **esset** lūna plēna *it happened to be full moon*

**NOTE 1.** The imperfect subjunctive expressing **past or previous likelihood, possibility or propriety, deliberation, surprise or indignation**, when made dependent on any tense, remains unchanged (656, 657, 662, 606):

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| quaerō cūr ille id faceret                                    | { I ask why he <b>was</b> likely to do that,<br>{ i. e. at a time previous to the asking     |
| quaerēbam cūr ille id faceret<br>(See 619, b: Second example) | { I asked why he <b>had been</b> likely to do t.<br>{ i. e. at a time previous to the asking |
| quaerō quis illud negāret                                     | I ask who could have denied that   |





## SEQUENCE IN SUBJUNCTIVE CLAUSES

## Dependent on a Verbum infinitum

**620. (Practical) Rule:** A perfect infinitive or participle is followed by an **imperfect** or **pluperfect**; in all other cases the leading finite verb determines the sequence.

*NOTE:* After *meminī* (present perfect) a past fact is denoted by a present infinitive; by a perfect infinitive only when the past time of the fact is to be emphasized.

The perfect participles *ausus*, *gāvisus*, (*cōn*)*fisus*, *diffisus*; *arbitrātus*, *ratus*, *veritus*; *ūsus*, *complexus*, *secūtus*, have present meaning.

Study n. 539;	608, 611, 615;	617-619
<i>dīcis</i> <i>tē</i> <i>scribere</i>	= <b>scribis</b>	} <i>quid agās,</i> <i>ēgerīs, āctūrus sīs;</i>
<i>videō</i> <i>tē</i> <i>scribentem</i>	= <b>scribis</b>	
<i>dīcēs</i> <i>tē</i> <i>scribere</i>	= <b>scribēs</b>	} <i>quid agātur,</i> <i>āctum sit, (brevis) agātur</i>
<i>dīcis</i> <i>tē</i> <i>scriptūrum</i>	= <b>scriptūrus es</b>	
<i>dīcēbās</i> <i>tē</i> <i>scribere</i>	= <b>scribēbās</b>	} <i>quid agerēs,</i> <i>ēgissēs, āctūrus essēs;</i>
<i>vidēbam</i> <i>tē</i> <i>scribentem</i>	= <b>scribēbās</b>	
<i>dīcēbās</i> <i>tē</i> <i>scriptūrum</i>	= <b>scriptūrus erās</b>	} <i>quid agerētur,</i> <i>āctum esset,</i> <i>(brevis) agerētur</i>
<i>sciō</i> <i>tē</i> <i>scripsisse</i>	= <b>scripsisti</b>	
<i>sciō</i> <i>tē</i> <i>scripsisse</i>	= <b>scripserās</b>	
<i>meminī</i> <i>tē</i> <i>scribere</i>	= <b>scripsisti</b>	

*signifer eōs cohortātus* = *postquam eōs cohortātus est* { *nē cūctārentur,*  
*signifer iīs admonītis* = *cum eōs admonuisset* } *in mare sē prōiecit,*

*cognōscendī quid fieret* *potestātem nōn reliquit,* (= *nōn poterant cognōscere*)

*cognōscendī quid fiat* *potestātem nōn relinquit,* (= *nōn possunt cognōscere*)

*questum eōs mittit, quod adversum sē bellum gerātur,* (= *ut querantur*)

**621.** *More accurately, when a subordinate clause depends on a verbum infinitum, it takes that tense which it would have, if the verbum infinitum were the corresponding finite form (620); the sequence after a perfect infinitive or participle, however, is usually secondary, also after a leading future:*

*viātor bene vestītus causa* } *the fine dress of the traveler will*  
*grassātōrī fuisse dīcētur,* } *be reported as having been the*  
*cūr ab eō spoliārētur* } *cause for the footpad to rob him*

### Sequence in Dependent

#### Congruent, postquam- and simulac- Clauses

**622.** *Postquam-* and *ut-*, *ubi-*, *simulac-*clauses denoting a single past act, and also *coincident* and *congruent* clauses take

- a. the tense of the governing finite verb,  
or, when depending on a verbum infinitum,
- b. the tense of the finite verb that would be equivalent to the verbum infinitum (as explained in n. 620 and 621):

**bene facit** (faciēbat), **cum tacet** (tacēbat), becomes:  
scit (sciēbat), quam bene faciat (faceret), cum taceat (tacēret)  
scit (sciēbat) se bene facere, cum taceat (tacēret)

**bene fēcit** (fēcerat), **quod tacuit** (tacuerat), becomes:  
scit (sciēbat), quam bene fēc'erit (fēcisset), quod tacuerit (tacuisset)  
scit (sciēbat) sē bene fēcisse, quod tacuerit (tacuisset)

**bene faciet, quī tacēbit**, becomes (554):  
scit (sciēbat), quam bene factūrus sit (esset), quī taceat (tacēret)  
scit (sciēbat) } eum bene factūrum esse, quī taceat (tacēret)  
or } fore ut bene faciat (faceret), quī taceat (tacēret)

**mentītus erit, quī negāverit**, becomes (555):  
scit (sciēbat), quam apertē mentītus sit (esset), quī negāverit (negāset)  
scit (sciēbat) eum apertē mentītum fore, quī negāverit (negāset)

**bene fēc'erit, quī fassus erit**, becomes (555):  
scit (sciēbat), quam bene fēc'erit (fēcisset), quī fassus sit (esset)  
scit (sciēbat), fore ut bene fēc'erit (fēcisset), qui fassus sit (esset)

**623.** Clauses dependent on an *irreālis*, (743, III.) take the imperfect (pluperfect):

sī dīcerem, quid agerētur, } *If I told what is going on,*  
mīrārēris } *you would be astonished*

### Sequence in clauses

#### Dependent on Dependent Clauses

**624. NOTE:** The rules of sequence, as explained in 616 sqq. with the exceptions mentioned in 622 and 623, are the same for clauses dependent on main or on subordinate clauses of any kind:

veniam ubi cognō verō, quid agās, ēgerīs, āctūrus sīs

vēnī ubi cognō vī, quid agerēs, ēgissēs, āctūrus essēs

videō (vidēbam), quid impediāt (impēdīret) nē abeās (abīrēs)

videō (vidēbam), quid impedīverit (impedīvisset) nē abīrēs

faciēs, quod condūcet, becomes:

optō (optābam) ut faciās (facerēs), quod condūcat (condūceret)

nōn dubitō ('bam) quān factūrus sīs (essēs), quod condūcat (condūceret)

faciēs, quae imperāverō, becomes:

postulō ('bam) ut faciās (facerēs) quae imperāverim (imperāssem)

nōn dubitō ('bām) quān factūrus sīs (essēs) quae imperāverim (imperāssem)

## THE MODES OF THE VERB

**625.** *The modes express the different relations of the predicate to reality;*

the **indicative** (modus indicātīvus) represents the predicate **as** real or existing in the present, past or future (626 sqq.);

the **subjunctive** (modus subiūnctīvus or coniūnctīvus, so called, because it is largely used in subordinate clauses,) represents the predicate

**as** ideal (655 sqq.); e. g. as possible or desired, as a cause, result, condition, etc.; at the same time

either *excluding* reality, as in some conditional clauses (749),

or *abstracting from* reality, as in other conditional clauses (744),

or *implicitly affirming* reality, as in some clauses of result, cause, time, characteristic, &c.;

the **imperative** (modus imperātīvus) represents the predicate

**as** commanded (651 sqq.)

## THE INDICATIVE MODE

(Negative **nōn**)

**626.** The *indicative* is commonly used, as in English, to represent the predicate as *real* or *existing* (625).

Special attention is due to some of its uses in

- a. independent declarative clauses (627);
- b. dependent declarative clauses (629);
- c. direct questions (630 sqq.)

### INDICATIVE IN INDEPENDENT DECLARATIVE CLAUSES

**627.** The English **might, ought, should, would** with an infinitive, when expressing *real* ability, duty, or propriety, (often implying that the act denoted by the infinitive does or did not take place), is represented by the Latin **indicative**:

possum dīcere	{ <b>I might</b> say (though I do not), i. e. <b>I am</b> able to say
poteram dīcere (potuī, potueram)	{ <b>I might have</b> said (though I did not), i. e., <b>I was</b> able to say
dēbēs tacēre	you <b>ought</b> to be silent = it <b>is</b> your duty
eundum fuit	they <b>should</b> have gone = it <b>was</b> proper
opīnor	<b>I should</b> think = <b>I do</b> think
hōc nōn putāvi	{ <b>I should</b> not (never) have thought so, i. e., <b>I did</b> not believe
numquam putāram	
longum est	it <b>would</b> be (too) tedious
difficile est	it would be too difficult
pār est, aequum est	it would be right, fair
melius erat, satius erat	it would have been better
licuit vidēre	one (you) might have seen
tuum erat	it would have been your duty
stultī erat	it would have been folly

**628.** The imperfect may also relate to actions not performed in the present:

dēbēbās ire	{ <sup>(1)</sup> you ought to have gone (though you did not)
	{ <sup>(2)</sup> you ought to go (though you do not)

## INDICATIVE IN DEPENDENT CLAUSES

**629.** Clauses with *general relatives* (quisquis, quotquot, utut quicumque, quotiēscumque, quālescumque, quantuscumque), sive-sive or nisi forte, nisi vērō, take the indicative:

quisquis <b>est</b> , is est sapiēns	} no matter who he <b>is</b> , or, whoever he
	} <b>may be</b> , he is wise
quidquid <b>vult</b> , valde vult	whatever he wants, he wants mightily
quōquō modō sē rēs <b>habet</b>	no matter how things are
veniet tempus mortis, <b>sive</b>	} the time of death will come, whether
retractābis <b>sive</b> properābis	} you be reluctant or in haste
nēmō fere saltat apud Rōmānōs	} hardly anybody dances at Rome,
<b>nisi forte</b> insānit	} unless perchance he be deranged

INTERROGATIVE CLAUSES<sup>1)</sup>

**630.** Questions are divided into

- real and rhetorical questions: 631;
- word and sentence questions: 633; 634;
- simple and alternative questions: 635; 637;
- direct and indirect questions: 640.

## REAL AND RHETORICAL QUESTIONS

**631.** Questions in both *form* and *meaning*, calling for information, are called *real* questions; as,

quid fēcistī?                      **what did you do?**

**632.** Questions in *form*, but vivid assertions or commands in meaning, are called *rhetorical* questions (656, 657; 662):

- num haec obliviscī possum? - nō n possum  
quis dubitat? quis dubitet? - nēmō dubitat  
quam caeca fortūna est! - caeca est et dubia
- visne fatēri? - sine morā fatēre

## WORD QUESTIONS

**633.** Questions which ask for information concerning a part of the sentence are called **word questions**: they are introduced by interrogative *pronouns* (151 sqq.) or *adverbs* (175 sqq.):

1) For practical reasons also indirect subjunctive questions are treated here.



- |                        |                                   |
|------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| a. quis tandem fēcit?  | <i>who in the world did it?</i>   |
| quae tandem causa est? | <i>what possible cause is it?</i> |
| b. ubi, quandō fēcit?  | <i>where, when did he do it?</i>  |

## SENTENCE QUESTIONS

**634.** Questions asking for information as to the *reality of the predicate*, i. e. for a “**yes**” or “**no**” as an answer to the *whole interrogative sentence*, are called predicate or sentence questions.

## Simple Sentence Questions

**635.** *Simple sentence questions* are introduced by

**nōnne**, implying the answer “**yes**”

**num**, implying the answer “**no**”

**-ne**, {appended to the  
emphatic word }, asking “**yes?**” or “**no?**”

**no particle**, expressing *indignation, surprise* etc.

**636.** The **answer** is expressed by

- |   |              |
|---|--------------|
| a. repeating the verb or the emphatic word, } | } <b>yes</b> |
| or by <i>ita, etiam, sãnē, certē, vērō</i>    |              |
| b. repeating the verb with a negative, }      | } <b>no</b>  |
| or by <i>nōn ita, nōn vērō, minimē...</i>     |              |

c. *immō*, (*correcting*): on the contrary

*immō*, (*strengthening*): yes, indeed

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| a. nōnne fēcistī?                        | <i>you did it, did you not?</i>          |
| fēcī, fēcī vērō; sãnē quidem             | <i>yes; certainly</i>                    |
| b. num fēcistī?                          | <i>you did not do it, did you?</i>       |
| nōn fēcī; minimē vērō                    | <i>no; not at all</i>                    |
| fēcistīne?                               | <i>did you do it? yes or no?</i>         |
| fēcī; (nōn fēcī)                         | <i>yes; (no)</i>                         |
| sōlusne fēcistī?                         | <i>did you do it alone?</i>              |
| sōlus; (nōn sōlus)                       | <i>yes, alone; (no, not alone)</i>       |
| c. fatētur? ( <i>with indignation</i> )  | <i>does he confess?</i>                  |
| immō pernegat                            | <i>on the contrary, he denies flatly</i> |
| causa bona est? ( <i>with surprise</i> ) | <i>is the cause good?</i>                |
| immō optima                              | <i>yes, indeed, very good</i>            |

## Compound Sentence Questions

**637. Compound** (*alternative, disjunctive*) questions are introduced by

a. - **ne**.....**an**..... ?

b. ....**an**..... ?

c. **utrum**.....**an**..... ?

a.	vērane	sunt	<b>an</b>	falsa ?	} <i>are these things true or false ?</i>
b.	vēra	sunt	<b>an</b>	falsa ?	
c.	<b>utrum</b>	vēra	sunt	<b>an</b>	

quis	vestrum	fēcit,	tū(ne)	<b>an</b>	} <i>who of you did it: you ?</i>
Gāius	<b>an</b>	Marcus	<b>an</b>	Aulus ?	

or *Gaius ? or Mark ? or Aulus ?*

**638. "Or not"** in a direct question is rendered by **an nōn**; (rarely by *necne*):

isne est quem quaerō **an nōn**?      *is he the one whom I seek or not?*

**639.** When the first member of a compound question is not expressed, but only implied, the second number introduced by

**an, or; can it be that . . . . ; perhaps**

is used a. to *prove*, b. to *illustrate* something preceding, (often with a tone of irony, surprise, indignation or other emotion:

a.	hōc fēcistī;.....	} <i>you did this;.....</i>
	an nōn vīdī?	
b.	quid ad mē venītis?	} <i>why do you come to me?.....</i>
	an speculandī causā?	

NOTE: Distinguish *an, or* (which of the two?)

from *aut, or* (either of the two):

iūstum	<i>an</i>	iniūstum est?	<i>is it just or unjust?</i>
iniūstum	<i>aut</i>	inīquum est	<i>it is unjust or (at least) unfair</i>

## DIRECT AND INDIRECT QUESTIONS

**640. Direct** questions are *independent* sentences (631-639); they take their *modes* according to n. 626 and 656, 657, 662.

**Indirect** questions are *dependent* substantive clauses (379); their mode is *the subjunctive* (641).

## INDIRECT QUESTIONS

**641.** *Indirect* questions (640) are originally *direct* (indicative or subjunctive) questions, but subordinated to

**verba interrogandī,  
sentiendī et dicendī,  
interest and rēfert.**

**Rule:** All indirect questions take the subjunctive according to the rules of sequence: 616-624; 619, Note 1; 606; 646.

## EXAMPLES

<i>Direct:</i>	<b>quid agis, ēgistī, agēs?</b>		
<i>Indirect:</i>	{ quaerō sciēbam	quid agās; ēgeris, actūrus sis quid agerēs, ēgissēs, actūrus essēs	{ 617-619
<i>Direct:</i>	<b>quid dem?</b>	<b>quid darem?</b> (662)	
<i>Indirect:</i>	quaerō nesciēbam	quid dem, quid darem,	quid darem 619 Note 1.

**642. INDIRECT WORD QUESTIONS**

are introduced by the *same* interrogative pronouns and adverbs as *direct* word questions (633):

sciō quid factum sit	<i>I know what has happened</i>
cognōvit quae gererentur	<i>he ascertained what was going on</i>
nesciō ubi sit	<i>I don't know where he is</i>
sciō quis quō modō fēcerit	<i>I know who did it, and how he did it</i>

**643. Distinguish**

*relative clauses*, which refer to an expressed or implied *antecedent* (379), from *indirect questions*, which depend on *certain verbs* (640):

effugere nēmō <b>id</b> potest	}	<i>no one can escape what is</i>
quod futūrum est;	}	<i>destined to come to pass;</i>
saepe autem ne ūtile quidem	}	<i>but often it is not even useful</i>
est <b>scīre</b> quid futūrum sit;	}	<i>to know what is coming to pass;</i>

**Note:** The *quod*-clause modifies *id*; it is a *relative*, (adjective) clause; the *quid*-clause depends on and is the object of *scīre*; it is an interrogative, (substantive) clause.

**644. Who-, which- and what- clauses**

are relative, when *intended* to be statements of fact (378); but interrogative, when *intended* to be answers to questions:

Thus, "I will tell you **what** I think" may be

a. a statement:

I will tell you that which I think:     *dīcam* (id) **quod** sentiō

b. an answer to the questions:

- |                                    |                                    |
|------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1. What do you think?              | } <i>dīcam</i> <b>quid</b> sentiam |
| 2. You may ask: What do you think? |                                    |

**645. INDIRECT SIMPLE SENTENCE QUESTIONS**

are introduced by

**num,** { 1) **whether**; 2) **whether not**

**nōnne,** { *used only after* } : *whether not*  
                   { *quaerere* }

<i>quaerit velis</i> <b>ne</b> <i>sibi respondere</i>	} <i>he asks whether you will (not) answer</i> } <i>him (cf. 666)</i>
<i>quaerit</i> <b>num</b> <i>velis sibi respondere</i>	

<i>quaesivit</i> <i>salvus</i> <b>ne</b> ( <i>or num</i> <i>salvus</i> ) <i>esset clipeus</i>	} <i>he asked whether his shield</i> } <i>was safe</i>

<i>quaerō nōn ne hōc vērū sit</i>	<i>I ask whether this is not true .</i>
-----------------------------------	---

**Wait and try****646. Indirect questions dependent on**

a. *expectāre*, wait

b. *experīrī*, *temptāre*, *cōnārī*, try

are introduced by **sī**, *if, whether*:

a. <i>expectō, sī quid dīcat</i>	} <i>I am waiting (to see) whether he is</i> } <i>going to say anything</i>
Also: <i>expectō quid dīcat</i> (619)	

( <i>expectō quid dictūrus sit</i> )	} <i>I wait (to find out) what he will</i> } <i>say</i>

<i>But expectō ut eat</i>	<i>I expect (i. e. desire) him to go</i>
---------------------------	--

b. <i>cōnantur sī perrumpere possint</i> (543)	} <i>they try whether they can break through</i>

**647.        haud sciō an, probably, likely**

(Negatived by nōn, nēmō, nihil, nūllus, numquam)

haud sciō an ita sit	}	<i>I dare say it is so</i>
nesciō an ita sit		<i>I don't know but it is so</i>
dubitō an ita sit		<i>I am inclined to think it is so</i>
incertum est an ita sit		
haud sciō an nēmō eī pār sit		<i>probably no one is his equal</i>

**nesciō quis, somebody**

**648.** Interrogative pronouns and adverbs after nesciō are often equivalent to the corresponding indefinites, and *without influence on the mode* of their clauses:

nesciō quis = aliquis	nesciō quō modō } <i>somehow</i>
nesciō quid = aliquid	nesciō quō pactō } <i>unfortunately</i>
mīrum quantum = plūrimū	nesciō quandō, <i>some time</i>
nesciō quis vēnit	<i>somebody came</i>

**649.        INDIRECT COMPOUND SENTENCE QUESTIONS**

are usually introduced by the same interrogative particles as the corresponding direct questions; "**or not**" however, is rendered by **necne**, (rarely by an nōn):

quaerō <b>utrum</b> vērum <b>an</b> falsum sit	}	<i>I ask whether it is true or false</i>
quaerō vērum <b>ne</b> <b>an</b> falsum sit		
quaerō vērum <b>an</b> falsum sit		
quaerō vērum <b>ne</b> sit <b>necne</b>		<i>I ask whether it is true or not</i>

**650.        Dubitāre, doubt, is followed,**

- a. when *affirmative*, by an indirect question, (*rarely num*);  
 b. when *negative*, by an indirect question or **quīn**:

a. dubitāsne quis fēcerit?	<i>do you doubt who did it?</i>
b. quis dubitat quid futūrum sit?	<i>who doubts what will happen?</i>
nēmō dubitat quīn vērum sit	<i>no one doubts that it is true</i>

**NOTE:** Dubitāre, *hesitate*, takes the *infinitive* (543).



## THE IMPERATIVE

(Supplemented by the subjunctive: 661)

**651.** The *imperative* is used to express *commands* and *entreaties*, *concessions* and *conditions*.

**652.** The **present imperative** demands *immediate* (and *continual*) fulfilment:

patent portae; proficiscere	} <i>the gates are open: depart:</i> } ( <i>Special command</i> )
iūstitiam cole et pietatem	} <i>cultivate justice and piety:</i> } ( <i>General command</i> )
lacesse; (iam) vidēbis furem	} <i>provoke him, and you'll (soon) see</i> } <i>him frantic (Condition)</i>

**653.** The **future imperative** demands *future* fulfilment.

It is used

- a. with expressions denoting a *definite future time*;
- b. to supply *lacking forms* of the present imperative, in *familiar language* and *urgent requests*;
- c. the *third person*, except *estō*, is only used in *legal language*:

a. crās petitō, dabitur	<i>ask to-morrow and it shall be given</i>
rem vōbīs prō pōnam; vōs eam	} <i>I will put the matter before you; you</i>
penditōte	} <i>shall consider it</i>
cum valetūdīnī cōnsulueris,	} <i>when you have attended to your health,</i>
tum cōsulitō nāvīgatiōnī	} <i>then look to your sailing</i>
b. sic habētō, habētōte	<i>be convinced</i>
scītō, scītōte	<i>you must know</i>
mementō, mementōte	<i>bear in mind</i>
hōc facītō	<i>this do</i>
caelestia semper spectātō	<i>always meditate on heavenly things</i>
c. estō; at... ( <i>Concession</i> )	<i>granted, be it so; yet...</i>
rēgiō imperiō duō suntō	<i>two shall have the royal power</i>

**NOTE:** The *negative nē* is only used with the future in laws and precepts.

**654.** The imperative is often followed by *quaesō*, *please*, *sīs*, (*sōdēs*), *if you please*; it is sometimes preceded by *quīn*, *pray*:

abī quaesō, abī sīs	<i>please go (Entreaty)</i>
quīn abi	<i>please, (pray,) do go</i>

## THE SUBJUNCTIVE

### THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDEPENDENT CLAUSES

**655.** The independent subjunctive is either *declarative* or *volitive*.

a. The declarative 1) subjunctive expresses or inquires about

**a view** { representing the predicate in a softened tone  
(as *certain, likely, possible* or *proper* (656; 657).

b. The volitive 1) subjunctive expresses or inquires about

**a wish** { representing the predicate in a polite manner  
or **will** { as *desired, proposed, demanded* or *granted* (658 sqq.)

### THE DECLARATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE

**656. CERTAINTY, LIKELIHOOD, POSSIBILITY (655)**

a. **Certainty** is expressed in a modest manner by the *present* and *perfect* subjunctive for the present (and future), *imperfect* and *pluperfect* subjunctive for the past.

The negative is *nōn*.

This subjunctive is used

1. *in subjunctive conclusions* (746; 749); also, when the protasis is omitted;
2. *in forms like* *velim, vellem, nōlim, mālim* (659):

- |                                |  |
|--------------------------------|--|
| 1. <i>sī hōc dīcam, errem</i>  | { <i>if I should say this,</i><br><i>I should be mistaken</i>  |
| <i>sī hōc dīcerēs, errārēs</i> | { <i>if you said this, you would</i><br><i>be mistaken</i>   |
| <i>ille hōc nōn dīxisset</i>   | { <i>he would not have said this;</i><br>{ (Supply an omitted protasis,<br><i>(e.g., if he had been called upon)</i> |
| 2. <i>velim eās</i>            | <i>I should like you to go</i>   |
| <i>velīsne mē discēdere?</i>   | <i>would it be your wish t. I leave?</i>   |

1) The name *declarative* has been preferred to the less comprehensive and misleading term *potential*; *volitive* has been considered sufficiently descriptive of the subjunctive of *wish* and *will*.

**b. Likelihood**, (representing an act as reasonably to be expected,) is expressed by the

*present* and *perfect* subjunctive for the present and future,  
and the *imperfect* subjunctive for the past.

The negative is *nōn*.

This subjunctive is mainly used in questions with *quid*, *cūr*..., *why?*

<i>cūr ille id faciat?</i>	<i>why should he (be likely to) do that?</i>
<i>quid hōc faceret?</i>	<i>why should he have done this?</i>
<i>nēmō sapiēns id tibi concēdat</i>	<i>no wise man would grant this</i>

**c. Possibility and capacity** is expressed by the

*present* and *perfect* subjunctive for the present and future,  
and the *imperfect* subjunctive for the past.

The negative is *nōn*.

This subjunctive is mostly restricted to the

1. first person singular (esp. of the *perfect*);
2. second person singular *indefinite*;
3. third person singular with *quis*, *aliquis*, *quispiam*, *quisquam*:

1. <i>haud facile dixerim</i>	<i>I should (could) not readily say</i>
<i>pāce tuā dixerim</i>	<i>by your leave I should say</i>
<i>paene (or prope) dicam</i>	<i>I should almost say</i>

( <i>But paene oblītus sum :</i> <i>with the perfect indicative</i> )	}	<i>I came very near forgetting</i>
--	---	------------------------------------

2. <i>dicās, dixerīs</i>	<i>you (indefinite) may say</i>
<i>fortūnam citius reperiās</i>	{ <i>fortune may be sooner found than kept</i>
<i>quam retineās</i>	

<i>dicērēs, putārēs, crēderēs</i>	{ <i>one (or you) might have said, thought, believed, perceived, seen</i>
<i>cernerēs, vidērēs</i>	

<i>maestī, crēderēs victōs, in</i>	{ <i>so sullen they returned to the camp, you might have thought them beaten</i>
<i>castra rediūrunt</i>	

<i>But forsitan quaerātis (351)</i>	{ <i>you (definite) may say,</i>
<i>or fortasse quaeritis</i>	
<i>fortasse quaerētis</i>	

3. hīc quaerat quispiam	here somebody may ask
dīcat quis, dīcat aliquis } dīxerit quispiam }	some one may say
fortasse dīxerit quis	one may perhaps say
quis neget or possit negāre? } quis negator potest negāre? }	who can (or could) deny?
quis negāret, quis negāvit?	who could have denied? (662)
vix quisquam crēderet	one could not have believed it

NOTE: The lacking forms of the potential subjunctive (656 c.) are supplied by other constructions:

vidē nē mea coniectūra vēra sit	my conjecture may be is true
vereor nē rēs sic sē habeat	I am afraid it is true
vidētur rēs sic sē habēre	so it seems to be
haud sciō an rēs sic sē habeat	so it probably is
num rēs ita sē habet?	shouldn't this be true?
forsitan with subjunctive pres. and perfect	} possibly
fortasse (not used in questions)	probably, perhaps

(For forte with nē, sī, nisi, see n. 695 and 751.)

### 657. Propriety and Obligation (cf. 627; 628)

is sometimes expressed by the

*present subjunctive* for the present,  
*imperfect subjunctive* for the past.

The negative is nōn, (rarely nē):

quid tandem vereāmini?	what, pray, should you fear?
quid tandem vererēmini? (662)	what, pray, should you have feared?
ā lēgibus nōn recēdāmus	we should not swerve from the laws
But ā lēgibus nē recēdāmus (660)	let us not swerve from the laws

### The Volitive Subjunctive (655)

658. The volitive subjunctive represents the predicate as

*desired, proposed, demanded, deliberated on or granted;*  
it includes the  
*optative, hortative, jussive, deliberative and concessive subjunctives.*

## OPTATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE

(Coniunctivus optātivus)

**659.** The *present* (and *perfect*) express a **wish** without intimating whether it is attainable or not; it *may* be introduced by *utinam* (nē), *velim*, *nōlim*, *mālim* (656):

( <i>velim</i> or <i>utinam</i> ) a beat	<i>may he go!</i>
dī faxint (= fēcerint)	<i>may the gods grant!</i>
peream, sī mentior	<i>may I perish, if I lie!</i>
nē vīvam, sī sciō	<i>may I not live, if I know!</i>
ita vīvam, ut nesciō	<i>as true as I live, I don't know</i>

The *imperfect* and *pluperfect* express **regret** over a hopeless wish; it is *regularly introduced by utinam* (nē), or *vellem*, *nōllem*, *māllem*:

<b>utinam</b> abīret	{ <i>O that he would leave!</i>
vellem abīret	
utinam abīset	{ <i>would he had left!</i>
vellem abīset	
utinam ego tertius vōbīs amīcus adscriberer!	{ <i>O that I could be enrolled with you as the third friend!</i>
(Dionysius to Damon and Phintias)	

## HORTATORY SUBJUNCTIVE

(Coniunctivus hortātivus)

**660.** The hortatory subjunctive is used in *proposals* and *exhortations*; it is confined to the *first* person (singular and) plural of the *present*.

The negative *nē* is usually continued by *nēve*:

eam, sī placet	{ <i>I will go, if you please; i. e., let me go</i>
age, eāmus	
nē difficilia optēmus	{ <i>let us not desire what is (too) difficult</i>
mortem nē timeāmus nēve fugiāmus	{ <i>let us not fear death nor even try to evade it</i>



## JUSSIVE AND PROHIBITIVE SUBJUNCTIVE

(Coniunctivus iussivus et prohibitivus)

**661.** Commands and prohibitions are expressed as follows:

Commands		Prohibitions
<i>addressed to</i>		<i>are expressed by</i>
a. individual second persons } }	the <b>imperative</b> (subjunctive of impersonal verbs)	<b>nōlī</b> with pres. infin. or <b>nē</b> with perf. subj.
b. a general second person; } }	<b>present subjunctive</b> {	<b>nē</b> with the present subjunctive
c. third persons }		
a. <b>ī; īte</b> (651 sqq.)	<i>go</i>	
pudeat tē, pudeat vōs(271)	<i>be ashamed</i>	
<b>nōlī ire; nōlite ire</b>	<i>do not go</i> ( <i>Polite form</i> )	
<b>nē ierīs; nē ierītis</b>	<i>do not go</i> ( <i>Emphatic form</i> )	
<b>nē trānsierīs Hībērum</b>	<i>do not cross the Ebro</i>	
<b>nē tē paeniteat cōnsiliī</b>	<i>let your intention not rue you</i>	
b. istō bonō ūtāre (225), dum adsit; cum absit, nē requirās	{ <i>enjoy this blessing, while it is here;</i> <i>when it is gone, don't pine for it</i>	
c. <b>eat; eant</b>	<i>let him go; they shall go</i>	
<b>nē eat; nē eant</b>	<i>he, (they) shall not go</i>	

**NOTE 1.** **Nōlī** is continued by **neque**, **nē** by **nēve** or **aut**:

nōlī fugere neque timēre	{	<i>do not flee, nor even fear</i>
nē fūgerīs nēve (aut) timuerīs		
dē mē nihil timuerīs		<i>fear not for me</i>

**NOTE 2.** Remember also the following expressions:

cūrā ut valeās	<i>take good care of yourself</i>
ca v ē fēstīnēs	<i>don't be in a hurry</i>
nūntius ībis	<i>you will go as a messenger</i>
fac (ut) eās; fac nē eās	<i>do go; do not go, don't</i>
quid agātis fac sciam	<i>let me know what you are doing</i>

**662. DELIBERATION, SURPRISE AND INDIGNATION**

are expressed by the

*present subjunctive* for the present,

*imperfect subjunctive* for the past.

The negative is *nōn*. See 619, Note.

quō mē **vertam?**

*whither shall I turn?*

quid **agerem**, iūdicēs?

*what was I to do, judges?*

quid faceret aliud?

*what else should he have done?*

hunc ego *nōn* admīrer?

*shall I not admire this man?*

huic cēdāmus?

*are we to yield to this man?*

NOTE: Questions and exclamations of surprise and indignation may be introduced by *ut* (564):

tū (*ut*) unquam tē corrīgās?

*how should you ever reform?*

**CONCESSIVE SUBJUNCTIVE**

(Coniūctīvus concessīvus)

**663. Concession for the sake of argument is expressed by the**

*present subjunctive* for the present,

*perfect subjunctive* for the past.

The negative is *nē*:

*nē* sit sānē summum malum dolor;  
malum certē est

*grant that pain is not the greatest  
evil; an evil it certainly is*

fēcerit; estō

*he may have done it; be it so*

NOTE: These concessive clauses are dependent in thought, not in form.

(Compare 377, Note.)

**664. nēdum, (rarely nē), still less**

takes the tenses of the subjunctive; *the verb however is often omitted* after this particle:

eum *nōn* aspicit, *nēdum*  
amet

*he does not look at him, still  
less love him*

id iuvenem *nōn* movet,  
*nēdum* senem

*that makes no impression on a  
youth, still less on an old man*

THE INDICATIVE AND SUBJUNCTIVE  
IN DEPENDENT CLAUSES

**665.** The **dependent indicative** is mainly used to represent the predicate, *in the opinion of the speaker*, as a **fact**: 332; 672; 675; 715 sqq.; 722 sqq.; 732; see also 743 and 744.

The **dependent subjunctive** is mainly used to represent the predicate as

- a. a mere *view*, *wish* or *will* of any person (in all kinds of dependent clauses);
- b. a *fact* in the opinion of *another person than the speaker*: 666, c.
- c. a *complement* of the thought conveyed by a dependent subjunctive or infinitive: 670.

**Subjunctive expressing Another's Thought**

**666.** Dependent clauses *intended by the speaker* to express the *thought of another*, (usually of the main subject,) take

1. the **subjunctive**,
2. the **reflexive**, when referring to that person.

**NOTE:** Such clauses are

- a. all *indirect questions* and *quīn*-clauses after a *negatived* dubitāre;
  - b. all clauses expressing *purpose* (including temporal and relative clauses with final meaning).
  - c. all other dependent (except consecutive) clauses, whenever they are intended by the speaker to express a fact or anything else as *the thought of another*.
  - d. all dependent clauses of formal *indirect discourse*: 738.
- a. nescit quid suī cīvēs dē { he does not know what his  
sē cōgitent { fellow-citizens think about him  
nōn dubitat quīn sē { he does not doubt that they  
ament { love him

b. petunt ut sē cōservet (Purpose) *they entreat him to spare them*

c. But ita petivērunt ut eōs } *they entreat him in such a manner*  
 conservāret (Result) } *that he spared them*

Paetus librōs quōs frāter } *Paetus gave me those books*  
 suus reliquisset mihi } *which, (he said,) his brother had*  
 dōnāvit } *left; or: which "his brother had left"*

But P. librōs, quōs frāter } *P. gave me those books which*  
 ēius reliquerat, mihi dōnāvit } *(I say) his brother had left*

gaudet māter, quod } *your mother is glad, because*  
 redieris } *(she said) you have returned*

ā Caesare invitor sibi ut sim } *I am invited by Caesar (i. e. Caesar*  
 lēgātus, (sibi refers to the logical } *invites me) to be his lieutenant*  
 subject)

667. Nōn quod, nōn quia, nōn quō, introducing a reason rejected by the writer or speaker, are followed by the subjunctive:

id faciō, nōn quod putem... *I do this, not because I think...*

id fēcī, nōn quō putārem... *I did this, not because I thought*

NOTE: Nōn quō nōn = nōn quān.

668. Quod or quia introducing a thought felt or expressed by the speaker on another occasion, may take the subjunctive:

laēta vīsa sum, quia soror } *I seemed (in my dream) glad, because*  
 (vēnerat or) vēnisset } *my sister had come*

669. Verbs of **saying** and **thinking** are (by a confusion of ideas) often put in the subjunctive, as if they, not the accusative with the infinitive following expressed the thought of another (cf. 758):

gaudet quod tē vēnisse diceret } *he is glad because (he said) you had*  
 (= gaudet quod vēneris: 666, c) } *arrived*

... sive quod Rōmānōs discēdere } *either because (in their opinion)*  
 existimarent, sive eō quod (eōs) } *the Romans were retreating or*  
 rē frumentariā interclūdī posse } *because they felt sure they could be*  
 cōnfiderent, (Caesar B. G. 1. 23) } *cut off from supplies*

### Subjunctive by Attraction

**670.** Clauses *conceived as completing* the thought conveyed by a dependent subjunctive or infinitive to which they are attached, are put in the subjunctive:

mōs est Athēnīs, ut laudentur } *it is custom at Athens to eulogize pub-*  
in cōtiōne iī (or laudārī eōs), } *licly those who have fallen in battle:*  
quī **sint** in proeliis interiectī } *(The ut- and quī-clauses form one thought)*

But Athēnīs laudantur..., quī sunt... } *(The indicative is used, because quī...*  
and...quod ibi laudantur., quī sunt.. } *is attached to a main or dep. indic.*

vereor nē, dum minuire velim } *I am afraid, I'll increase the labor while*  
labōrem, augeam } *trying to diminish it*

*Note:* Clauses dependent on conditional clauses contrary to fact, take the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive (623).

**671.** If the clause is a mere *circumlocution*, (as iī quī prae-sunt for magistrātūs or ducēs, iī quī post nōs futūrī sunt for posterī, ea quae gesserat for rēs eius gestae,) it is *usually* put in the *indicative*:

ōrātor efficit ut iī, quī } *the orator brings it about that*  
audiunt (or audiant), ita ad- } *his hearers are affected as he*  
ficiantur, ut ōrātor velit } *wishes*

**672.** If the clause contains an independent, *explanatory* remark, or states a *fact*, it is put in the *indicative*:

verētur nē iī, quod multum } *he fears that they, owing to*  
possunt, id efficient } *their great power, will bring it about*



## RELATIVE CLAUSES

(About the agreement of relatives see 396-398)

**673.** Relative clauses are introduced by

- a. *relative pronouns*; as, quī, quālis, quantus, quot,...
- b. *relative adverbs*; as, ubi, cūr, cum (when), ut (as),...

The negative is **nōn**.

*Note:* The **introductory** relative is *never omitted*, as it often is in English; (see however 687):

vir quem vīdī	{ the man whom I saw the man I saw
pecūnia quā egēmus	the money (which) we need

The **antecedent** of the relative is sometimes

- a. entirely omitted (147);
- b. omitted in the leading, but incorporated in the dependent clause (684);
- c. repeated:

a. quī legiōnis aquilam ferēbat	{ (the soldier) who bore the eagle of the legion; the eagle-bearer
sunt quī putent	there are (some men) who think
b. quam quisque nōrit	{ let everyone practice the art which he knows
artem, in hāc sē exerceat	
c. diēs īnstat quō diē...	the day is at hand on which...
locī nātūra, quem locum	{ the nature of the ground which our men had chosen
nostrī dēlēgerant	
duo itinera quibus itineribus	there were two routes by which...

**674.** The **force** of the Latin relative clauses may be *pronominal*, determining what individual person, thing, time, place... is meant (675),  
*adverbial*, denoting purpose or condition (675-676),  
*adjectival*, describing a characteristic of the antecedent, often with an accessory idea of cause, concession, restriction or result (677).

## RELATIVE INDICATIVE CLAUSES

**675.** Relatives clauses used to state or assume *facts* are put in the **indicative** (625, 665):

est genus quoddam hominum	} <i>there is a class of men which is</i>
quod Hilōtae vocātur	} <i>called the Helots</i>
quisquis est, is est sapiēns (629)	<i>whoever he is; he is wise</i>
vīcēnsimus annus est, cum mē ūnum petunt	} <i>it is the twentieth year that they</i> } <i>have been attacking me alone</i>
ita faciam, ut tū volēs	<i>I will do as you wish</i>
quō (= sī quō) volēs, sequar	<i>whithersoever you wish, I'll follow</i>

(The first four relative clauses are pronominal (674), the last is adverbial.)

**NOTE:** Quī - clauses sometimes admit either mode; the *indicative*, in order to represent the statement as a *fact*, the *subjunctive*, in order to denote it as a characteristic, cause or concession (677 sqq. ) :

habeō senectūtī grātiam, quae	} <i>I feel grateful to old age, which has</i> <i>increased my love of conversation;</i> <i>...because or since it has increased..</i>
mihi sermōnis aviditatem auxit	
But... quae aviditatem auxerit	

## RELATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE CLAUSES

(See 666; 670-672)

**676.** Relative clauses expressing *purpose* are put in the *subjunctive*. They are *adverbial* in sense.

<b>Purpose:</b> quī = ut ego, tū, is...;	ubi = ut ibi
cūius = ut ēius	unde = ut inde
cui = ut eī	quō = ut eō
quem = ut eum	quā = ut eā

lēgātōs mīsērunt, *they sent ambassadors*

quī (-ut īi) pācem peterent *to sue for peace*

But quī (-et īi) pācem petiērunt *who sued for peace* (374)

habēbat quō (= ut eō) cōfugeret *he had a retreat whither he might flee*

**NOTE:** Also a condition may be expressed by a relative clause:

**Condition:** quī = sī quis or sī quī; cum = sīquandō; ubi = sīcubi

quī hōc dicat, erret *{ a person who should say this, would*  
*{ be mistaken*

## CLAUSES OF CHARACTERISTIC (712)

**677.** Relative clauses used to *describe the character* of the antecedent (clauses of characteristic), are put in the subjunctive. They are adjectival in sense (379). These clauses are found

a. after **substantives**:

puer quī pārēre nesciat	} a boy who does not know how to obey
fuit tempus cum Germānōs } Gallī virtūte superārent }	there was a time when the Gauls surpassed the Germans in courage

b. after the **adjectives** dignus, indignus,  
aptus, idōneus,  
ūnus and sōlus:

dignus es quī imperēs	you are worthy to rule
indignus erāscui fidēs } haberētur }	you did not deserve to be trusted
idōneus est quem prae- } ficiam }	he is a man whom I can place in command

c. after **comparatives** followed by *quam* (705):

māior est quam quī in- } vidiam effugere possit }	he is too great to escape envy
nōn longius aberant quam } quō tēlum adigī possit }	they were not farther away than a javelin could be thrown

d. after **determinatives**; as, **is**, eius modī, tālis, tam,  
adeō... (702):

is es quī terreāris	you are the man to be scared
But is es quī territus es	you are the one who was scared
ea est Rōmānā gēns } quae victa quīescere nesciat }	the Roman race is one that knows not how to rest when conquered

e. after *general* expressions of existence; as, **sunt**, inveniuntur:

sunt quī putent	there are some who think
nōn dēerunt quī meminerint	there'll be some who remember
quis est quī nesciat?	who in the world does not k.?
nēmō est quī hōc facere audeat	no one ventures to do this
quotus quisque est quī sciat	how few there are who know
nihil est quod minus deceat	nothing is less becoming

fuit cum arbiträrer	<i>there was a time when I thought</i>
erit cum dēsiderēs	<i>{ the time will come when you will long for...</i>

*NOTE:* After general *affirmatives* like *sunt qui* the indicative is sometimes used; similarly after *partially defined* antecedents like *quidam, nōn nulli, multi sunt qui*, if the writer wishes to state a *fact* (675).

f. after **est quod** or **habeo quod**, *there is reason:*

est quod (or cūr, quā rē) timeās	<i>you have reason to fear</i>
nōn habent quod gaudeant	<i>they have no reason to rejoice</i>
quid est quod suscēnseās?	<i>what is the reason of your wrath?</i>
nihil est (habēs) quod eās	<i>you have no reason to go</i>
But nōn habeo quid dicam	<i>I do not know what to say</i>

#### CLAUSES OF CHARACTERISTIC

expressing Cause, Concession, Restriction or Result

**678. Cause:** introduced by **quī=cum ego, tū, is...**

or by **quippe** (ut, utpote, praesertim) **quī (as, in fact):**

mē miserum, quī haec nōn vīderim	<i>{ alas for me, that I have not seen this</i>
ō fortunātē adulēscēns, quī tuae virtūtis Homērum praecōnem invēneris	<i>{ O happy youth! to have found a Homer as the herald of thy valor!</i>

**679. Concession or opposition:** **quī=cum ego, tū, is...**

egomet quī leviter Graecās litterās attigissem, tamen Athēnis com- plūrēs diēs sum commorātus	<i>{ although I had studied Greek but superficially, I stayed at Athens several days</i>
---	--

**680. Restriction ;** introduced by **quī** or **quī quidem:**

quod sciam (or quantum sciō)	<i>as far as I know</i>
quod meminērim (quantum meminī)	<i>as far as I remember</i>
ōrātiōnes eius quās quidem ego lēgerim	<i>{ his speeches, as far as I have read them</i>

**681. Result:** **quī = ut ego, tū, is.....** (cf. 712):

secūtae sunt tempestātēs quae nostrōs in castris continērent	<i>{ storms arose that kept our men in camp</i>
---	---





## INCORPORATION

of **antecedents** and **quisque**

**684.** *a. Antecedent* appositives and superlatives,

*b. antecedents* of relative clauses standing  
first in a complex sentence (682),

*c. quisque* (164),

are *incorporated* in the relative clause, (transposed from the main into the dependent clause), the antecedents in agreement with the relative, *quisque* as subject or object:

- a. Cicerō, cui virō nihil dēfuit* } *Cicero, a man that lacked nothing*  
*firmi et cōstantēs amīcī, cūius generis est magna pēnūria* } *steadfast and enduring friends, a kind of which there is great dearth*  
*Catō, quī ūnus restitit* } *Cato, the only one who resisted*  
*dē servīs suīs, quam habuit fidēlissimum, ad Xerxem mīsit* } *Themistocles sent the most trusty slave he had to Xerxes*
- b. quā nocte nātus Alexander est, eādē Diānae templum dēflagrāvit* } *in the same night in which Alexander was born, the temple of Diana burnt d.*  
*quam quisque nōrit artem, in hāc sē exerceat* (603) } *let every one practice the art which he knows*
- c. quod quisque potest, id eī licet?* } *is a person allowed to do what is in his power?*  
*quod cuique obtigit, teneat* } *let every one keep what he has got*

## The Relative in Inserted Clauses

**685.** In inserted clauses the *relative* with an *abstract* substantive may be used to characterize a person:

- quae tua prūdētia est,* } *nothing will elude you,*  
*or quā es prūdētiā,* } *such is your judgment;*  
*or prō tuā prūdētiā,* } *or,*  
*or ut es prūdēns,* } *with your characteristic judgment,*  
*nihil tē fugiet* } *nothing will elude you*



### COORDINATION AND SUBORDINATION OF RELATIVE CLAUSES

**687.** In coordinate relative clauses the second relative (nominative or accusative) is often *omitted*, or is, *hic*, *ille* *substituted* for it:

B. cum peditibus, quōs V. addūxerat, (qui que in priore pugnā nōn ad- fuerant, or) neque in priore pugnā adfuerant...	} Bocchus with the infantry whom Volux had brought up, and who had not been engaged in the first skirmish.....
Viriāthus. quam Laelius frēgit, (cūiusque ferōcitatē repressit, or) ferōcitatēque ēius repressit,...	} Viriathus, whom Laelius crushed and whose terocity he curbed,.....

**688.** Relative clauses are subordinated without *et* or *que*:

Belgae proximī sunt Germānīs quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, (= Germānīs trānsrhēnānīs,) quibus cum con- tinenter bellum gerunt	} the Belgians are nearest to the Germans that live beyond the Rhine, with whom they are continually engaged in war
---	---

### RELATIVES AS CONNECTIVES

**689.** Relatives are frequently used as connectives instead of determinatives with conjunctions (374-375):

quī = { *et* is, *nam* is or is *enim*;  
          { *is igitur*, *is autem*, *is tamen*

quārē, quam ob rem	therefore (330)
quā rē audītā or nūtiātā	at this news
quae dum geruntur	while this was going on (602)
quae cum ita sint	(now) since this is so
quō factō	hereupon, this done
quō factum est ut...	the result was that...
quō cum vēnisset	and when he had come there
quibus rēbus cognitīs	since these things became known
perūtīlēs Xenophontis librī sunt;	Xenophon's books are very useful;
quōs legite quaesō, studiōsē	read them, therefore, I ask you, dili- gently

**quod sī, but if** (cf. 751; 752)

**690.** Quod before *sī*, *nisi*, *etsī*, *cum*, *quia*, *quoniam*, *utinam*, *nē*, is translated by *but*, *now*, *so*, *whereas*, *as to that a. s. f.*:

tyrannī coluntur simulatiōne ad tempus; quod sī forte ceciderint, tum intellegitur, quam fuerint inopēs amīcōrum	}	tyrants are honored by adulation for a time; but if they happen to fall, it will be evident how lacking in friends they have been
---	---	--

**691. Relative Clauses replacing Substantives**

Relative clauses often take the place of *substantives*, *participles* (568) or *prepositional phrases*:

quī legit, quī mea legunt	<i>a reader, my readers</i>
is ā quō accūsātus sum	<i>my accuser</i>
quī ante mē dīxit	<i>the speaker before me</i>
quī hominem occīdit	<i>the murderer</i>
quī Rōmulō successit	<i>the successor of Romulus</i>
id quod cōgitō, sentiō	<i>my thought, my opinion</i>
quae (animō) cōgitāmus	<i>our thoughts</i>
lēgēs quae nunc sunt	<i>the existing laws</i>
pōns quī est ad Genāvam	<i>the bridge at Geneva (401)</i>

**692.** However, doers of *habitual* or *notable* acts are preferably denoted by substantives in **-tor** and **-sor** (336):

cantor, ōrātor	<i>singer, speaker (by profession)</i>
omnium gentium victor	<i>conqueror of all nations</i>
Caesaris interfectōrēs	<i>the murderers of Caesar</i>

## CONJUNCTIONAL CLAUSES

(Study 375; 376-379)

### I. Clauses of Purpose

(About the Reflexive in Final Clauses see 666)

693. There are two kinds of final clauses :

Clauses expressing purpose *indicated* by the *main verb* are called

**Substantive** or **Complementary** Final Clauses (379);

(See 702, note 1, and 707, 1.)

Clauses expressing purpose *indicated* only by the *context* and the *particle* (ut...) are called **Adverbial** or **Pure** Final Clauses.

694. **Position.** Substantive clauses of purpose commonly follow their main clause; adverbial clauses of purpose follow, when emphasized; but precede, when the main clauses are to be emphasized.

### 695. ADVERBIAL CLAUSES OF PURPOSE

**Tenses:** Present and Imperfect Subjunctive according to 619.

#### Introductory Particles:

**ut** (utī), **that; to;** in order to

**quō** (= ut eō), { with comparatives: that the...  
                                  { without comparatives: that thereby

**nē** (ut nē), **that not:** lest; not to (156)

**ut nōn**, (used to negative a word), that not

Demonstrative expressions often contained in the main clause:

ideirēō (630),	therefore	eā dē rē,	for that reason
eō, ideō,	to that end	eā condiōne	with that condition
eō cōnsiliō	with that design	propterea,	on that account

#### Remember especially:

**nē quis**, that nobody

**nē quid**, that nothing

**nē ūllus...**, that no...

**nē qua rēs**, that no thing

**nē quod verbum**, that no word

**nē umquā**, {  
**nē quāndō** } that never

**nē ūsquā**, {  
**nēcubi** } that nowhere

**nē forte**, lest perhaps



## EXAMPLES:

ideō ēsse oportet, **ut** vīvās, } *you must eat in order to live, not*  
 nōn vīvere, ut edās } *live in order to eat*

Dionysius, **nē** tōnsōrī collum } *Dionysius taught his daughters*  
 committeret, tondēre filiās } *to shave in order that he might*  
 suās docuit } *not entrust his neck to a barber*

medicō aliquid dandum est, } *something should be given to the*  
**quō** sit studiōsior } *physician that he be m. attentive*

## Continuation of Negatives

**696.** *After ut, a negative is added by nēve, (neu) or neque;*  
*after nē, a negative is added by nēve, aut or atque:*

fugiō nē capiar **nēve** interficiar } *I flee that I may not be captured or*  
 fugiō nē capiar aut (or atque) i'iar } *killed*  
 fugiō ut server **nēve** interficiar } *I flee that I may be saved and not be*  
 fugiō ut server neque interficiar } *killed*

## SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE (693)

(Tenses: Present and Imperfect according to 619)

**697.** *Substantive clauses of purpose follow several classes of verbs:*

**Permit and demand,**  
**urge and endeavor**

are followed by

**ut, to be rendered by to or that**

**nē (continued by nēve), not to**

tibi concēdō **ut** abeās (548) *I permit you to depart*  
 tibi permīsī ut abīrēs *I permitted you to go away*  
 optō ut maneās *I wish you would stay*  
 tē ōrō, rogō, obsecrō ut *I ask, entreat you to...*  
 tē ōrō atque obsecrō ut *I earnestly beg you to...*  
 tē precor, obtestor ut *I beseech, implore you to...*  
 ā tē petō, postulō, flāgitō ut *I ask you, demand from you*  
 tibi imperō, praēcipiō ut *I command you to...*

tibi suādeō <b>nē</b> abeās	<i>I advise you not to go</i>
tibi auctor sum <b>nē</b> eās	<i>I advise you not to go</i>
tē addūxī <b>nē</b> abīrēs	<i>I induced you not to go</i>
tē hortātus sum <b>nē</b> manērēs	<i>I admonished you not to stay</i>

cūr ā ut valeās	<i>take care of yourself</i>
videant cōsulēs <b>nē</b> quid rēs pūblica dētrimentī capiat	<i>let the consuls give heed that the republic may suffer no harm</i>
prōvidē ut fiat	<i>see to it that it be done</i>
nītere ut vincās	<i>strive to conquer</i>
contendō et labōrō ut...	<i>I use every effort to...</i>
id agit ut praestet	<i>his aim is to excel</i>
(maximē) operam dō ut	<i>I take (great) pains to</i>
faciō libenter ut ad tē scribam	<i>it is a pleasure for me to write you</i>

NOTE: Faciō ut in the last example is a mere periphrasis.

NOTE: Imperāre may also take an accusative with a passive or deponent infinitive:

pontem fieri imperāvit	<i>he had a bridge built</i>
------------------------	------------------------------

The impersonal concēditur (=licet) takes the infinitive; the personal concēdō and permittō with a dative may take the infinitive.

NOTE: Regarding volō, nōlō, cupiō see 550 and 543;

iubeō, vetō, sinō, patior see 549;  
cōgō (551); poscō (425).

**698.** Statuō, cōstituō, dēcernō, *I resolve, am of opinion,*

take *a.* the infinitive, when the verbs have the same subject;

*b.* ut with the subjunctive, when the subjects differ:

statuō proficīscī (543)	<i>I resolve to set out (myself)</i>
statuō ut proficīscāris	<i>I resolve that you should set out</i>
cēnset ut urbs dēleātur {	<i>he is of opinion (proposes)</i>
cēnset urbem dēlendam }	<i>that the city should be destroyed</i>

NOTE: Mihi placet, I resolve, takes the infinitive or ut:

mihi placet	{	<i>I resolve to do that;</i>
id facere or id fieri		<i>I decide that this be done</i>
ut id faciam or ut id fīat		

699. Refuse to, hinder, deter from

take **nē** or **quōminus** (=ut eō minus)

sententiam nē dicam recūsō *I refuse to pronounce an opinion*  
plūra nē dicam impediōr *I am hindered from saying more*  
quid obstat quōminus eās? *what is in the way of your going?*  
nōn dēterret mē mors nē eam *death deters me not from going*  
per mē stetit quōminus... *it was my fault that... not...*

*Note:* When negatived, the above verbs may also take quīn;  
(nōn) recūsāre may take the infinitive;  
prohibēre, prevent, usually takes the a. c. i. (551).

700.                    interdīdere, cavēre

eī interdīxī u t pārēret	<i>I enjoined him to obey</i>
eī interdīxī <b>nē</b> abīret }	<i>I forbade him to go</i>
eum abīre vetuī }	
cavē u t librum eī trādās	<i>be sure to hand him the book</i>
cavē <b>nē</b> peccēs	<i>beware of doing a wrong</i>
cavē eās ( <i>Prohibitive</i> , 661)	<i>don't go</i>

## SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF FEAR

- a. The *Present* expresses a **p r e s e n t** fear about the *present* or *future*;  
b. the *Imperfect* expresses a **p a s t** fear about the *present* or *future*;  
c. the *Perfect* expresses a **p r e s e n t** fear about the *past*;  
d. the *Pluperfect* expresses a **p a s t** fear about the *past*.

nē, that; lest

nē nōn or ut, that not

a. vereor <b>nē</b> quis veniat	{	<i>I fear that somebody is coming</i>
		<i>I fear that somebody will come</i>
		<i>I fear lest somebody come</i>
periculum est <b>nē nōn</b> fīat	{	<i>there is a danger that it may not</i>
		<i>come to pass</i>
b. timuī <b>nē</b> nēmō venīret		<i>I fear'd that nobody would c.&amp;c.</i>
c. metuō <b>nē</b> quid acciderit		<i>If that something has happened</i>
d. in metū eram <b>nē</b> nihil prōfuisset	{	<i>I was afraid that nothing had</i>
		<i>availed</i>

*NOTE: Verērī with the infinitive expresses a dread of doing something:*

vereor eum adire	<i>I feel reluctant to approach him</i>
nōn vereor = nōn dubitō ire	<i>I do not hesitate to go</i>

## II. Clauses of Result

(Sequence: 619; 604.)

- 702.** There are two kinds of consecutive clauses:  
 clauses expressing result *indicated* by the *leading* verb, are called  
**Substantive or Complementary** Consecutive Clauses;  
 clauses expressing result *indicated* only by the *particle* and the context  
 are called

**Adverbial or Pure** Consecutive Clauses (379).

**NOTE 1:** When the leading verb or the particle may refer to either a final or a consecutive clause, the thought conveyed by the whole sentence will determine the nature of the clause.

**NOTE 2:** Those clauses of result which *explain* the meaning of a preceding substantive, demonstrative, adjective or adverb, *share* in the nature of clauses of *characteristic*.

- 703. Position.** Both adverbial and substantive clauses of result follow their main clauses.

- 704.** The **negatives** used in clauses of result differ from those used in clauses of purpose:

<b>ut nēmō,</b> <i>that nobody</i>	<b>ut numquam,</b> <i>that never</i>
<b>ut nihil,</b> <i>that nothing</i>	<b>ut nusquam,</b> <i>that nowhere</i>
<b>ut nūllus,</b> <i>that no</i>	<b>ut neque-neque,</b> <i>that neither-nor</i>

### ADVERBIAL CLAUSES OF RESULT

- 705.** Adverbial consecutive clauses may follow any main clause with a **comparative** or **demonstrative** (expressed or implied):

<b>māior quam ut</b>	<b>too great to...</b>
<b>ut</b>	<b>that, so that, as to</b>
<b>ut nōn</b>	<b>that not, so that not, as not to...</b>

Before *substantives*:

<b>tālis;</b> <i>is, hic</i>	<i>such a</i>
<b>tantus</b>	<i>so great a</i>

Before *adjectives or adverbs*:

<b>tam, ita, adeō</b>	<i>so</i>
-----------------------	-----------

Before *verbs*:

<b>adeō, usque eō, tantopere</b>	<i>so, to such a degree</i>
<b>ita, sic</b>	<i>so</i>
<b>adeō nōn, usque eō nōn, ita nōn</b>	<i>so little, far from...</i>

1. urbs est mūnītor **quam ut** } *the city is too strongly fortified to be*  
 prīnō impetū capi posset (677, c., } *taken at the first attack*

*Note: Ut is sometimes omitted, especially after prius quam and potius quam:*

impōnēbat amplius q u a m } *he imposed more than they were*  
 ferre possent } *able to bear*

moriar potius quam peccem; } *I will rather die than sin; (he says he*  
 (dicit sē mori velle potius quam } *will die rather than sin)*  
 peccāre or peccet)

2. mōns altissimus impendēbat, ut } *a very high mountain hung over, so*  
 perpauci prohibēre possent } *that a very few could block the way*

3. **tanta**vis probitātis est, **ut** } *so great is the power of probity*  
 eam in hoste diligāmus } *that we love it even in an enemy*

ea, haec, tālis vis eius est, ut... *such is its power that...*

nēmō **adeō** ferus est, **ut** } *no one is so fierce that he cannot*  
**nōn** mītēscere possit } *become gentle*

ita petivit ut ei ignōscerem (666) *he so asked that I forgave him*

**NOTE:** **ita ut**, on condition that, is restrictive:

ita tibi abire concēdō, ut crās { } *I permit you to go on condition that*  
 redīre tē velle prōmittās { } *you promise to return to-morrow*

#### **tantum abest ut..., ut**

**706.** The impersonal **tantum abest ut** commonly takes two **ut**-clauses; one is *substantive*, the subject of **abest**; the other is *adverbial*, modifying **tantum**:

tantum abest ut lauder, ut vituperer } *far from being praised, I am*  
 adeō nōn laudor, ut vituperer } *blamed; so far am I from... that*  
 nōn modo nōn laudor, sed vituperor } *...; so little do people p. me that...*

tantum abest ut nostra mirēmur, } *far from admiring myself, I am so*  
 ut usque eō difficilēs ac morōsi } *hard to please and so particular that*  
 sīmus, ut nōbīs nōn satis faciat ipse } *Demosthenes himself does not satisfy*  
 Dēmōsthēnēs } *me*



## SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF RESULT

(Sequence: 619; 604)

**707.** *Substantive* Clauses of Result may follow

1. verbs of *effecting and attaining* as **objects**
2. impersonal verbs of *happening* as **subjects**
3. *substantives and demonstratives* as **appositives**:

1. perfēcit *he brought it about*  
 ut nēm ō venīret (*Result*) *that no one came*  
 nē quis venīret (*Purpose*) *that no one might come*

nōn committam ut hōc faciam	<i>I will not allow myself to do this</i>
nōn committam ut mē accūsāre	} <i>I will not give you any cause to</i>
dē epistulārū neglegentiā possis	
sōl efficit ut omnia flōreant	<i>(act so that you can) accuse me</i>
ut cōsul fieret assecūtus est	<i>the sun causes all things to flourish</i>
	<i>he succeeded in being made consul</i>

**2. fit ut, accidit ut &c(274)** *it happens that...*

fit ut alius aliud sentiat	<i>opinions sometimes differ</i>
quō factum est ut	<i>the result was that...</i>
futūrum est ut	<i>the result will be that...</i>
fieri potest ut errāverim (604)	<i>I may have been mistaken</i>
fieri nōn potest ut fallar	<i>I cannot be mistaken</i>
eī contigit ut nōs liberāret	<i>he succeeded in freeing us</i>
est ut	<i>it is the case that...</i>
relinquitur ut eam	<i>nothing is left but to go</i>

3. poenam sequi oportēbat, } *the penalty of death by fire was*  
 ut igni cremārētur } *to follow*  
 omnibus idem est faciendum, ut domo emigrent } *all must do the same, namely*  
 } *leave their homes*  
 iūs (or iūris) est ut imperent } *the right of command, to command*  
 mōs (or mōris) est ut laudent } *the custom of praising, to praise*  
 tōtum in eō est, (im- } *all depends upon this one thing,*  
 personal) ut tibi imperēs } *your self-command*  
 in eō erat (impers.) ut irēmus } *we were on the point of going*

**708.** Note some standing phrases of *transition* and *conclusion*:

sequitur ut dicam dē...	<i>I now proceed to speak about...</i>
proximum est ut doceam	<i>my next task is to show</i>
restat ut, reliquum est ut	<i>lastly I must...</i>
sequitur ut, or acc. c. īnf.; )	} <i>hence it follows that...</i>
hinc or ex quō efficitur	
ut or acc. c. īnf.	

### III. QUIN = CLAUSES

#### A. QUIN IN MAIN CLAUSES

#### 709. quīn, why not?

Quīn (= quī ne) with the indicative is used in *indignant questions with imperative or hortative meaning*:

quīn ascendimus equōs?	<i>why not mount our horses?</i>
quīn continētis vōcem?	<i>why do you not keep quiet?</i>
quīn tū abīs?	<i>go; why don't you?</i>

NOTE: Quīn etiam = *nay even*:

diē legit, quīn etiam noctibus	<i>he reads by day, nay, even by night</i>
--------------------------------	--

#### B. QUIN IN DEPENDENT CLAUSES

(Only after main clauses with *negative meaning*.)

#### 710. quīn, (= a. c. ī.) that

(All tenses of the subjunctive)

After *negatived verbs of doubt or anxiety* a subject or object quīn-clause is used instead of an acc. c. īnf. to express a statement:

nōn dubium est quīn...	<i>there is no doubt that...</i>
nēmō dubitat quīn...	<i>no one doubts that...</i>
quis dubitat quīn... ?	<i>who doubts that...?</i>
nōn abest suspīciō quīn	} <i>there is no lack of ground to sus-</i>
mortem sibi cōscīverit	
	} <i>pect that he committed suicide</i>

NOTE: About the different constructions of *dubitāre, doubt*, and *dubitāre, hesitate*, see 650 and 647.

**711. quīn = nē or quōminus, from, to***(Present and Imperfect Subjunctive)*

After *nōn abest* and *negatived verbs of hindering* (699) *refraining from, subject and object quīn-clauses may be used to express purpose*:

<i>nihil abest quīn sīs beātus</i>	<i>nothing is wanting to make you happy</i>
<i>paulum or nōn multum</i> {	<i>you came near (you just missed)</i>
<i>āfuit quīn mē interficerēs</i> }	<i>killing me</i>
<i>nihil praetermīsī quīn...</i>	<i>I left nothing undone to...</i>
<i>mihi nōn temperō quīn...</i>	<i>I cannot forbear to...</i>
<i>nōn sē tenet quīn...</i>	<i>he does not refrain from</i>
<i>retinērī nōn potest quīn</i>	<i>he cannot be kept from</i>

**712. quīn = quī nōn, who... not***(All tenses of the subjunctive)*

After any *negative the nominatives quī nōn, quae nōn, quod nōn, may be replaced by quīn, in order to introduce a clause of characteristic* (677):

<i>nēmō est quīn sciat</i> {	<i>there is no one who does not</i>
<i>nēmō est quī nōn sciat</i> }	<i>know</i>
<i>quid est quīn intereat?</i> {	<i>what is there that does not</i>
<i>quid est quod nōn intereat?</i> }	<i>perish?</i>

*But only:*

<i>nēmō est</i>	<i>there is no one</i>
<i>cūius nōn meminerit</i>	<i>whom he does not remember</i>
<i>cui nōn fīdat</i>	<i>whom he does not trust</i>
<i>quem nōn laudāverit</i>	<i>whom he did not praise</i>
<i>dēquō nōn bene meritis sit</i>	<i>of whom he did not deserve well</i>

NOTE: *Quīn* is sometimes equivalent to an *ablative quō nōn*.

**713. quīn = ut nōn, as not to, but***(All tenses of the subjunctive)*

After any *negative quīn (= ut nōn or quī nōn) may be used to introduce a substantive (subject or object) or adverbial clause of result*:

<i>numquam tam male est</i>	<i>it is never so bad with the Sici-</i>
<i>Siculīs, quīn aliquid facētē</i>	<i>lians that they do not make a</i>
<i>et commodē dīcant</i>	<i>witty and timely remark</i>

nihil tam difficile est quīn \ *nothing is so hard but search*  
 quaerendō invēstīgārī possit } *can find it out*  
 nēmō adeō fortis est quīn... *no one is so brave as not to...*

*Distinguish:*

facere nōn possum **ut** eam \ *I cannot (possibly) go*  
 fierī nōn potest **ut** eam }  
 facere nōn possum **quīn** eam \ *I cannot avoid (help) going*  
 fierī nōn potest **quīn** eam } *I cannot but go, must go*

**714.** The English “**without**” is rendered by

1. neque;
2. ut nōn, quīn, nisi, cum, quamquam;
3. negatived adjectives and participles;
4. sine:

1. laudat neque blanditur } *he praises without flattering*  
 2. ita laudat ut nōn blandiatur }  
     nōn laudat quīn probet... } *he does not praise without*  
     nōn laudat nisi probat... } *approving (what he praises)*  
     laudat cum nōn probet... } *he praises without approving*  
     laudat quamquam nōn probat }
3. invītus fēcī *I did it without intention*  
     nōn rogātus vēnī *I came without invitation*  
     nullō rogante vēnī *I c. without anyone's request*  
     nullā morā interpositā *without delay*  
     rē infectā abiī *I went away without result*  
     causā indictā or incognitā *without trial*  
     angitur nihil proficiēs *he worries without avail*
4. sine iniūriā perfēcit ) *he brought it about without in-*  
     sine armīs perfēcit ) *flicting harm, w. recourse to arms*  
     sine ūllō labōre *without any effort*  
     But nōn sine aliquō ) *not without (any) effort*  
     labōre }





SPECIAL USES  
OF SUBJUNCTIVE QUOD - CLAUSES

**718.** At the **beginning** of the sentence a quod-clause refers to something preceding:

quod rediit, nōbīs mīrābile vidētur	{ <i>that he returned (or his return) seems wonderful to us</i>
quod scribis eum redisse, falleris	{ <i>as to your writing that he returned, (I think that) you are mistaken</i>
quod putās..., falleris	<i>if you think..., you are mistaken</i>

**719.** A quod-clause may be used **after**

- a. bene faciō *I do well*
- b. grātum faciō *I do a favor*
- c. bene, opportūnē fit, accidit, evenit { *it is fortunate, (or a fortunate occurrence)*
- d. similar other expressions employed to pass a judgment on the fact contained in the main clause:

opportūnē accidit quod vēnit	{ <i>it was fortunate that he came; his coming was fortunate</i>
------------------------------	--

But accidit **ut** venīret  
(without qualifying adverb) { *he happened to come*

pergrātum mihi facis quod manēs	{ <i>you do me a great favor by remaining</i>
---------------------------------	---

(About the tenses see 607 and 604, note)

**720.** A quod-clause is used to **explain** demonstratives and appellatives (716 and 717):

hōc ūnō praestāmus vel maximē ferīs, quod conloquimur inter nōs	{ <i>in this one respect are we especially superior to brutes, that we have the power of speech</i>
hōc vērum esse hīnc intellegitur, or ex eō intellegi potest, quod	{ <i>the truth of the statement may be concluded from the fact that...</i>

**721.** Verbs of **praising, blaming** and **congratulating** may take a *substantive*-or an *adverbial* quod-clause (716):

laudō, tibi laudī dō, quod...	<i>I commend, praise you for...</i>
reprehendō, tibi vitiō dō, quod	<i>I blame, find fault with you</i>
tibi grātulor, quod...	<i>I congratulate you</i>

*Distinguish:*

quod iis pepercisti laudō      *I p. your forbearance towards them*  
 quod iis pepercisti, te laudō      *I commend you because of your f.*

(The first clause is substantive, the second adverbial.)

*Also tibi grātiās agō, quod... I thank you for..., because...*

NOTE: Regarding quod with accusāre see 551;  
 regarding quod with verbs of emotion see 552.

## VI. TEMPORAL CLAUSES

(The negative is nōn.)

**722. Position.**

- a. The temporal clause usually precedes the main clause.
- b. The subject precedes, if it is common to both clauses, (unless the sentence begins with a connective: see n. 725.)

## INDICATIVE CUM - CLAUSES

**723. Cum temporāle, when, merely defines the time of the main action; it takes all the tenses of the indicative:**

cum Caesar in Galliam vēnit, { *when Caesar arrived in Gaul,*  
 alterius factiōnis principēs      { *(i. e. at the time of his arrival)*  
 erant Haedui, alterius Sēquanī { *the leaders of one party were...*

**724. Cum temporāle in versum, when; when suddenly; then**

*introduces the dependent clause with the leading thought; the preceding main clause (often with iam, nōndum, vix, aegrē) takes the Imperfect and Pluperfect; the following cum - clause, the historical perfect or present:*

iam scalis subibat mūrōs,      { *already was he scaling the walls, when*  
 cum repente ērumpunt Rōmānī } *suddenly forth sallied the Romans*

NOTE: Inverted are the order of the clauses, their tenses and importance:

Usual order: cum mūrōs subibat, ērumpunt Rōmānī.

NOTE: Secum **coincidēns** or **explicativum** n. 607, a;

cum **iterātivum** n. 610; 612;

cum **relātivum** n. 673; 675; 677, a.

## SUBJUNCTIVE CUM - CLAUSE

**725. Cum historicum, when, as, after,** describes the *situation* under which the main act took place; it takes the **imperfect** to denote contemporaneous action; the **pluperfect**, to denote previous action (617, 618); besides *situation* it frequently expresses an accessory idea of *cause* (or *opposition*):

**Agēsilaūs**, cum ex Aegyptō \ *Agésilau*s died **as** he was return-  
reverterētur, dēcessit (722) \ *ing from Egypt*

cum dīlūcēsceret, profecti sunt *they set out as day was breaking*

**eō** cum vēnisset, Caesar (722) *when he (had) arrived there...*

cum taetra prōdigia nūntiāta	} <b>when</b> (and because) <i>frightful</i> <i>signs w. announced, the decemviri</i> <i>w. commissioned to consult the S. books</i>
essent, decemvirī librōs	
Sybillinōs adire iussī sunt	
accūsāvit eum cum dīceret	<i>he accus'd him saying (i.e. adding)</i>

**726. OTHER TEMPORAL CLAUSES**

a. quam diū, dum, } *as long as* (607),  
quoad, dōnec, }

take all the tenses of the indicative to express *congruent* action.

b. dum, while (602),

takes the present indicative in order to express action (situation) *contemporaneous with any main action*.

c. postquam, posteāquam, after (602),  
ut, ubi, simul atque, } *as soon as*,  
ut primum, ubi primum, }  
cum primum

when expressing a single past act, take the perfect of the indicative.

*Note:* Postquam, (ut and ubi) sometimes take the present, imperfect and pluperfect indicative to express **past** situation (736).

About the iterative tenses see n. 610.

d. **dum, dōnec, quoad,** until  
**antequam, priusquam,** } before  
**quam** after ante and prius }

take 1. the perfect and second future of the *indicative*, in order to denote the act as a past or future fact;

2. the present and imperfect of the *subjunctive*, in order to denote the act as

*looked forward to* by the *main subject*, (with the intention to bring it about, prevent or evade it):

[The adverbs ante and prius modify the main verb; the relative quam introduces the temporal clause.]

1. māsī quoad vēnit *I remained until he came*  
 nōn prius abiī quam vēnit *I did not go before he came*

membris ūtimur priusquam } *we use our limbs, before we have learned*  
 didicimus cūius ea causā } *for what purpose we have them*  
 ūtilitātis habeāmus }

manēbō dum vēnerit *I will remain till he comes*  
 nihil contrā disputābō } *I shall say nothing in opposition*  
 priusquam dīxerit } *until he speaks*

2. dum veniat expectō *I wait for him to come*

moramne adferēmus dum } *are you going to delay action till they*  
 proficiscantur? } *shall set out?*

tempestās minātur antequam } *the storm threatens before it rises*  
 surgat }

priusquam sē ex terrōre } *before they could recover from*  
 recipere possent, exercitum in finēs } *their fright, he led his army*  
 Suēssiōnum dūxit } *into the territory of the Sues-*  
 } *siones*

plērique interfecti sunt, priusquam } *very many were killed before they could*  
 occultum hostem vidērent } *see the hidden enemy*

NOTE 1. Other tenses, e. g. the present indicative (to denote a present fact) are rare.

NOTE 2. The pluperfect subjunctive is sometimes used in indirect discourse to represent a direct second future (624.)

NOTE 3. *In antequam- and priusquam-clauses*

a. the pres. indic. and pres. subj. }  
b. the perf. indic. and impf. subj. } are sometimes used indiscriminately:

a. priusquam respondeō, (respon- } before I answer, I shall make a few  
deam), pauca dicam... } remarks...

b. o sōlem beātissimum, quī ante- }  
quam sē a bderet, (abdidit), } O blessed sun, who before it set saw  
fugientem vīdit Antōnium } Antony flee

## VII. CONCESSIVE AND ADVERSATIVE CLAUSES (663)

**727.** *Concessive* clauses contain an admission *in spite of* which the main statement is true;

*Adversative* (cum-)clauses merely *contrast* their statement with the main assertion for the sake of *comparison*.

The negative in these clauses is *nō n*.

Tamen, *yet, still*, is often inserted in the main clause to mark the contrast.

**728.** The *introductory conjunctions* are the following:

a. cum, though, while }  
ut, granting that } take the *subjunctive* of all tenses  
quamvis, no matter how }

b. licet, may } takes the present and per-  
fect subj.; it is sometimes ac-  
companied by quamvis }

c. quamquam } although  
etsi, tametsi } in fact take the *indicative* of all tenses

d. etiamsi even if } takes the *subjunctive* or *indica-*  
tive, following the construction }  
of si }

nostrōrum erat quīnque mīlium } while the number of our horse (was)  
numerus, cum hostis nōn amplius } five thousand, the enemy had only eight  
octingentōs habēret (Adversative) } hundred



Phōciōn fuit perpetuō pauper. cum { *Phocion was always poor, though he*  
divitissimus esse posset (Concessive) { *might have been very rich*

cum ea ita sint, tamen vōbiscum { *though this is so, I am ready to make*  
pācem faciam (Concessive) { *peace with you*

ut dēsint virēs, tamen est laudanda { *granted that strength be lacking,*  
voluntās { *yet you must praise my good will*

quamvis sit magna expec- { *however great expectations*  
tātiō, tamen eam vincēs { *are, you will surpass them*

quod turpe est, id quamvis oc- { *whatever is base, hide it as much as*  
cultētur, tamen honestum fieri nullō { *you will, it cannot be made respect-*  
modō potest { *able*

fremant omnēs licet, dicam { *may the whole world growl at*  
quod sentiō (644) { *me, I shall say what I think*

quamquam abest ā culpā, { *though in fact he is not guilty,*  
suspiciōne tamen nōn caret { *still he is not free from suspicion*

**729.** Quamquam and etsi may be used as *correctives*:

quamquam quid loquor ! *and yet, why am I talking !*

Quamvis with a positive (without verb) is equivalent to a superlative :

quamvis multī (= plūrimī) *as many as you will (very many)*

quamvis audācter (= audācissimē) *however bold (very bold)*

**NOTE 1.** Quamvis is rarely used with a superlative.

**NOTE 2.** Also si is sometimes used as a concessive conjunction.

## VIII. CLAUSES OF COMPARISON

(Compare 682, 683, 559, 705)

**730.** Clauses of Comparison express the relation of the dependent to the main predicate as to quality or quantity. If the clause contains a mere supposition, ("as if," or "as though"), it takes the subjunctive according to the *rules of Sequence*; all other comparative clauses take the indicative.

The main clause may contain ita, sic or item.

## 731. SUBJUNCTIVE CLAUSES OF COMPARISON

are introduced by

**quasi, tamquam (sī)** } **as if,**  
**velut sī, proinde ac sī** } **as though**

quid ego hīs tēstibus ūtor, } *why do I employ these witnesses,*  
 quasi rēs dubia sit! } *as if the case were doubtful!*

absentis Ariovistī crūdēlitā- } *they shuddered at his cruelty,*  
 tem, velut sī cōram ades- } *though he was absent, as if he*  
 set, horrēbant } *stood before them*

ita loquor quasi ego illud } *I am talking as if I had done*  
 fēcērim } *that*

inter sē impiī cīvēs, quasi vicis- } *those undutiful citizens congratulated*  
 sent, grātulābantur } *one another, as though they had been*  
 } *victorious*

NOTE: Occasional *exceptions* from the rule of sequence are made in order to emphasize that the supposition is contrary to fact:

ēius negōtium sic velim suscipiās ut } *I wish you would take up his business*  
 si esset rēs mea } *as though it were mine*

NOTE: Quasi (vērō) is often used *ironically*:

quasi ego id cūrem! } *as if I cared for that!*

## 732 INDICATIVE CLAUSES OF COMPARISON

are introduced by

- a. **ut, sicut, quem ad modum,** } **as**  
*or any other correlative (682-683)*
- b. **quam** after comparatives, } **than**
- c. **atque** or **ac** (326) after adjectives } **as**  
 and adverbs of (un) likeness }
- d. **nisi** after a negatived **alius,** } **than**

## 733. Ut, sicut, quem ad modum, as (732)

ut virō fortī dignum fuit, } *he contemned his calumny, as it*  
 ita calumniam ēius obtrivit } *was becoming to a strong man*

haec, sicut exposuī, ita } *these matters came to pass just*  
 gesta sunt } *as I have explained*

quem ad modum vīta beāta virtūte cōnficitur, ita nihil est nisi virtūs bonum	}	as a happy life is due to virtue, so nothing is good except virtue
--	---	---

quid est tam populāre quam pāx?	}	what is so acceptable to the people as peace?
------------------------------------	---	--

**734.** Ut with the **indicative** is also used to introduce *concessions, restrictions, parenthetical ideas and illustrations*:

ut fortasse vēre, ita parum ūtiliter respondit (Con.)	}	though his answer was probably true, yet it was little to the point
--	---	--

ita mē dī iuvent, (ut) vērum dīcō (Restriction)	}	may the gods help me (as much) as I tell the truth
--	---	---

civitas ampla et florēns, ut est captus Germānōrum (R.)	}	a large and flourishing state, that is according to G. notions
--	---	---

ut erat furiōsus, respondit (Restr.)	}	fuming with rage as he was, he answered
--------------------------------------	---	---

fuit scriptor, ut temporibus illīs, lūculentus (Restriction)	}	he was a writer of distinction for those times (at least)
---	---	--

sed, ut plērumque fit (601), māior pars meliōrem vicit (Parenthetical)	}	but, as it commonly happens, the stronger party overcame the bet- ter side
--	---	--

data est quibusdam bēstiīs etiam machinātiō quaedam, ut arāneolīs (Illustration)	}	even a certain power of design has been given to some animals, as for example to the little spiders
--	---	---

**735. Quam after comparative ideas (732)**

(Compare 677, c and 705)

a. plūra dixī quam voluī	}	I said more than I intended
--------------------------	---	-----------------------------

perpetī quam conquerī mālō tacere praestat quam nocere	}	I prefer suffering to complaining it is better to be silent than to do harm
---	---	--

b. nōn magis quam	}	as little as
-------------------	---	--------------

nōn minus quam	}	as much as
----------------	---	------------

illās litterās nōn plūs quam hās existimābam exitūrās	}	I thought that letter would become a s little public as the present one
--	---	--

c. fortior est quam fēlicior, magis fortis est quam fēlix	}	he has more courage than good fortune
--	---	--

**736.** *Quam* after *post* with an ablātivus discriminis (515) or another expression denoting an interval of time usually takes the pluperfect or second future (602, **611**, 537, 726, c.):

diē quīntō post or post diem	}	<i>five days after their unfortunate fight</i>
quīntum, quam male pugnā-		
verant, lēgātōs mīserunt	}	<i>they sent legates</i>

**737.** *Quam* or *quam possum* may be added to a superlative (607, c):

quam (possum) maximā vōce	<i>with as loud a voice as I can</i>
quam brevissimē (potuī)	<i>as briefly as I could</i>

**738.** **atque** and **ac** (632)

a. <b>īdem atque</b>	<i>the same as</i>
<b>pār atque</b>	<i>equal to</i>
<b>similis ac</b>	<i>similar to</i>

b. <b>alius ac</b>	<i>other than, different from</i>
<b>contrārius ac</b>	<i>the opposite of</i>

c. <b>pariter, similiter, aequē ac,</b>	}	<i>just as,</i>
proinde, perinde, prō eō ac,		
nōn aliā (similī) ratiōne ac,		

d. <b>aliter atque, secus atque</b>	<i>otherwise than</i>
<b>contrā ac</b>	<i>contrary to</i>

virtūs eadem in homine ac	}	<i>virtue is the same in man as in</i>
in deō est		

aliud dīxistī ac (or et) sentiēbās	}	<i>you spoke otherwise than you</i>
aliud dīxistī, aliud sentiēbās		

parī atque antea ratiōne ēgit	<i>he acted in the same manner as before</i>
-------------------------------	--

potest aliter mihi ac tibi	}	<i>I may have another view than</i>
vidērī		

aliter loqueris, aliter vīvis	<i>your speech differs from your life</i>
-------------------------------	---

contrā faciunt ac pollicentur	<i>they act in violation of their promises</i>
-------------------------------	--

**NOTE:** *Alius* and *aliter*, instead of taking a comparative clause, are often repeated in a coordinate clause: See 3d and 6th examples.

## 739.

**nisi** (732)

nēmō alius nisi	<i>no one else than</i>
nihil aliud nisi	<i>nothing else than</i>
quid aliud nisi?	<i>what else than or but?</i>

Sparta nullā rē aliā nisi	} <i>Sparta will not perish through</i>
avāritiā est peritūra	
	} <i>anything except avarice</i>
nihī aliud est discere nisi	} <i>to learn is nothing else than to</i>
recordārī	
	} <i>remember</i>

NOTE: "To do nothing else but" is expressed as follows:

nihil aliud ēgisti nisi ut reprehenderēs	} <i>you have done nothing else but</i>
nihil (aliud) fecisti nisi reprehendisti	
nihil aliud nisi reprehendisti	
	} <i>criticize</i>

## IX. CLAUSES OF PROVISIO

740. A proviso is expressed by

<b>dum, modo,</b>	} <i>so long as, if only,</i>
<b>dummodo</b>	} <i>provided only</i>

with the subjunctive. The negative is **nē**:

a. A proviso expressing a *demand* or *purpose* takes the present and imperfect subjunctive according to the rules of sequence.

b. A proviso expressing a *wish* (or a statement of *propriety*) takes the independent tenses of the subjunctive of wish (659) and propriety (657):

a. manent ingenia senibus, modo	} <i>old men preserve their mental vigor, if</i>
permaneat studium et industria	
	} <i>only their interest and industry r. active</i>
omnia postposui, dum modo	} <i>I disregarded everything else, so long as</i>
praeceptis patris parere	
	} <i>I could obey the injunctions of my father</i>

b. oderint, dum metuant	<i>let them hate, so long as they fear</i>
summās laudēs merentur	} <i>the Athenians deserve the highest</i>
Athēniēnsēs, dum modo	
nōn tam levēs fuissent	
	} <i>praises, if only they had not been</i>
	} <i>so light-minded</i>
mediocritās Peripatēticiīs	} <i>the Peripatetics rightly commend</i>
rēctē placet, modo nē	
laudarent irācundiam	
	} <i>moderation, but they ought not</i>
	} <i>to have praised anger</i>



**741.** A proviso may be expressed by *modo* with an *adjective*, *adverb* or *ablative absolute*:

quam plurimō modo dignīs (-modo dignīs sint) sē ūtilem praebeat	} <i>let him prove himself useful to as many as possible, provided they are worthy</i>
dēcerne, modo rēctē (id faciās)	
faciam, modo adiūtōre tē (- modo adiūtōr sis)	} <i>I'll do it, provided only that you help me</i>

## X. CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

**742.** The conditional sentence is a complex sentence made up of two clauses,

the *protasis*, which contains the condition,  
and the *apódosis*, which contains the conclusion.

The *protasis* is the dependent, the *apódosis* the principal clause.

**743.** There are three clauses of conditional sentences according to the character of the condition :

I. In the **first class** the speaker assumes the condition as a mere ground for inference, as nothing else than a necessary prerequisite for the truth of the conclusion without implying anything as to its fulfilment in reality.

II. In the **second class** the speaker both assumes the condition as a premise for the conclusion and implies its actual fulfilment as contingent.

III. In the **third class** the speaker again assumes the condition as a premise and implies at the same time that it is or was not fulfilled in reality.

### 744. FIRST CLASS

(Nothing implied as to the fulfilment of the condition: 743)

The **protasis** takes the **indicative** of all tenses;

the **apódosis** takes mode and tense required by the sense :

a. sī id crēdis (crēdēs),	} <i>if you (will) believe this,</i>
errās, (errābis)	} <i>you are (will be) mistaken</i>
sī id crēdēbās (crēdidistī),	} <i>If you (have) believed this,</i>
errābās, (errāvistī)	} <i>you were (have been) mistaken</i>



**747.** The apodosis of the second class often has the indicative, especially of the present and future in order to express the conclusion with greater positiveness:

nisi hōc dicat, nōn habet dēfēnsiōnem	{ unless he should say this, he has no defense
sī hōc dicere cupiās, nōn licēbit	{ if you should wish to say this, it will not be allowed

**748.** The protasis takes occasionally the imperfect subjunctive in order to express the fulfilment of the condition as contingent in the past:

Caesar sī peteret, nōn quicquam proficeret	{ even if Caesar had asked, he would not have succeeded
---	--

### THIRD CLASS

**749.** (Condition implied as not fulfilled: 743)

Both the protasis and the apodosis take the **subjunctive** of the **imperfect** for the present time,  
the **pluperfect** for the past time:

a. sī id crēderēs, errārēs	{ if you believed that, —(but you do not)—, you would be mistaken
sī id crēdidissēs, errāvissēs	{ if you had believed that, —(but you did not)—, you would have been mistaken
b. ista quoque coniūratiō facile opprimerētur, sī rēcta saperet Antōnius	{ also that conspiracy would be easily suppressed, if Antonius knew what is right
Philippus sī diūtius vīxisset, id bellum gessisset	{ if Philip had lived longer, he would have waged that war
sī meum cōnsilium valuisset, liberī essēmus	{ if my counsel had been heeded, we would be free
Hectora quis nōsset, fēlix sī Trōia fuisset!	{ who would know of Hector, had Troja been fortunate!

**NOTE:** The imperfect is often used instead of the pluperfect.

**750.** Also expression of ability, obligation etc., and forms of the periphrastic conjugations occurring in the apodosis are commonly put in the subjunctive (627); they may, however, take the indicative; (757, Note):

quid facere potuissem, (potuī, } *what could I have done, had*  
 poteram), nisi tum cōsul } *I not been consul at that*  
 fuisset? } *time?*

factūrī fuimus (= fēcissēmus), } *we would have done it, if our*  
 sī aedēs nostrae dēflagrāssent } *houses had burned down*

## 751. Conditional Particles

(Uses of sī, nisi, sī nōn, sīn)

1. **sī** **if**  
 sī forte *if perchance, if perhaps*  
 quod sī, sed sī (See 752) *but if (= and if)*

2. **nisi**, (*negating the whole protasis*) } **unless**  
 parvī forīs sunt arma, } *arms are of little value abroad,*  
 nisi est cōsiliū domī } *unless there is wisdom at home*  
 nisi forte } *always with the indicative* } *unless perchance*  
 nisi vērō } *tive; often ironical* } *unless indeed*

nisi (*after a negated apodosis*) *except, but, only (739)*  
 nisi inter bonōs amicitia esse } *friendship cannot exist except*  
 nōn potest } *among the good*  
 negat iūcundē posse vivī } *he holds that life cannot be pleasant,*  
 nisi cum virtūte vivātur } *except it be virtuous*

NOTE: nī = nisi is rare; nisi and nī are always separated from nōn.

3. **sī nōn** (*negating a single word*) } **if not**

sī nōn, or } .... at, certē, tamen, } *if not..., but, yet,*  
 sī minus } at certē, at tamen } *but surely, at least*  
 sī nōn virtūte, at ser- } *if you cannot delight in his virtue,*  
 mōne eius dēlectāminī } *you are at least charmed by his*  
 } *language*

## 752. Particles in Coordinate Conditional Sentences

**sī...; sīn** (autem) or **sī**      **if...; but if** (in contrast)  
 hunc mihi timōrem ēripe;      { *relieve me of this fear; if it is founded,*  
 sī vērus est, nē opprimar,      { *that I may not be overcome; if it is*  
 sīn falsus, ut timēre dēsinam      { *groundless, that I may cease to fear*

**sī...;**      { **sī nōn** or **sī minus,**      } **if...; if not**  
                  { followed by verb only }

**sī...; sī minus** (*without addition*)      **if...; if not**

sī fēceris id quod ostendis,      { *if you do what you propose,*  
 magnam habēbō grātiam;      { *I shall be very grateful; if you do*  
 sī nōn fēceris, ignōscam;      { *not do it, I shall pardon you;*  
 (sī minus, ignōscam)      { *(if not, I shall pardon you)*

NOTE: About **sī** with verbs of waiting and trying, see 646; about **sīve** – **sive**, see 629.

## DEPENDENT CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

## FIRST CLASS (744)

753. Conditional sentences of the first class are subordinated according to the *rules of sequence*, esp. n. 620 and 624. \*

## EXAMPLES :

- a. sī id crēdis, errās,  
 b. sī id crēdēs, errābis;  
 c. sī id crēdēbās, errābās:

Dependent: 1. **dīco tē**      **dīcēbam tē**

- a. sī id crēdās, errāre      sī id crēderēs, errāre  
 b. sī id crēdās, errātūrum esse      sī id crēderēs, errātūrum esse  
 c. sī id crēderēs, errāvisse      sī id crēderēs, errāvisse

2. **nōn dubitō quin**      **nōn dubitābam quin**  
**or quaerō num**      **or quaerēbam num**

- a. sī id crēdās, errēs      sī id crēderēs, errārēs  
 b. sī id crēdās, errātūrus sis      sī id crēderēs, errātūrus essēs  
 c. sī id crēderēs, errāveris      sī id crēderēs, errāvissēs



## SECOND CLASS (746)

**754.** The protasis takes the tenses according to the rules of sequence, esp. n. 624.

The apodosis is changed according to the same rules; but when dependent on a *verbum sentiendī* or *dicendī*, the present as well as the perfect subjunctive are changed into the infinitive of the future.

## EXAMPLES :

- a. *sī id crēdās, errēs;*  
 b. *sī id crēdiderīs, errāverīs :*

*Dependent: 1. dīcō tē, dīcēbam tē,*

- a. *sī id crēdās, errātūrum esse*      *sī id crēderēs, errātūrum esse*  
 b. *sī id crēdiderīs, errātūrum esse*      *sī id crēdidissēs, errātūrum esse*

*2. nōn dubitō quīn, nōn dubitābam quīn,*  
*or quaerō num, or quaerēbam num,*

- a. *sī id crēdās, errēs*      *sī id crēderēs, errārēs*  
 b. *sī id crēdiderīs, errāverīs*      *sī id crēdidissēs, errāvissēs*

## THIRD CLASS (749)

**755.** The protasis always remains unchanged.

The apodosis, when dependent on *verba sentiendī* or *dicendī*, is changed as follows :

1. The imperfect subjunctive becomes - *ūrum esse* and - *ndum esse*, the pluperfect subjunctive becomes - *ūrum fuisse* and - *ndum fuisse*
2. Verbs lacking the form in *ūrus* take instead the forms *futūrum esse ut* and *futūrum fuisse ut* with the imperfect subjunctive.
3. The verbs "can and ought to" are put in the present and perfect infinitive.
4. The forms with *futūrum esse* and *posse* are occasionally used for the passive of any verbs.

## EXAMPLES FOR THE ACTIVE :

- a. *sī id facerēs, vincerēs (vincere possēs):*  
 b. *sī id facerēs, tē pudēret;*  
 c. *sī id fēcissēs, vīcissēs (vincere potuissēs or potuistī:*  
     727, Note);  
 d. *sī id fēcissēs, tē puditum esset;*

*Dependent:*            **dicō or dicēbam tē,**

- a. sī id facerēs, victūrum esse, (vincere posse);
- b. sī id facerēs, futūrum esse ut tē pudēret;
- c. sī id fēcissēs, victūrum fuisse, (vincere potuisse);
- i. sī id fēcissēs, futūrum fuisse ut tē pudēret.

EXAMPLES FOR THE PASSIVE :

- a. sī id facerēs, vincerēris, (vincī possēs);
- b. sī id fēcissēs, victus essēs, (vincī potuissēs or potuistī):

*Dependent:*            **dicō or dicēbam tē,**

- a. sī id facerēs, { vincendum esse, (vincī posse),  
                          { or futūrum esse ut vincerēris;
- b. sī id fēcissēs { vincendum fuisse, (vincī potuisse),  
                          { or futūrum fuisse ut vincerēris.

**756.** When the apodosis is introduced by a **conjunction** or an **interrogative**, and contains an active or passive imperfect subjunctive or a passive pluperfect subjunctive, it usually remains unchanged :

EXAMPLES:

- a. sī id facerēs, vincerēs;
- b. sī id faceres, vincerēris;
- c. sī id fēcissēs, victus essēs:

*Dependent:*

nōn dubitābam.....quīn,  
or quaerō, quaerēbam.....num,

- sī id facerēs, { a. vincerēs (vincere possēs, tē pudēret);
- { b. vincerēris, (vincī possēs, vincendus essēs);
- sī id fēcissēs, { c. victus essēs (vincī potuissēs, tē puditum esset).

**757.** But when the apodosis contains an **active** pluperfect subjunctive, and is

- introduced by a *conjunction*, { it takes ūrus fuerim (and potuerim, debuerim with the present infinitive) after any tense;
- introduced by an *interrogative*, { it takes ūrus fuerim and ūrus fuissem according to the rules of sequence:

## EXAMPLES :

sī id fēcissēs, vīcissēs; (*See note*)

sī id fēcissēs, vincere potuissēs:

*Dependent:*

nōn dubitō *or* dubitābam quīn, sī id fēcissēs, victūrus fuerīs;

nōn dubitō *or* dubitābam quīn, sī id fēcissēs, vincere potuerīs;

quaerō, num, sī id fēcissēs, victūrus fuerīs, (vincere potuerīs);

*But* quaerēbam, num, sī id fēcissēs, victūrus fuissēs, (vincere potuissēs).

**NOTE:** The change of the pluperfect subjunctive to ūrus fuerim &c. is based upon its equivalent indicative forms (750):

vīcissēs	= victūrus fuistī;
vincere potuissēs	= vincere potuistī;
vincere dēbuissēs	= vincere dēbuistī.

## INDIRECT DISCOURSE

**758. Direct discourse** (ōrātiō rēcta) is a quotation which gives the exact words of the speaker. It is cited by an inserted inquit (277, 5) or by ut ait:

“sōlus sapiēns”, inquit Zēnō, } “A wise man alone”, says Zeno, “is  
“beātus est”. } happy”.

**Indirect discourse** (ōrātiō obliqua) is a quotation of words in an oblique form, depending on verbs of saying or thinking (547):

sōlum sapiente m ait Zēnō beātum } *Zeno says that only a wise man is*  
esse } *happy*

**NOTE:** Direct as well as indirect discourse has its own pronouns and adverbs, modes and tenses (759 sqq.)

**759. Corresponding Pronouns and Adverbs***Direct Discourse**Indirect Discourse*

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. ego and nōs; meus and noster }<br>( <i>Referring to the speaker or</i><br><i>first person</i> ) } | sē, suī, sibi; suus:<br>( <i>In contrast with other persons</i><br><i>also ipse is used: 767</i> ) |
| tū, iste, (Second person)  | ille <i>or</i> is  |
| is, ille, (Third person)   | is <i>or</i> ille  |
| reflexives of a n y person   | reflexives of the third person   |
| 2. hodiē, herī. crās   | eō diē, pridīē, posterō diē  |
| nūnc, adhūc  | tum ( <i>or</i> nūnc), ad id tempus  |
| hīc ( <i>here</i> ); hic ( <i>this</i> )   | ibi; is ( <i>or</i> hīc)   |

**NOTE 1.** The nominative of a pronoun is not expressed in indirect discourse, except for the sake of emphasis, esp. in contrast with other persons.

**NOTE 2.** Pronouns of the first and second person are excluded from indirect discourse, unless the author quotes his *own* speech or that of the person *addressed*.

**NOTE 3.** *Nōs* and *noster* are sometimes used, when the author refers to his own party; e. g. *Caes. B. G.*, I. 44.

### Corresponding Modes and Tenses

**760. First Rule:** *Main declarative clauses go into the accusative with the infinitive* (544) :

<i>Direct Discourse</i>	<i>Indirect Discourse</i>
ego, inquit, tibi prōvidēbō	a i t sē illi prōvisūrum esse
crās mē Rōmam cōferam	{ dixit sē posterō diē Rōmam itūrum or īre velle ( <i>Double reflexives are avoided by change of construction</i> )
nēmō nostrum hōc ignōrat	{ dixit nēminem ē suō numerō id ignōrāre (443)
arbitror eum profectum esse	sē arbitrārī eum profectum esse

**NOTE:** See other examples n. 544-560; 620; 622.

**761.** Also the following classes of clauses are declarative :

- a. all coordinate relative clauses: 374;
- b. all rhetorical questions of the first and third persons: 632;
- c. all indicative and subjunctive conclusions: 753;
- d. the other statements and questions of the declarative subjunctive (656 sqq.), which however sometimes are not changed into the a. c. i., but retain their mode :

a. rēx appellātus es..., quae (= ea autem) rēs paucīs contigit...	{ illum esse rēgem appellātum; quam rem paucīs contigisse
b. num possum īre ? (= nōn possum īre)	{ num sē posse īre ?
quid est libertāte dulcius? (= nihil est libertāte dulcius)	{ quid esse libertāte dulcius ?
c. See examples n. 753 sqq.	
d. quis neget ? (= quis negat ?)	quem negāre ?
quis negāre possit (= potest ?)	quem negāre posse ?

**762. Second Rule:** *All other main and all dependent clauses take the tenses of the subjunctive according to the Rules of Sequence (616 sqq.); i. e.:*

- a. the imperatives : 651 sqq.;
- b. rhetorical questions of the second person : 632;
- c. real indicative questions : 631;
- d. the deliberative subjunctive (662) and all other statements and questions of the volitive subjunctive : 658;
- e. all kinds of dependent clauses :

*Direct Discourse*

- a. ī, (ītō,) mī fili  
nē ierīs, nōlī ire
- b. vīsne ire?
- c. quid tibi vīs?  
quid ad mē venīs?  
cūr in meās possessiōnēs venīs?  
quid fēcistī?

- d. quid faciam?
- e. dīcam quid sentiam  
dīcam quod sentiō  
quod iusseris, faciam  
quod iusserās, fēcīt  
quod iussistī, faciō  
dum poterit, adiuvābit

sī ego populō Rōmānō  
nōn praescribō..., nōn oportet  
mē ā populō Rōmānō in  
meō iūrē impediri

*Indirect Discourse*

**dīxit** (or dīcit)

- filius īret, (eat)  
nē īret, (nē eat)  
num vellet ire  
{quid sibi vellet;  
{(*Direct reflexive*):  
{quid ad sē venīret,  
{cūr in suās possessiōnēs venīret;  
{(Sē and suās are *indirect reflexives*)  
quid fēcisset, (fēcērit)

- quid faceret  
sē dictūrum quid sentīret  
sē dictūrum quod sentīret  
quod iussisset, sē factūrum  
quod iussisset, eum fēcisse  
quod iussisset, sē facere  
dum posset, eum adiūtūrum

sī ipse (*Contrast*: 759) p. R.  
nōn praescriberet, nōn oportere  
sē ā populō R. in suō  
(Ariovistī) iūrē impediri

**NOTE 1.** After historical tenses or the present used in quotations (616), the tenses used in indirect discourse are often determined by the point of view of the speaker (*repraesentātiō*, *representation*); they are sometimes shifted in the same sentence.



NOTE 2. Explanations of the narrator, which are no parts of the indirect discourse, keep their modes, tenses, pronouns and adverbs (cf. 670):

Vēsontiōnem, quod est oppidum	} dīxit eum V'em, quod est oppidum
Sēquanōrum, contendit	

### 763. Change of Indirect to Direct Discourse

**Rule:** *First determine the independent tenses in accordance with the point of view of the speaker; then the dependent tenses by applying the rules of sequence:*

#### FIRST EXAMPLE (CAESAR B. G. I. 44):

- a. sī stīpendium remittātur (remitterētur),: *Dependent tense.*
  - b. sēsē nōn minus libentur recūsātūrum } : *Independent tense in the*  
populī Rōmānī amīcitiam } : *original direct main clause.*
  - c. quam appetierit: *Independent tense in a subordinate clause.*
1. recūsātūrum, which denotes an independent action belonging to the future of the speaker, becomes recūsābō;  
appetierit (Perfect), which denotes an independent action belonging to the past of the speaker, becomes appetīvī;
  2. remittātur, which denotes a dependent action that is contemporaneous with the future of the governing clause, becomes remittētur (608):

*Direct:* Sī stīpendium remittētur, nōn minus libenter recūsābō populī Rōmānī amīcitiam quam appetīvī.

#### SECOND EXAMPLE :

- a. quodsī eum interfēcrit, (interfēcisset),: *Dependent tense.*
  - b. multis sēsē grātum esse factūrum,: *Independent tense.*
1. sēsē factūrum esse becomes faciam;
  2. interfēcrit, denoting an action that is previous to a governing future, becomes interfēcērō (611):

*Direct:* Quodsī tē (759) interfēcērō, multis grātum faciam.

## DIRECT AND INDIRECT REFLEXIVES

**764.** *Suī, sibi, sē* and *suus* are **direct** reflexives, when referring to the subject (*a.* expressed, *b.* implied, or *c.* logical) of the clause, (respectively phrase) in which they stand:

- a.* *oblītus suī est* *he was forgetful of himself*
- quō sē recipere, nōn habēbant* } *they had no place of refuge*
- suōs amat* { *he loves his friends, soldiers, equals, followers, family...*
- sentit animus sē suā vī movērī* } *the soul perceives that it is moved by its own power*
- patet eum sibi temperāre* *he evidently restrains himself*
- lēgātum ad sē missum interfēcit* { *he put the legate who was sent to him to death*
- dux cum militibus suis fugit* *the leader fled with his soldiers*
- But dux et milites eius f'unt* *the leader and his soldiers fled*
- Deum agnoscēs ex operibus eius* *you'll know God from his works*
- b.* *dēfōrme est dē sē ipsum praedicāre, (i. e. aliquem: 541)* } *it is disgraceful to brag about oneself*
- amor suī, (439)* *self-love*
- c.* *puDET eum negligentiae suae* *he is ashamed of his carelessness*

*Note:* Direct reflexives may refer to different persons in the same clause, when no ambiguity arises:

*Ariovistus ait nēminem sē cum (i. e. cum Ariovistō) sine suā (referring to nēminem) perniciē contendisse* } *Ariovistus said that no one had fought with him without his destruction*

**765.** *Suus* is often used to refer to an oblique case of its clause; always, when emphasized, (meaning *his... own,*) and with *quisque*:

*Caesar Fabium cum suā (Fabii) legiōne remittit in hiberna* } *Caesar sent Fabius back with his legion to his winter-quarters*

cōservā tuīs suōs	{ for the sake of your friends, spare theirs
suī cuique mōrēs lingunt fortūnam	every man's character shapes his lot

NOTE: Also the personal reflexive sometimes refers to object cases, especially with *per*, *propter* and *in*:

honestātem propter sē expetimus	{ we strive after probity for its own sake
---------------------------------	---

**766.** *Suī*, *sibi*, *sē* and *suus* are **indirect** reflectives, when not referring to the subject of their clause (or phrase *respectively*), but to another subject:

dīcit Carolum sibi temperāsse, (sibi referring to Carolum)	{ he says that Charles controlled himself (Direct reflexive)
---	---

dīcit Carolum sibi temperāsse, (sibi r. to the subject of dīcit)	{ he says that Charles spared him (Indirect reflexive)
---	---

respondit sibi (Direct) mīrum vidērī, quid in suā (Indirect) Galliā populō Rōmānō negōtī esset	{ Ariovistus replied that he was wondering what business the Romans could have in his own Gaul
---	---

sī quid ille sē (Indirect) velit, illum ad sē (Indirect) venīre oportēre	{ if Caesar wished anything from him, he ought to come to him
--	---

(See other examples n. 666.)

### **Ipse and is Replacing the Reflexive**

**767.** **Ipse** is used as an indirect reflexive in contrast with other reflexives, and for the sake of emphasis:

Caesar ex militibus quaesivit, cūr dē suā (militum) virtūte ant dē ipsius (Caesaris) diligentia dēspērarent	{ Caesar asked his soldiers, why they should despair of their own valor or his vigilance
---	--

Without contrast:

cūr dē suā diligentia dēspērarent	why should they despair of his vigilance
Ariovistus respondit, sī quid ipsi (Ariovistō) ā Caesare opus esset, sēsē (A.) ad eum ventūrum fuisse	{ A. answered that, if he himself (Em- phasis) had wanted anything from Caesar, he would have come to him

**768.** The determinative **is** is sometimes used instead of a reflexive in order to avoid ambiguity or to denote the dependent clause as an explanation of the author or from carelessness:

persuādēt Rauracīs utī oppidīs suis exustīs unā cum eis pro- ficiscantur	}	<i>the Helvetians persuaded the Rauraci to burn their towns and set out with them</i>
Solō, quō tūtior ēi us vita esset, furere sē simulāvit	}	<i>Solon feigned madness that his life might be the safer: (Explanation given by Cic.)</i>

### RECIPROCALLS

**769.** A proper pronoun for the reciprocal ideas **one another** and **each other** is wanting in Latin. These ideas are expressed by

- a. inter nōs, inter vōs, inter sē in any case relation,  
the reflexive object cases being omitted. (*With reference to  
oblique cases inter ipsōs is sometimes used*);
- b. alter alterum, uterque utrumque, &c. (*for two*);  
alius aliū, aliī aliōs (*for more than two*);
- c. repetition of the substantive;
- d. suī, sibi, sē with ipsī;

a. inter nōs amāmus		<i>we love one another, (each other)</i>
inter vōs invidētis		<i>you envy one another</i>
inter sē prōsunt		<i>they are useful to one another</i>
sāncta sit cīvium inter	}	<i>inviolable be the mutual bond of</i>
ipsōs (= inter sē) societas	}	<i>fellow-citizens!</i>
b. accidit ut alter alterum	}	<i>we happened to see each other</i>
necopinātō viderēmus	}	<i>unexpectedly</i>
uterque utrī quē cordī est		<i>they are dear to one another</i>
alia virtūs ab aliā sēpa-	}	<i>virtues cannot be separated from</i>
rārī nōn potest	}	<i>one another</i>
c. manus manum lavat		<i>{ one accomplice whitewashes the other; or "one hand washes a."</i>
ōva ōvōrum simillima		<i>one egg is like another</i>
d. milītēs sibi ipsī ad pug-	}	<i>the soldiers hinder one another in</i>
nam impedimentō sunt	}	<i>the fight</i>

## NEGATIVES

(Study n. 326, 6 and 7; 331; 647.)

**770.** *Remember the following combinations:*

- a. neque quisquam, and nobody*  
*neque quidquam, and nothing*  
*neque ūllus vir, and no man*  
*neque ūsquam, and nowhere*  
*neque umquam, and never*

- b. nēmō umquam, no one ever = never... anyone*  
*nihil umquam, nothing ever = never... anything*  
*nēmō ūsquam, no one anywhere = nowhere... anyone*  
*nihil ūsquam, nothing anywhere = nowhere... anything*

- c. nēmō nōn, everybody      nōn nēmō, some*
- |                                 |  |
|---------------------------------|--|
| <i>nūllus nōn everybody</i>     | { <i>nōn nūllus, some (sg.)</i><br><i>nōn nūllī, some few</i>    |
| <i>nihil nōn, everything</i>    | <i>nōn nihil,</i> { <i>something;</i><br><i>somewhat, (adv.)</i> |
| <i>numquam nōn, always</i>      | <i>nōn numquam, sometimes</i>                                    |
| <i>nōn possum nōn cōnfītērī</i> | <i>I must confess (= can't help...)</i>                          |

- d. nōn iam, not any more      iam nōn, no more, no longer*
- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <i>nōn ita, { not very;</i><br><i>not particularly</i> | <i>ita nōn, so little (705)</i><br><i>quam nōn, how little</i> |
| <i>nēmō iam, no one any longer</i>                     | <i>nihil iam, nothing any more</i>                             |

- e. nōn ignōrō, I well know      nōn multum, little (cf. 735, b)*  
*nōn facile, with difficulty      nōn semel, often enough*

- f. nūlla spēs, no hope      nōn est spēs, there is no hope*

**NOTE:** *Nōn* is used to negative clauses and single words in any clause; its usual place is before the verb or the word it negatives (695).

*Nē* is used to negative clauses only; its usual place is at the beginning of the clause.



## WORD - ORDER

**771.** The word-order is either *grammatical* or *rhetorical*; the grammatical order is an arrangement of words intended for the mere purpose of conveying the thought of the author with *clearness*; the rhetorical order has for its object not only clear expression of thought, but also emphasis of certain parts of the sentence.

**772.** The **grammatical** (or normal) order of words is this:

1. *the subject*;
2. { *the modifiers of the subject*,  
    { (*following or grouped about it*);
3. { *the modifiers of the verb*,  
    { (*the indirect preceding the direct object*);
4. *the verb*;

Antōnius collēgae diadēma	} <i>Antony placed a diadem</i> } <i>on the head of his colleague</i>
imposuit	

**773.** Words or phrases referring to something preceding, stand first in dependent clauses (689):

eō cum vēnisset	<i>when he came there</i>
quā rē nūntiātā	<i>at this news</i>
alterō diē	<i>on the following day</i>

**NOTE:** Special principles regarding the position of certain parts of the sentence will be found in the following paragraphs :

*Form of Address* ; 35, Note.

*Attributes* : 399-403.

*Appositives* : 404-406.

*Prepositions* : 322; 330, Note.

*Conjunctions* : 326-330

*Negatives* : 770, Note.

**NOTE:** The grammatical word - order is comparatively rare, since the speaker generally wishes to emphasize some words of the sentence.

**774.** The **rhetorical** order of words is especially (771) intended for the purpose of emphasis. This is obtained especially by

- a. reversing the grammatical order;
- b. chiasmus or cross - order; X = Chi;
- c. anaphora or parallel order:

a. apud Helvêtiōs longē nōbi- } *Orgetorix was by far the most*  
 lissimus fuit et dītissimus } *illustrious and richest man of*  
 Orgetorīx } *the Helvetians*

sī sunt dī, beneficī in } *if there are gods, they are*  
 hominēs sunt } *beneficent towards man*

b. nōn videō quō modō sēdāre } *I do not see how past*  
 possint } *pleasures can assuage*  
       mala praesentia } *present sufferings*  
 praeteritae voluptātēs }

c. male parta, male dilābuntur    *ill gotten, ill spent*

dēfendī multōs, } *I have defended many,*  
 laesī nēmīnem } *I have injured no one*

**775.** While certain cadences were avoided, **rhythm** (numerus) often governed the choice of words, especially at the (beginning and) end of a sentence:

**Preferred:**

— ∪ — ∪            esse possit  
 — ∪ ∪ ∪ — ∪    esse videātur

**AVOIDED:**

— ∪ ∪ —            esse potest  
 — ∪ ∪ — ∪        esse vidētur

**NOTE:** Pronouns were often put together, modifiers frequently separated from their substantives:

a. idem ego dicō                    *I say the same*  
 b. aliud iter habēmus nūllum    *we have no other way*  
    multis cum lacrimis        *with many tears*  
    eā maximē ratiōne        *principally for this reason*

## SENTENCE - STRUCTURE

**775. First Rule:**

- |    |   |                              |
|----|---|------------------------------|
| a. | A subject or object that is common to both the main and the dependent clause, | } stand before both clauses: |
| b. | the main subject that is at the same time the object of the dependent clause, |                              |
| c. | the dependent subject that is also the object of the main clause,             |                              |

- a. Caesar, cum hōc cognōvisset, } *when Caesar learned this, he*  
       discessit } *departed*

Caesarem, ut vidērunt, se- } *as soon as they saw Caesar, they fol-*  
       quuntur } *lowed him*

- b. Caesar, cum eum adgredi } *Caesar remained in camp, though they*  
       vellent, in castris manēbat } *wished to give battle*

Caesar, cum eī nūntiātum } *when it was announced to Caesar that*  
       esset..., discessit; (or Caesari } *..., he departed*  
       cum nūntiātum esset... discessit) }

(Observe that the object is indicated in the dependent clause by a pronoun.)

- c. Caesarem, cum iis facultā- } *they dared not attack Caesar, though*  
       tem pugnandi daret, adgredi } *he gave them an opportunity to fight*  
       nōn audēbant }

**NOTE:** In such sentences the following combinations of conjunctions are common :

Sed cum (= cum autem), *but when...*

nam cum (= cum enim), *for when...*

itaque cum (= cum igitur), *accordingly, when...*

**776. Second Rule:** In general,

- |    |   |            |
|----|---|------------|
| a. | temporal (722) and causal (715),<br>concessive and adversative (727),<br>comparative (730), conditional (742),<br>and adverbial final (694) clauses | } precede; |
|    |   |            |

- b. final substantive clauses (694),  
consecutive clauses (703; exception n. 706),  
quīn - clauses (709), clauses of proviso (740),  
coordinate clauses (326 sqq.) } **follow;**
- c. substantive quod - clauses partly precede, partly follow  
(716 sqq.);
- d. indirect questions (precede or) follow (641 sqq.);
- e. relative clauses are attached to their antecedent, and  
precede or follow the main clause; see however n. 682, 684,  
686.

NOTE 1. Dependent clauses are frequently combined or inserted: 686;  
685; 606.

2. The ablative absolute (517) and the appositive participle  
(573) are inserted without any conjunction or relative; see also n. 574 and 575.

#### PECULIARITIES

#### 777. In Latin

a. a governing clause may be placed within its dependent  
clause;

b. two subordinate clauses, one dependent on the other or not,  
may precede their main clause:

- a. ipsī animī, magnī rē fert quālī } *as to the souls, it matters much in what*  
in corpore locatī sint } *kind of body they are*
- b. quālīs esset nātūra montis quī } *he sent out a party to examine the*  
cognōscerent mīsīt } *nature of the hill*
- cūr nōlīnt, etiāmsī tacent. } *they show the reason of their unwilling-*  
dicunt } *ness, though they are silent*
- ubi redierō, sī licēbit, } *I shall write to you after my return, if*  
ad tē scribam } *I can*

NOTE: One of these dependent clauses preceding the main clause may often  
be best rendered by a substantive (*first and second example in b.*) or a  
phrase (*last example*).

## THE LATIN PERIOD

**787.** The **period** (*ambitus verbōrum or circumscriptiō*) is a (long and) carefully constructed complex sentence in which completion of sense is suspended till the close.

The **historical** period is one in which unity of subject is preserved in the variety of constructions.

The **rhetorical** period consists of a complex protasis and apodosis whose members are grouped according to the laws of oratory (e. g. symmetry, rhythm etc.).

*NOTE:* As the English language often prefers coordination to subordination, Latin periods frequently require to be broken up into several sentences:

Caesar primum suō, deinde	}	Caesar had all the horses, his own first,
omnium ex cōspectū remōtis		removed from sight. He did this to make
equis. ut aequatō periculō		the danger equal and thus take away all
spem fugae tolleret, cohortātus		hope of flight. A cheering address to
suos proelium commisit	)	his soldiers, and the battle began.



## APPENDIX

## I. PROSODY

*(Quantity and Versification)*

## QUANTITY OF SYLLABLES

(Study n. 3-9.)

**779.** The quantity of syllables is the relative time taken in sounding them, a long syllable requiring about twice the time of a short one.

**NOTE:** **H** has no influence on quantity : 5, 6;  
**qu** is considered as a simple consonant;  
**i** between two vowels or at the beginning of a word before a vowel, is a consonant; 5, 10.

**780.** A syllable is **long by nature**, if it contains

- a. a long vowel : fidus, māior, (*see Preface, second page*);
- b. a diphthong : foedus, aurum, caelum;
- c. a vowel produced by  
     contraction of vowels : cōgere from coagere;  
     or weakening of diphthongs: occidere from oc - caedere

**781.** A syllable is **long by position**, if it contains a (short or long) vowel

- a. before x (and z): fax, nex, pix, nox, dux;
- b. before two consonants  
     of which one  
     belongs to the syllable:     } annus, altus, fert,  
   vincō, in nova,  
   nec quicquam;

**NOTE:** The combination p, c, t, (b, g, d) with l; n, (mūta cum liquidā: n. 3),

- a. when belonging to two words or two parts of a compound word, effects length of quantity by position :

ob rem, obruō

*b.* when helonging to *one* simple word,

does not effect it in prose: vo - lu - cris (5, 7);

may effect it in poetry     { vo - lu - cris or vo - luc - ris,  
(syllaba anceps)     { te - ne - brae or te - neb - rae;

"Et primō similis volu - crī, mox vēra voluc - ris."

**782.** A syllable is **short**, if it contains a short vowel

- a.* before a vowel or h : **dea**, **deae**, **trahō**;
- b.* before a single consonant : { **faciō**, **coquō**;  
  { **et in**, **alma mīter**;
- c.* before a mūta c. liquida : **volu - cris** (781; Note)
- d.* before any two or three con- { **splendīda** stella;  
sonants of the following word: { **stella** splendīda.

## QUANTITY OF VOWELS

**783.** The quantity of vowels is either **apparent** or **hidden**.

It is **hidden**, if it does not show its value in poetry; namely, wherever the vowel stands before a group of two consonants that do not belong to the combinations formed by mūtae followed by liquidae (781);

it is **apparent** in all other cases; thus, in the verse

in nova | fert **ani**- | mus mū- | tātās | dīcere | fōrmās  
corpora...,

the quantities of the **full - faced** vowels become **apparent** by applying the laws of the dactylic hexameter (799), while those of the other vowels remain hidden; the quantities of the vowels in in, - mus, - tās, - mās, however, appear from other verses; the value of e in fert, ō in fōr-, ō in cor-, cannot appear in poetry at all, because the syllables in which these vowels occur are long by position (781) without regard to the quantity of the vowels.

Such hidden quantities can be shown (in some cases with probability only) from other sources; e. g... from the statements of Roman grammarians, the laws of etymology, and Greek transcriptions of Latin words.

## Rules for the Quantities of Vowels

**784. First Rule:** Vowels **before vowels, h, nt, nd and ss are short**;

faciō, praeacūtus, dehinc, prohibeō;  
frontis, frondis, lassus, fessus.

## Exceptions

- a. the vocatives of proper nouns in }  
- ā ius and - ē ius (35, 36) } Gāī, Pompēī;
- b. ē before ī in the fifth declen- }  
sion, except fideī, rei, speī (70) } diēī, faciēī;
- c. ī in the genitive in - ius }  
(169) : } alterīus, illīus etc.,  
but also alterius a. s. f.;
- d. ī in the forms of fiō, except in }  
fit and before er (295) : } fiō, fis;  
but fit, fierī, fierem;
- e. dīus for divus; sometimes Diāna, ōhē, ēheu; Aenēās, Dārēus, etc.
- f. quīnt- quīnd- and ūnd- in numerals (115); besides,  
nūntius, cōntiō, nūndinae, prēndō, vēndō;
- g. the contracted perfect - forms and the forms of ēsse :  
laudāsse, ēssem; (225, 284);

*NOTE 1: The vowel o is short in pro before f followed by a vowel:*

profānus, profectō, profiteor, profor, profugus;

*Exceptions:* prōferō, prōficiō.

*NOTE 2: Pro- and ne- are short in*

procul, prope, probus;  
nefās and nefandus,  
nesciō, nescius, nequeō.

**785. Vowels are long before**

- a. nf, ns, nx, nct: infāns, vīnxī, vīnctus;
- b. - scō (begin): crēscō; exc. discō, poscō, compescō;
- c. gn in stāgnum, rēgnum, sēgnis.
- d. consonantal i: cīus; except: the compounds of iugum:  
quadriiugus, quadriiugis.

*NOTE:* The ō of noun - stems in - ōn - and - ōr - is long :

scīpiō, scīpiōnis; labor, labōris;

*Exceptions:* arbor, arboris; lepus, leporis; or in neuters: corpus, corporis.

**786. Second Rule:** Compounds and derivatives (335) usually keep the quantities of the corresponding simple and primitive words:

cómparō, parō (9, b.)	flōs, flōreō, flōruī
óccidō, cadō	fūr, fūrāx, fūrtim
improbū, probus	crēdō, crēdulus
persuādeō, suādeō	amīcus, amīcitia
inīquus, aequus	moneō, monuī, monitum

*NOTE:* Related words sometimes have different quantities:

dux, dūcō	lēx, legō
odium, ōdī	nōtiō, notō
fidēs, fidō	rēx, regō
fidēlis, fidus	sēdēs, sedeō
perfidus, infidus	vōx, vocō
homō, hūmānus	ācer, acuō

**787. a.** All forms of verbs with perfects in uī (vī) except pōnō have a short stem - vowel; study n. 232, 236, 242, 249, 251, 260, 280:

cubāre, cubō, cubuī, cubitum

*b.* The verbs in -ere, -iō have a short vowel in the present:

cupere, facere, iacere etc. (251)

*c.* The following dissyllabic perfects and perfect passive participles have a short vowel:

Pf.: dedī, stetī, -stitī; bibī; fidī, scidī, tulī, īī.

Ppp.: datum, statum (from sistō), satum, ratum;

itum, citum, litum, quitum (from queō), situm, rutum.

*Note:* All other dissyllabic perfects and perfect passive participles have a long penult,

either by nature: vīdī, vīsum; laesī, laesum;

or by position: coxī, coctum; vexī, vectum;

or by both nature & position: tēxī, tēctum; rēxī, rēctum;

and position: fīxī, fixum; cōmpsī, cōmptum.

**788. Third Rule:** Final vowels are long; but final **e** is short.

**EXCEPTIONS:**

1. Final **ē** is long in
  - a. monosyllables: **ē, dē; mē, tē, sē; nē** (*lest, verily*);  
except enclitics: -que, -ve, -ne; -ce, -te, -pte;
  - b. in the ablative of the fifth declension: **rē, fidē;**
  - c. in the imperative of the second conjugation: **dēlē;**
  - d. in the adverbs derived from adjectives of the second declension: **rētē;** and in **valdē, ferē, fermē.**
2. Final **a** is short in the nominative, accusative and form of address: **mēnsa, bella, rēgina.**
3. The ultima is short in some dissyllables with a short penult:

ita, quia, nisi, quasi, cito;  
bene, male, ego, duo, modo;  
sometimes in homo, leo, peto, puto, volo...  
and in ave, cave, vale, vide...

**NOTE:** The quantity is common (short or long) in mihi, tibi, sibi, ibi, ubi, (ubinam, ubivis), but only alibi, ibidem, ubique.

**789. Fourth Rule:**

1. Before final **s**, { **ā, ē and ō** are **long**: - ās, - ēs, - ōs;  
                          { **i and u** are **short**: - is, - us.
2. Before other final consonants all vowels are short.

**EXCEPTIONS:**

(Examples in n. 46 - 54)

1. a. as (47), anas (51), es of esse, penes, compos,  
      -es (-itis, -idis, -etis), os (*bone*), impos.  
      But abiēs, ariēs, pariēs,

- b. -īs as plural case - ending: mēnsīs, servīs, nōbīs, artīs (42);  
as singular verb-form } audīs, īs, fīs: Present indicative;  
of the second person, } sīs, velīs etc.: Present subjunctive;  
when the 1 ps. pl. is -īmus; } laudāverīs (also -is): Perfect subjunctive;  
besides, vīs and -vīs: } (l'īs), usually laudāverīs: Second future.  
as nominative singular in: vīs, Quirīs, Samnīs

**NOTE:** Sanguīs and pulvis have -īs or -is.

- c. -ūs as nominative singular with genitives in -ūtīs, -ūdis, ūris.



2 a. The following monosyllables:

dīc, dūc, sīc, and hōc (*Preface, second page*);

nīl, sōl, sāl (47); ēn, nōn, quīn, and sīn;

Lār, pār, (dispār, impār: 43), vēr, eūr;

b. the adverbs of place in c: illic etc. (178, 180)

c. the contracted forms of the perfect in - īvī: audīt.

**790. Greek** words keep their quantity; as, āēr; but final - or is always short; as, Hector (82 - 85).

#### VERSIFICATION

**791. Poems** are composed of verses; verses, of feet; feet of syllables.

**792. Rhythm** is the regular recurrence of groups of syllables (musical sound - groups) that take the same amount of time.

**793. A foot** is a rhythmically recurring group of syllables.

*NOTE:* The unit of length is one short syllable, called *mora*, *delay*; a long syllable contains two *morae*.

**794. The principal feet** are

— — or *Trochee* (Trochaeus);

— — — or **Dactyl** (Dactylus),

— — or *Iambus* (Iambus);

— — — or *Anapaest* (Anapaestus);

— — or **Spondee** (Spondēus);

— — — or *Tribrach* (Tribrachys).

**795. A verse** is a succession of feet arranged in a fixed order.

**796. Meter** is 1) a measure in the composition of a verse, consisting of either one foot (the dactylus), or a combination of two feet, called dipody; (two trochees, iambs or anapaests); and 2) a particular system of measuring; e. g., the dactylic meter.

**797. Ictus** or metrical accent (') is the stress of voice given to the same place in a foot. It is naturally caused by the regular recurrence of the same group of syllables.

*NOTE 1.* Sense- and word- accent is the stress of voice given to the syllable that is most prominent by its meaning. (e. g., to the root: **porta**) or by its inflexion; (e. g., portārum).

*NOTE 2.* When word- accent and ictus fall upon different syllables, both exert their inherent power, the accent being stronger in one place, the ictus in another.

**798.** The **thesis** is the syllable of a foot that receives the ictus; the **arsis**, the part of the syllable that remains without a metrical accent.

*NOTE 1.* The terms *thesis* and *arsis* are here defined according to their original meaning.

*NOTE 2.* In the *thesis*, short final syllables, especially the enclitic -que, may be lengthened, (*Diastole*, drawing out).

dēsine plūra, puēr, et quod nunc instat, agāmus.

#### THE DACTYLIC HEXAMETER

(Versus hērōus)

**799.** The dactylic hexameter is made up of six feet:

the first four are dactyls or spondees;

the fifth generally is a dactyl, (rarely a spondee: *spondaic verse*, versus *spondiacus*);

the sixth is a spondee or a trochee:



*NOTE:* Dactyls are chosen to express rapidity of action or joyous emotions; spondees, to express slowness, majesty, power, grief, sadness etc.

quadrupe | dante pu | trem soni | tū quatit | ungulā | campum  
(Verse depicting a courser at full speed.)

illi in | ter sē | sē mag | nā vī | brachia | tollunt (cf. 5, 13)  
(Verse depicting the heavy strokes of the Cyclopes in forging thunderbolts.)

**800. Caesura** (marked ||) is the cutting of a verse in two (or more) parts by ending a word within a measure.

**Diaeresis** is the ending of a word with the foot.

*NOTE 1.* Caesura and diaeresis have opposite effects. While the beauty of a verse is created by well-chosen caesuras, it is made impossible by too great a number of diaereses.

*Note 2.* The caesura is called **masculine** (from its strong effect), when it falls after the first syllable of a foot; **feminine**, when it falls after the second; **the caesura**, when it falls at a natural pause, made for the sake of the sense or the sound.

NOTE 3. *a.* The *most frequent* caesura is after the thesis of the third foot; it is called *penthemimeral* (*penthēmimerēs*), because it falls after the fifth half measure:

dōnec eris fēlīx, || multōs numerābis amīcōs;

*b* next comes the caesura after the thesis of the fourth foot (*hephemimeral*, *hephthēmimerēs*), which is commonly united with the *trithemimeral*:

clāmōrēs || simul horrendōs || ad sīdera tollit;

*c.* *then* the *feminine* caesura that falls after the first short syllable of the third foot:

ō passi graviora, || dabit deus hīs quoque finem.

NOTE 4. **Bucolic diaeresis** is a diaeresis at the end of the fourth foot, coincident with a sense – pause; it was often used by the bucolic (pastoral) poets; hence its name:

sōlstitium pecorī dēfendite; || iam venit aestās.

#### THE DACTYLIC PENTAMETER

801. The dactylic pentameter is a hexameter whose third and sixth arses are replaced by pauses.

Spondees may be used instead of dactyls in the first half, but not in the second. The first half ends with a long final syllable, the second with one that is *anceps*:

— — — | — — — | — ^ | — — — | — — — | — ^

NOTE 1. The wrong name *pentameter* is due to the formerly prevailing misconception that the verse consisted of two dactyls or spondees, a spondee, and two anapaests.

NOTE 2. The pentameter is regularly used in alternation with the hexameter (802).

#### THE ELEGIAC STANZA

802. The elegiac stanza or distich is a hexameter followed by a pentameter:

omnia sunt hominum tenuī pendētia filō;  
et subitō cāsū, quae valūere ruunt.

## SCANNING AND READING

**803. Scanning** is the dividing of a verse into its feet, (without regard to sense or accent).

**Reading** verse is the recital of the poetical production with due regard to sense, word - accent, meter (and ictus).

## PECULIARITIES

**804.** In scanning and reading verse attention must be paid to the following peculiarities; to

- a. slurring (*synaloepha* or *elision*); see 5, 13;
- b. hiatus (*omission of slurring*), which is *regular* before and after interjections, *permitted* at the end of a verse, *an exception* in other cases:

ō et | dē Lati | ā, ō | et dē | gente Sa | binā;

[Hiatus is sometimes incomplete, a long final vowel becoming short.]

- c. contraction of two vowels within a word into one long vowel (*synizesis* or *synaeresis*): sciō, dēsse, antēre, prōinde etc.
- d. pronouncing of consonantal i and u as vowels, and of the vowels i and u as consonants:

silvae - siluae;

Trōia - Trō - i - a;

tenuis - tenvīs;

abiēs - ab - yēs.

- e. tmesis (*cutting of compounds into their parts*):

q uō mē c u m q u e (- quōcumque mē) rapit tempestās, dēferor hospes;

- f. syncope (*omission of a short, unaccented vowel in a word*):

templōrum positor templōrum sāncte repositōr;

- g. systole (*shortening of long syllables*):

obstupī steteruntque comae, vōx faucibus haesit;

- h. diastole: see 798.

**NOTE:** Some of the above - mentioned peculiarities, especially *slurring*, *hiatus* and *syncope* were common to both *daily speech* and *poetry*.

## II. THE ROMAN CALENDAR

(Fāstī, ōrum, m.)

805.

## MONTHS

Iānuārius, Februārius, Mārtius, Aprīlis, Māius, Iūnius,  
 Quīntīlis *or* Iūlius, (in honor of Caesar),  
 Sextīlis *or* Augustus, (in honor of Augustus),  
 September, Octōber, November, December.

NOTE 1. The names of months usually are adjectives (49, 60).

NOTE 2. Before 153 B. C., the Roman year began with March;  
 hence Quīntīlis, Sextīlis etc., *the fifth, sixth... month.*

806.

## DATES

Three	{	Kalendae :	the first of the month;	{	MILMO
<b>fixed</b>		Nōnae :	{the fifth of the month; but the seventh in March,		
points :			May. July, October;		
		Idūs :	{the 13th of the month; but the 15th in MILMO.		

From these three points dates were reckoned backward, both ends of the series being counted :

Kalendīs Iānuāriīs	<i>on the first of January</i>
pridiē Kalendās Iānuāriās	<i>(on) the 31st of December</i>
ante diem tertium Kalendās Iānuāriās, (a. d. III. K. Iān.), or tertiō (diē ante) Kal. Iān. }	<i>(on) the 30th of December</i>
a. d. IV., V.,... XIX. K. Iān.	<i>(on) the 29th, 28th,... 14th of Dec.</i>
Idibus Decembribus	<i>on the 13th of December</i>
pridiē Idūs Decembrēs	<i>(on) the 12th of December</i>
a. d. III., IV.,... VIII. Id. Dec.	<i>(on) the 11th, 10th,... 6th of December</i>
Nōnīs Decembribus	<i>on the 5th of December</i>
pridiē Nōnās Decembrēs	<i>(on) the 4th of December</i>
a. d. III., IV. Nōnās Dec.	<i>(on) the 3d, 2d of December</i>



*NOTE:* The expressions with a. d. and *prīdiē* are unchangeable :  
ex a. d. III. K. Iān. ūsque ad *prīdiē* Nōn. Apr., *from Dec. 30th to April 4th...*

### 807. The Intercalary day in Leap Year

was counted between a. d. VII. K. Mārt. (our Feb. 23d of the ordinary year) and a. d. VI. K. Mārt. (our Febr. 22d) and was called a. d. **bis** VI. K. Mārt.

### 808. To turn Roman Dates into English

1. Add **one** to the date of *nones* (5 or 7) and *ides* (13 or 15), and subtract the given Roman number;
2. Add **two** to the days of the month preceding the *calends* and subtract the given Roman number:

1. a. d. IV. Nōn. Sep.:  $5+1-4 = \text{Sep. 2d}$ ;  
a. d. VIII. Īd. Iūl.:  $15+1-8 = \text{July 8th}$ ;
2. a. d. XV. K. Oct. :  $30+2-15 = \text{Sep. 17th}$ .

### 809. To turn English Dates into Roman

Apply the same rules as above, but subtract the given English number:

- Sep. 2d:  $5+1-2 = \text{a. d. IV. Nōn. Sep.}$ ;  
July 8th :  $15+1-8 = \text{a. d. VIII. Īd. Iūl.}$ ;  
Sep. 17th:  $30+2-17 = \text{a. d. XV. K. Oct.}$

### 810. To turn Roman Years (*annī urbis conditae*),

into years B. C., subtract from 754; into A. D., subtract 753.

### 811. HOURS

The day was divided into two sets of twelve hours each, differing in length at different times in the year. The first set began with sunrise, the second with sunset.

*hōra nōna* may mean  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} (1) \text{ at 3 P. M.; (121)} \\ (2) \text{ between 2 P. M. and 3 P. M.} \end{array} \right.$

*NOTE:* In camp the night was divided into four watches of three hours each, likewise varying in length at different times in the year; *vigilia prima*, *secunda*, *tertia*, *quārta*.

## III. ABBREVIATIONS

## 812. Roman Praenōmina

A. = Aulus	L. = Lūcius	Q. = Quīntus
App. = Appius	M. = Mārcus	Sex. = Sextus
C. = Gāius	M'. = Manius	Ser. = Servius
Cn. = Gnaeus	Mām. = Māmercus	Sp. = Spurius
D. = Decimus	N. = Numerius	T. = Titus
K. = Kaesō	P. = Pūblius	Ti. = Tiberius

NOTE 1. The Roman had regularly **three names**:

Mārcus Tullius Cicerō:

1. The praenōmen, or personal name: Mārcus;
2. the nōmen (always in - ius), or principal name, indicating the gēns, and corresponding to our last name: Tullius;
3. the cognōmen, or family name, indicating the smaller circle of related persons: Cicerō.

NOTE 2. **Women** were called only by the name of their gēns:

Terentia, the wife of Cicero, Tullia, his daughter.

## 813. Roman Money

1 sēstertius =  $2\frac{1}{2}$  assēs (about 4 cents) = HS = IIS = as+as+sēmis;  
 1 sēstertium = 1000 sēstertiī (about \$42.50) = HS (the same sign).

Below 2000 the reckoning was by sēstertiī and cardinals,  
 below 1,000,000 by sēstertia and distributives (or ordinals),  
 from 1,000,000 by sēstertium and numeral adverbs;

HSX = sēstertiī decem = 10

HSX̄ = sēstertia dēna or decima (= decem mīlia sēstertium)  
 = 10,000

HS[X] = sēstertium deciēns (i. e. centēna mīlia) = 1,000,000

## 814. Other Abbreviations

S. C.	senātūs cōsultum
S. P. Q. R.	senātus populusque Rōmānus
A. U. C.	ab urbe conditā
q. b. f. f. q. s.	quod bonum, fēlix, faustumque sit
S.	salūtem (i. e. dīcō or dīcit)
S. D. P.	salūtem dīcō (dīcit) plūrimam
S. V. B. E. V.	sī valēs, benest, ego valeō

# INDEX

(Written by Mr. A. C. Cotter, S. J., and Mr. D. E. Hammer, S. J.)

## ABBREVIATIONS

cl.	= clause;	im.	= imperative;
co.	= construction;	n.	= note;
cpd.	= compound;	w.	= with.

## A.

ā, ab 299 n. 1, 300, 323, 470, 488,  
512, 524, 584

**abbreviated forms** 225

abdō 244, co. 528

abeō 292

abest, nōn 711

abhinc 536

abhorreō 236

abiciō 254

*abide*, co. 521

abigō 247

**ablative** 18, 26 ;syntax 484

– of **separation** 486 sqq.

– of *source* 488 sqq.

– of *origin* 489

– of *material* 490

– of *comparison* 491, sqq.

– **sociative** a. 496 sqq.

– of *manner* 498 sqq.

– of *attend. circumst.* 500

– of *means or instrum.* 501 sqq.

– of *cause* 508 sqq.

– of *accordance* 510

– of *respect or specif.* 511 sqq.

– of *amount of diff.* 515

– of *quality* 441

– with *multō* 453

– **absolute** 516 sqq.

*able, be a.* 283; co. 627

abluō, 249

abnuō 249

*abound*, co. 503

*above – mentioned* 568

absēns 280

*absent, be a.* 280

**absolute time** 589, 500, 601

absolvō, co. 452

*abstain* 236

abstergeō 237

abstineō 236, co. 486

absūm 280, co. 282, 515 n.

**abundantia**, subst. 77 sqq.;

– adj. 100 sqq.

abundō, co. 503

– ābus *instead of* – is 77

abūtor 267

ac. *see atque*

accēdit 274, 716 n.

accēdō 243, co. 453

accendō 248

*accent* 9, 226

accēpī 547 n.

accersō 241

accidit 274

- acciō 235  
 accipiō 254  
 accommodātus, co. 582  
 accompaniment 496, 497, 500  
 accomplish 254  
 accost 244  
 accurrō 244  
**accusative** 18, 25, syntax 412 sqq.  
 - of inner object 413 sq.  
 - cognate a. 413  
 - of neuter pron. or num. adj. 413  
 - of outer object 415 sqq.  
 - w. verbs of painful emotion 422  
 - double a. 423 sqq.  
 - in exclam. 432  
 - of extent 531 sqq., 536  
 - w. inf. 544 sqq.  
 accuse, co., 452 sqq., 551  
 accūsō, co. 452, sqq., 551.  
 accustom 254, co. 551, 502, 543  
 acknowledge 256  
 acquit co. 452  
 act 247  
 acuō 249  
**ad** 310, 323, 483, 512, 583  
 adaequō, co. 419  
 add 244  
 address 244  
 address, form of, 19, 24, 35  
 addūcō, co. 697  
 adeō 293, co. 418, 677, 705  
 adferō 287, co. 461  
 adfirmō, co. 547  
 adgredior 268  
 adhibeō 236  
 adhūc 180, 594  
 adimō 247, co. 474  
 adipīscor 269  
 adiuvō 234, w. acc. 462  
**adjectives** 32 sqq., 55 sqq.  
 - expr. prep. phrases 401 n.  
 - w. gen. 449  
 - of use and fitness 483  
 - participles as adj. 567  
 - w. supine 587  
 adliciō 252  
 admodum 105  
 admoneō 236, co. 451  
 admonish 236  
 adnuō 249  
 adolēscō 257  
 adrior 270  
 adorn 247  
 adsentior, adsentor 270  
 adsequor 267  
 adsum 280, w. dat. 282, 462  
 adulēscēns as appos. 408  
 adūlor 270  
 adultus 223  
 adveniō 263  
**adverbs** 106, 114, 128, 129, 346, 347  
 351, 357  
 - of place 178 sq.  
 - of time 180 sq.  
 - of manner and degree 182 sqq.  
 - in indir. discourse 759  
 adverbial modifiers 368  
 adversative conj. 328  
 adversor w. dat. 462  
 adversus 314, 440, 481  
 advesperāscit 273  
 advise 237  
 aemulor, co. 419  
 aequō plūs 492  
 aēr, 84  
 aestimō, co. 457, 458, 514  
 aethēr 84  
 affect 254  
**afficiō** 254, co. 502  
 affirm 277  
 affligō 243  
 affluō, co. 503  
 agnōscō 256  
 agō 267, id agō ut 697  
 agree 244, 249, 261

**agreement** of adj. 34, synt. 388 sqq.

– of *appos.* 388, 389, 392 n.

– of *attributes* 390

– of *predicate* 391; 393 sqq.

– by *attraction* 392 sqq.

– by *sense* 395

– of *pred. subst.* 392

– of *pron.* 149, 396

*aiō* 277

*algeō* 237

*aliā* 178

*aliās* 180

*alibī* 178

*alicubī* 178

*alicunde* 178

*aliēnus*, co. 487

*aliō* 178

*aliquā* 178

*aliquamdiū* 180

*aliquandō* 180

*aliquantō* 515

*aliquantum* 175

*aliquī* 156

*aliquid* 414

*aliquis* 156, 175, 648, 656

*aliquō* 178

*aliquot* 175

*aliquotiēns* 180

*aliunde* 178

**alius** 169, 170

*all of* 448

*allidō* 243

*allow* 241; *be all.* 273

*allure* 252

*alō* 242

**alter** 118, 169, 170, 172

*alteruter* 172

*ambigō* 247

*ambiō* 293

*ambō* 117, 167

*ambūrō* 243

*amiciō* 264

*amīcus*, co. 481

*amittō* 243

*among, be a.* 280

*amplector* 267

*amplius* 493

**an** 637, 639, 649; *an nōn* 638, 649

*anaphora* 774

*and* 326, 330 n.

*angō* 248

*angry, be a.* 236, 269

*animadvertō* 248

*Aniō* 80

*announce* 243

*annoy* 272

*annul* 246

*annuō* 249

*anoint* 250

*answer, to* 238

*answers* 636

**ante** 305, 317, 357; *as adv.* 324

*anteā* 180

**antecedent** 147, 673, 684

*antecēdō*, co. 419

*antecellō* 246

*anteferō* 287

*antehāc* 180

*antepōnō* 242, co. 515

*antequam* 333, 726

**aoristic tenses** 590, 591 n.

*apage* 334

*aperiō* 260

*apiece* 126

**apodosis** 742, 744, 746, 749

*appāreō* 236; *appāret* 274, 545

*appear* 236

*appellatives* 60

*appellō* 244, co. 528, *appellor*, co. 387

*applaud* 243

**appositive** 358

– *agreement of a.* 388 sqq.

– *to possess. pron.* 389, 405

– *position of a.* 404 sqq.

– *subst. used as a.* 408

– *adj. and part. used as a.* 409, 570

– *expr. cause etc.* 410



- appositive replaced by phrases* 441  
 - **participle**, 572 sqq.  
*approach* 243, 293  
*appropinquō* w. dat. 463  
*aptus*, co. 483, 677  
*apud* 309, 323  
*arbitror* 265, 620 n.  
*arceō* 236  
*arcessō* 241, co. 478  
*ardeō* 237  
*arguō* 249, co. 452, 551, 562  
*arrange* 243  
*arrideō* 237  
*arrive* 263, co. 528  
**article** 22 n.  
*as* 333; *as it were* 410 n.  
*ascendō* 248  
*ascertain* 262  
*ask* 241, 265  
*aspergō* 243  
*assemble*, co. 523  
*assent* 270  
*assuēfaciō* 254, co. 551  
*assuēfactus*, co. 502  
*assuēscō* 256  
*assuētus* 223, co. 502  
*astounded*, be a. 236  
*at* 328  
*atque*, ac 326, 696, 732, 738  
*atquē* 328  
*attack* 268, 270  
*attain* 269, 697; co. 707  
*attempted action* 591, 595  
*attend* 244  
*attendō* 244  
*attinet* 274  
*attigō* 244  
**attribute** 357 sqq.  
 - *complement* 366  
 - *agreement of a.* 390  
 - *position of a.* 399 sqq.  
 - *praising and blaming a.* 403  
 - *participles as a.* 566  
*auctor sum*, co. 465, 697  
*audeō* 220, co. 543, 620 n.  
*audiō*, co. 547, 562, 570  
*audītū* 587  
*auferō* 287, co. 474  
*augeō* 237  
*aut* 327, 639, 661, 696; *aut-aut* 331  
*autem* 328; *is autem* = *quē* 689  
*auxilior* w. dat. 462  
*avenge* 269  
*aveō* 236, w. inf. 543  
*avidus*, w. gen. 449
- B.**
- banish* 254  
*beam* 237  
*bear* 285  
*beat* 244  
**become** 243, 294, co. 387;  
 - *a boy again* 258  
 - *burdensome* 258  
 - *fixed* 257  
 - *inflamed* 257  
 - *insensible* 258  
 - *master* 270  
 - *of* 490  
*becoming*, be b. 273  
*beg* 265, 277  
*beget* 242  
**begin** 270, 277, co. 526, 543  
 - *to dread* 257  
 - *to flourish* 257  
 - *to shudder* 257  
*behold* 265  
*believe* 244, 265  
*bend* 243  
*besiege* 239  
*besprinkle* 243  
*bestow* 270  
*betray* 244  
*better*, be b.. 111, 112, 274  
*bewail* 237  
*beware* 239  
*bibō* 245

*bid on* 266  
*bind* 261  
*bite* 238  
*blame* 721; *blaming attr.* 403  
*blandior* 270  
*bloom* 236  
*blunt* 246  
*border* 244  
*born, be b.* 269  
*bōs* 80  
*both* 117, 173  
*break one's word* 243  
*break to pieces* 247  
*breakfast* 239  
*bribe* 247  
**bring** 287; *b. forth* 253; *b. help* 265;  
     *b. up* 243  
*bruise* 246  
*build* 250  
*burn* 243  
*burst* 247  
*bury* 254, 259  
*busy, to* 236  
*buy* 247, co. 458; *b. up* 247

## C.

*cadō* 244  
*caedō* 244  
*caleō* 236  
*calfaciō* 226  
**can** 283, 294, co. 543  
*canō* 244, co. 502; *receptuī c.* 479  
*canvass* 293  
*capessō* 241  
*capiō* 254; *locum c.* 582  
*capitals* 2  
**cardinals** 114 sqq.; *w. ex, dē* 447  
*care for, co.* 583  
*careō* 236, co. 486  
*carp at* 243  
*carpō* 243  
**carry** 243, 285; *c. on* 243; *c. thru* 247  
*carve* 243

**case, defined** 18  
     – *end of nouns* 23, 29 sqq., 41 sqq.,  
         65, 69  
     – *end of adj.* 32 sqq. 59  
     – *end of part.* 63  
*cāsus rēctus & obliquus* 18 n.  
**causā** 312, 509 n. 581, 586; *position*  
     438  
*causal conj.* 329, *claus.* 715  
*caveō* 239, 661 n., co. 700  
*cease* 241, co. 543; *c. speaking* 257  
*cedo* 277  
*cēdō* 243, co. 463, 486  
*cēlō, co.* 423  
*cēnātus* 222  
*cēnseō* 236, co. 698  
*cernō* 241  
*certē, certō* 110, 636  
*certiōrem faciō, co.* 547  
*characters* 1  
*charge with* 249; *have ch.* 280  
*cheat* 254  
*cherish* 239  
*chiasmus* 774  
*chisel* 243  
*choose* 247, co. 428; *ch. rather* 288  
*cieō* 235  
*cingō* 243  
*circā, circum, circiter* 318; *as adv.* 324  
*circum in cpds.* 417  
*circumdō* 233, co. 461  
*circumlocution* 218, 466, 671  
*circumsedeō* 239, co. 417  
*circumsistō* 245, co. 417  
*circumstō* 233, co. 417  
*cis, citrā* 316  
*claudō* 243  
**clauses defined** 371, 372  
     – *coordinate cl.* 372, 374  
     – *subordinate cl.* 372, 375 sqq.  
     – *connected and unconn. cl.* 377  
     – *subst., adj., adverb. cl.* 379  
     – *interrogative cl.* 630 sqq.  
     – *relative cl.* 673 sqq.

- *correlative cl.* 682
- *combination of cl.* 686
- *conjunctive cl.* 693 sqq.
- *of result* 604, 619, 702 sqq.
- *of characteristic* 677 sqq., 702 n.
- *of purpose* 619, 666 n., 676, 693 sqq.
- *of fear* 619, 701
- *quīn cl.* 709 sqq.
- *subst. quod cl.* 716 sqq.
- *temporal cl.* 722 sqq.
- *concessive and advers. cl.* 619, 727 sqq.
- *of comparison* 619, 730 sqq.
- *of proviso* 740 sqq.
- *conditional cl.* 742 sqq.
- clear, be cl.* 274
- cleave asunder* 246
- climb* 248
- clip* 238
- close* 243
- coalēscō* 257
- coarguō* 249, co. 452
- coēmō* 247
- coepī** 277
- coerceō* 236
- cōgitō w. inf.* 543
- cognate acc.* 413
- cognitū* 587
- cognōscō* 256, co. 547, 562
- cognōvī* 256, 596
- cōgō* 247, co. 426, 528, 551, 561
- coincident action** 607
- cold, be c. feel, c.* 237
- collect* 247
- collective nouns* 16
- colligō* 247
- collocō, co.* 521
- colloquor* 267
- colō* 242
- combination of cl.* 686
- combūrō* 213
- come, c. to assist, c. together* 263
- comis, co.* 481
- cōmitātus* 219, co. 505
- comitia, co.* 582
- comminus* 351
- commit suicide* 257, 461
- committō* 243
- common nouns* 13, 14, 388
- commūnis* 437
- cōmō* 247
- comparative** 86 sqq.
- *w. gen.* 447
- *followed by* *quam quī* 677
- *followed by* *quam ut* 705
- compare* 287
- comparison of adj.** 86 sqq.
- *of adv.* 111 sqq.
- *irregular c.* 96 sqq., 112
- *defective c.* 102 sqq.
- *expr. by ut* 410,
- by quasi and tamquam* 410 n.
- comperiō* 262, co. 547
- complain* 267
- complement** 365 sqq.
- *predicate c.* 366, 386
- *subject. c.* 366
- *attribute c.* 366
- *object c.* 367
- compleō* 235, co. 503
- complete* 254
- complexus* 620 n.
- compos w. gen.* 449
- composition of words** 335
- compungō* 244
- conative present* 594
- conceal, co.* 423
- conceditur* 697 n.
- concedō, co.* 548, 697
- concern* 274
- concessive cl.* 727 sqq.; *c. subj.* 663
- concidō* 244
- concinō* 244
- conclusion, phrases of* 708
- concoquō* 243
- concupiscō* 257
- concutiō* 252
- condemn co.* 452, 453

- condition, defined* 378  
*conditional cl.* 676 n., 742 sqq.  
*condūcit* 274  
*condūcō* 243, co. 583  
*cōnectō* 243  
*cōnferō* 287, co. 464  
*confess* 266  
*cōnficiō* 254, 295 n.  
*cōnfidō* 220, 620 n., co. 508, 547, 553  
*cōnfiteor* 266  
*cōnfligō* 243  
*cōnfodiō* 254  
*cōnfringō* 247  
*cōnfugiō* 254  
*congratulate* 265, co. 721  
*concredior* 268  
**congruent action** 600, 607  
*congruō* 249  
*coniungō* 243  
*cōniveō* 236  
*conjugations* 184 sqq.  
**conjunctions** 325 sqq.  
   – *coordinate c.* 326 sqq.  
   – *subordinate* 332 sqq.  
*connect* 243  
*cōnor*, co. 543, 646  
*conquer* 247  
*conquirō* 241  
*conscious w. gen.* 449  
*cōnsciscō* 257  
*cōnsciūs w. gen.* 449  
*cōnscrībō* 243  
*cōnsecūtiō temporum, see*  
   *sequence of tenses*  
*cōnsenescō* 257  
*cōnsentiō* 261, co. 464  
*cōnsequor* 267  
*cōnserō* 241, 242  
*cōnservō w. acc.* 462  
*cōnsidō* 248, co. 521  
*consist* 233  
*cōnsistō* 245, co. 521  
*cōnspiciō* 251  
*cōnspicor* 265  
*cōnstat* 274, co. 544  
*cōstituō* 249, co. 521, 543, 698  
*cōnstō* 233, co. 458  
*cōnstructiō ad sēnsum* 395  
*cōnsuēscō* 256  
*cōnsuēvī* 256, 596, w. inf. 543  
*cōnsul as appos.* 408  
*cōnsulō* 242, w. dat. 473  
*consult* 242  
*cōnsūmō*, co. 521  
*contemnō* 243  
**contemporaneous action** 539, 600  
   608, 617  
*contendō* 244, w. inf. 543  
*contentus*, co. 508  
*conticēscō* 257  
*contineō* 236, co. 504  
*contingit* 274  
*continuation of negatives* 696  
*continue*, co. 543  
*contrā* 314: c. ac, contrārius ac 738  
*contract, make a. c.* 220  
*contundō* 246  
*convalēscō* 257  
*conveniō* 263, co. 419, 528, 585  
*convenit* 274, 419, 545  
*converse* 267  
*convict* 247, 249, co. 452 sqq.  
*convince* 237  
*convincō* 247, co. 452  
*cook* 243  
**coordinate cl.** 372, 374; *c. conj.*  
   325 sqq.  
*copulative conj.* 326;  
   *c. verbs* 366, 386, 387  
*coquō* 243  
*cōram* 307, as adv. 324  
**correlative pron. and adv.** 174 sqq.  
   *c. cl.* 682 sq.  
*corrigō* 243  
*corrumpō* 247  
*cost* 233, co. 458  
*could* 595  
*cover* 241, 243, 260

*covet* 257  
*crēdō* 214, co. 461, 547  
*creep* 243  
*creō*, co. 428  
*crēscō* 256  
*cringe* 270  
*cross* 248, 293  
*crush* 246  
*cubō* 232  
*cultivate* 242  
**cum** (prep.) 299 n.; 304, 496, 497, 498  
 - *position of c.* 131, 146, 148  
 - *cpds. of c.* 464  
**cum** (conj.) 715  
 - *coincidēns* 607  
 - *iterātivum* 610, 613  
 - *nārrātivum* 616  
 - *relātivum* 180, 673, 675, 677  
 - *quod cum* 690  
 - *temporāle* 723, 724  
 - *historicum* 725  
 - *concessivum* 728  
*cum primum* 602  
*cum - tum* 180, 331  
*cumque* 150, 178, 180, 183  
*cūnctor* 265, w. inf. 543  
*cupidus* w. gen. 449  
*cupiō* 251, co. 543, 550  
*cūr* 673  
*curb* 236  
**cūrō**, co. 543, 580, 583, 661 n. 697  
*currō* 244  
*cut* 232; *c. off* 243; *c. into* 244

## D.

*damnō*, co. 452 sqq.  
*dare*, co. 543  
*dash against* 243; *d. to pieces* 247  
*dates* 121  
**dative** 18, *syntax* 460 sqq.  
 - *as indirect obj.* 363, 461 sqq.  
 - *of the possessor* 467 sqq.

- *of the agent* 469 sqq.  
 - *of reference* 471  
 - *of advant. or disadvant.* 472 sqq.  
 - *ethical d.* 475  
 - *of person judging* 476  
 - *of service and purpose* 477 sqq.  
 - *w. adj.* 480 sqq.  
 - *w. participle in ndus* 213  
*daub over* 241  
**dē** 302, 422, 447, 451, 455, 512, 524, 580, 584, 586  
*dea* 77  
*dēbeō* 236, co. 543, 553, 619 n.  
*deceive* 241, 270  
*dēcernō* 241, co. 698  
*dēcerpō* 243  
*deceit* 273, co. 416, 545  
*decide* 249  
*dēcipiō* 254  
*declare war* 243  
**declension**, *defined* 11, 17 sqq., 23, 29, 41 sqq. 64, 69  
 - *of adj. and part.* 32 sqq. 55 sqq.  
 - *of defect. and abund.* 76 sqq.  
 - *of Greek words* 81 sqq.  
 - *of comparative* 90  
 - *of numeral adj.* 116  
*decree* 239, 257  
*dēdecet* 273, co. 416  
*dēdiscō* 256  
*dēdō* 244  
*deem* 261, 265  
*defective nouns* 72 sqq. 102  
 - *verbs* 277 sqq.  
*defend* 248  
*dēfendō* 248, co. 486  
*dēferō* 287  
*dēficiō* 254, co. 419  
*dēfigō*, co. 521  
*dēfleō* 235  
*dēgō* 247  
*dēlectat*, co. 416  
*dēleō* 235  
*delight* 274  
*dēligō* 247, co. 428, 387



- demand* 256, co. 425, 697  
*dēmergō* 243  
*dēmetō* 243  
*dēmō* 247  
*demolish* 249  
*demonstrative pron.* 140 sqq.;  
 – followed by *consec. cl.* 705;  
 – explained by *a. cl.* 720  
*dēpellō*, co. 486  
**dependent cl. tenses in.** 600 sqq.  
*dependent tenses* 600 sqq.  
*deplore* 266  
**deponents** 214 sqq.; *passive of d.*  
 218, 265 sqq.  
*dēpopulātus* 219  
*dēposcō* 256  
*dēprehendō* 248  
*dērigō* 243  
**derivation of words** 335  
*descend* 248  
*dēscendō* 248  
*dēsciscō* 257  
*descriptive tenses* 591, 595  
*dēserō* 242  
*desert* 242  
*deserve* 220  
*desideratives* 264  
*dēsignor*, co. 387  
*dēsiliō* 260  
*dēsīnō* 241, w. inf. 543  
*desire* 251; *d. to eat* 264  
*desirous w. gen.* 449  
*dēsistō* 245, w. inf. 543  
*dēspērō*, co. 422  
*destroy* 235, 248  
*dēsūm* 280, w. dat. 282, 462  
*detain* 236  
*deter* 236, co. 486, 699  
*determinative pron.* 142 seq.; 677, 689  
*determine* 249  
*dēterreō* 236, co. 486, 699  
*dētineō* 236  
*dētondeō* 238  
*dētrahō*, co. 474  
*deus* 37, 78  
*dēvertor* 220, 221  
*diaeresis* 5, 6, 7  
*(dieiō)* 76  
*diēō* 243, co. 479, 547; *pres. im.* 226  
 – *diem d.* 582; *dīcor* 387, 561  
*dictō audiēns w. dat.* 462  
*dictū* 587  
*die* 244, 268, 293  
*differ* 261, 287  
*differō* 287  
*difficilis* 587, 588  
*diffidō* 220, 221, 620 n., co. 508  
*diffindō* 246  
*dig* 254  
*digerō* 243  
*digest* 243  
**dignus** co. 513, 677  
*diligō* 247  
*dimicō* 232  
*diminish* 249  
*dimittō* 243  
*dip* 243  
*direct* 243  
*dīrimō* 247  
*diripiō* 251  
*dīruō* 249  
*discēdō*, co. 486  
*discern* 239  
*discō* 256, 423, 543, 547  
*discourse* 242  
*disgust* 272  
*disiungō* 243  
*disjoin* 243  
*disjunctive conj.* 327  
*d. questions* 637 sqq., 649  
*dismiss* 243  
*dismount* 259  
*displease* 236  
*displīcēō* 236, w. dat. 452  
*disprove* 244  
*dispute* 247  
*dissentiō* 261, co. 486  
*disserō* 242  
*dissimilis*, co. 450  
*dissimulō*, co. 547

*distant, be d.* 233  
*distineō* 236  
*distinguish* 250  
*distinguō* 250  
*distō* 233, co. 515 n.  
*distributives* 114 sqq., 118, 123  
*distrust* 220  
*dive* 243  
*divide* 236, 243, 270  
*dividō* 243  
*dō* 233, co. 461, 477, 583, operam  
     *dō* 582, 697  
*do* 247, 254; *do away w.* 287, *do*  
     *nothing but* 739 n.; *do with* 490  
*doceō* 236, co. 423, 551  
*doleō* 236, co. 422, 508, 552  
*domus* 66, 67, 529, 530  
*domō* 232  
*dōnec* 607, 726  
*dōnō*, co. 461  
*draw* 243, 261; *d. lots* 270  
*dress* 247  
*drink* 231, 245  
*drive* 247, *d. away* 247;  
     *d. back, out, toward* 244  
*dubitō*, co. 543, 650; *nōn d. quā*  
     619, 650, 710  
*dūcō* 243; *pres. im.* 226; *w. double*  
     *acc.* 428; *w. gen.* 457; *w. dat.* 477;  
     *uxōrem d.* 462  
*dum* 602, 607, 726, 740  
*dum modo* 740  
*duo* 116, 119  
*dux as appos.* 408  
*dwell* 265  
*dye* 243

## E.

*ē*, see *ex*  
*eā* 178  
*each* 164; *e. apiece* 123  
*eādem* 178  
*eat* 284  
*ēcastor* 334

*ecce* 334, co. 432 n.  
*ecquis* 160  
*ēdepol* 334  
*ēdō* (give out) 244  
*edō* (eat) 284  
*ēdūcō* 243, co. 486  
*effect (to)* 254, co. 707  
*efferō* 287  
*efficiō* 254, co. 429  
*efflōrēscō* 257  
*egeō* 236, co. 486  
*eheu* 334  
*ēia* 334  
*ēius* 134, 136, 138  
*ēliciō* 251  
*elude* 243  
*ēlūdō* 243  
*embark* 242, 248  
*embrace* 267  
*emerge* 243  
*ēmergō* 243  
*ēmineō* 236  
*ēminus* 351  
*emō* 247, co. 458  
*emotion, verbs of*, co. 422, 552  
*empty (to)* 254  
*ēn* 334  
*enclitics* 9, 323  
*end (to)* 247  
*endeavor*, co. 697  
*endure* 236, 287  
*engage in* 293; *be e. in* 265  
*engrave* 243  
*enim* 329; *is enim = quī* 689  
*enjoy* 267  
*enroll* 243  
*enter upon* 293  
*entitled* 568  
*envy* 239  
*eō* (v.) 290, 291, 585  
*eō* (adv.) 178, *w. gen.* 444; 695  
*eōdem* 178  
*epistolary tenses* 599

ergā 314, 440, 481  
 ergō 330, *position* 438  
 ĕripiō, co. 474  
*escape* 243, 274  
**est** 717, w. *gen.* 436  
*esteem*, co. 457; *e. highly* 247, 457  
*estimate* 236, co. 458  
 ĕsuriō 264  
**et** 119, 326; *et-et* 331; *et is=quī* 689  
*etenim* 329  
*etiam* 105, 326, 636  
*etiāmsī, etsī* 728, 729  
*euge* 334  
*euoē* 334  
 ĕvādō 243, co. 387  
 ĕvānēscō 258  
*ēvenit* 274; *bene, opportunē ē. quod*  
     719  
 ĕvertō 248  
*evident, to be e.* 274  
**ex**, ē 301, 323, 447, 508 n. 512, 514  
     524, 584  
*ex quō efficitur ut* 708  
*exalt* 287  
*exārdēscō* 257  
*excel* 233, 246  
*excellō* 246, cō. 420  
*exclamation* 378 n., 432, 564, 662 n.  
*excolō* 242  
*excūdō* 248  
*exerceō* 236, co. 502  
*exert* 244  
*exile* 244  
*exīstimor*, co. 387, 561  
*expedit* 274, co. 545  
*expend* 244  
*expergīscor* 269  
*experience (to)* 270  
*experior* 270, co. 646  
*expers* w. *gen.* 449  
*expiate* 249  
*explain* 242  
*explanatory adj.* 437; *e. remarks* 672  
*explōdō* 243  
*expōnō* 242

*express* 243  
*exprimō* 243  
*expectō* co. 646  
*exstinguō* 250  
*exsultō*, co. 422, 508  
*extend* 236, 244  
*extendō* 244  
*extollō* 287  
*extorqueō*, co. 474  
*extort* 243  
*extrā* 315, *as adv.* 324  
*extrēmus* 100, 400  
*exuō* 249

## F.

*fac ut, nē* 661 n.  
*facilis* 587, 588  
**faciō** 254; *pres. im.* 226; *accent of*  
     *cpds.* 9; co. 429, 457, 490, 570,  
     571; *faciō ut* 697; *facere nōn*  
     *possum ut* 713; *f. n. p. quīn* 713  
*factū* 587  
*fail* 254  
*fall* 244, 249, 267; *f. asleep, away, into*  
     *disuse* 257  
*fallit* 274, co. 416  
*fallō* 244  
*familia* 77  
*fandō audiō* 277  
*farewell* 277  
*fās*, co. 587  
*fasten* 243  
*fastidiōsus* w. *gen.* 449  
*fateor* 266, co. 547  
*faveō* 239., w. *dat.* 462  
*favor* 239  
**fear** 236, 249, 266; *cl. of t.* 609, 701  
*feel* 261, *t. cold* 237; *f. pain* 236  
*fell* 244  
 – *fer*, *cpds. in*, 31, 32  
*feriō* 264  
*ferō* 285, 286; *pres. im.* 226  
*fertur, feruntur* 561

fessus, co. 508  
 fēstinō, w. inf. 543  
*fetter* 261  
 fidō 220, 221, 620 n., co. 503  
*fight* 232, 263  
 figō 243  
 filia, filius 27, 35  
*fill* 235, 261, co. 503  
**final** cl. 693 sqq.  
*find* 263; *t. out* 262  
 findō 246  
 fingō 243  
*finite verb* 184 sqq.  
**fīō** 224, 295, co. 387, 429, 435, 490  
 fieri nōn potest ut 713; -quīn 713  
*fire, be on f.* 237; *set on f.* 248  
*first* 102, 409  
 fisus 221  
*fit, be f.* 274; *to f.* 242  
*fix* 243, co. 521  
 flāgitō, co. 425  
*flash* 237  
*flatter* 270  
 flectō 243  
*flee* 254  
 fleō 235  
*fling away* 254  
 flōreō 236  
*flow* 250  
 flūmen, *position* 405  
 fluō 250  
 fodiō 254  
*follow* 267  
**for** = in 297; = prō 305; = prae 306;  
     = ad 310; = ergā 314; ut 410, 411;  
     = dat. 460  
*forbid* 232  
*force* 247  
 fore ut 554, 555  
 forem 279 n.  
*forsee* 239  
*fortell* 243  
*form* 243

*form of address* 19, 35; *pos.* 35 n.  
**formation of words** 335 sqq.  
*forget* 256, 269, co. 451  
*forgive* 256  
 fors 76  
 forsitan 351, 656  
 fortasse 656  
*found* 244  
 foveō 239  
*fractions* 122  
 frangō 247  
 fremō 242  
 frētus, co. 508  
 frigeō 236  
*frighten* 236  
 fruor 237, co. 504, 580  
 fugiō 254, co. 419  
 fugit 274, co. 416  
 fulciō 261  
*fulfil* 233  
 fulgeō 237  
 fulget 273  
*full w. gen.* 449  
 fundō 247  
 fungor 267, co. 504, 580  
*furious, be f.* 248  
*furnish, co.* 503  
 furō 248  
**future tense** 590, 591, 592, 610, 612,  
     616  
 - *im.* 227  
 - *perfect* 591, 614  
 futūrum esse ut 554

## G.

*gain ground* 258  
*gather* 247  
 gaudeō 220, 221, 620 n., co. 422, 503,  
     552  
 gemō 242, co. 422  
*general relatives* 150, co. 629  
**gender** 12; *general rules* 13; *partic.*  
     *rules* 28, 38, 40, 46, 67, 71  
 - *of adj. and part. used as subst.* 49

**genitive** 18; *gen. pl.* in *um* 78  
 - *syntax* 433 sqq.  
 - *explicātivus* 434  
 - *possess.* 435 sqq.  
 - *of quality* 441  
 - *of the whole (partit.)* 442 sqq.  
 - *w. adj.* 449 sqq.  
 - *w. verbs* 451 sqq.  
 - *of price* 457  
 - *expr. prep. phrases* 401 n.  
 - *ger*, *cpds.* in 31, 32  
*gerō* 243, *mē gerō* 431  
**gerund** 538, 576 sqq.  
**gerundive** 212, 213, 578 sqq.  
*get* 254, 269; *g. by lot* 270.  
 - *sight of* 251  
*gignō* 242  
*gird* 248  
**give** 233, *co.* 4 8, 461, 583;  
 - *back* 244; *g. out* 244;  
 - *place* 243;  
 - *up* 244  
*gleam* 232  
*glide* 267  
*glōrior* 265, *co.* 422, 508  
*glory* 265  
*gnaw* 243  
*gnomic present* 594; *perfect* 598  
**go** 243, 290; *go away* 292;  
 - *back* 292; *go by* 293;  
 - *down* 244; *go forth* 292;  
 - *in quest of* 241;  
 - *to* 293; *go over* 293  
*gradior* 268  
*grant* 236, 249  
*grātiā* 438, 509 n., 581  
*grātis* 458  
*grātulor* 265  
*grātus*, *co.* 481  
*graze* 243, 256  
*Greek words* 81 sqq.  
*grind* 242  
*groan* 242  
**grow** 256; *g. dark* 273;

- *dumb* 258; *g. light* 273;  
 - *old* 257; *g. ripe* 258;  
 - *together* 257; *g. up* 257;  
 - *weak* 257  
*growl* 242  
*grūs* 80  
*guard* 266  
*guide* 243

## H.

**habeō** 236, *co.* 430, 457, 571;  
 - *quod* 677; *habeor*, *co.* 387, 430, 457  
*hāc* 178  
*haereō* 237  
*hail* 277  
*half close the eyes* 236  
*halt* 245  
*hammer out* 248  
*hang* 238, *co.* 526;  
 - *over* 236;  
 - *up* 244  
*happen* 274, 295; *co.* 707  
*harass* 236  
*harm* 236, *co.* 462  
*hasten to aid* 244  
*hate* 277  
*haud sciō an* 647  
*haul* 243  
*hauriō* 261  
*have* 236, *h. charge* 280  
*havē, avē* 277  
*heal* 266  
*hedge in* 261  
*help* 234, *co.* 462  
*hercule* 334  
*hesitate* 265  
*heu, heus* 334  
*hew* 244  
**hic** (*pron.*) 140; *w. consec. cl.* 705  
*hic (adv.)* 178  
*hidden, be h.* 236  
*hide* 244, *co.* 528  
*high* 100, 101, 531  
*hinc* 178; *h. efficitur ut* 708



*hinder* 280, co. 699, 711  
*hire* 243  
**historical tenses** 592  
   *h. perfect* 590, 592, 597, 604, 616  
   *h. present* 594. 616  
*hit* 264  
*hodiē* 351, 599  
*hold* 236; *h. forth* 243  
   *h. together* 236  
*honestus*, co. 587  
*honor* 242  
*hoot off* 243  
*hop* 260  
*hope*, co. 553  
*horreō* 236, co. 421  
**hortatory subj.** 660  
*hortor*, co. 697  
*hours* 121  
*how deep, high, long, wide*, 531  
 – *large, thick* 532, *far* 533  
*how long before or after* 537  
*hūc* 178  
*humus* 38, 529  
*hungry, be h.* 264

## I.

*iaceō* 236  
*iaciō* 254  
**iam**, i. diū, i. dūdum, 594, 595, 724  
 – i. p̄idem 594, 595  
*ibi, ibidem* 178  
*idcircō* 330 n., 695  
*idem* 143, 145: i. atque 738  
*ideō* 330 n., 695  
*idōneus*, co. 483, 677  
*igitur* 330; *is igitur-quī* 680  
*ignōrō*, co. 547  
*ignōscō* 256, w. dat. 465  
*ilicō* 351  
*illāc* 178

*illative conj.* 330  
*ille* 140, 403; *position* 399  
*illīc* 141, 178  
*illinc* 178  
*illūc* 178  
*imbuō* 249, co. 503  
*imitate* 265  
*imitor* 265, co. 419  
*immineō* 236  
*immō* 636  
**imparisyllables** 41  
*impart* 249, 270  
*impediō*, co. 699  
*impendeō* 238  
*impendō* 244  
**imperative** 195, 226, 661  
 – *future* i. 227, 653  
 – *of impers. verbs* 271 n., 661  
 – *defined* 625; *syntax* 651 sqq.  
*imperator, position* 404  
**imperfect** 591, 592, 595, 597 n.,  
   599, 613, 616, 628  
*imperītus* w. gen. 449  
*imperō*, co. 697, w. dat. 461, 465  
**impersonal** verbs 271 sqq.  
 – *i. expressions*, co. 540, 545, 558, 562  
 – *i. passive* 364, 466  
*impertiō* 270; *labōrem* i. 582  
*implant* 241  
*impōnō* 242, co. 521  
*impotēns* w. gen. 449  
*improve* 243  
**in** 297, 323, 518, sqq. 440, 481, 583,  
   584  
*incendō* 248  
**inchoatives** 255 sqq. 295 n., 591 n.  
*incidō, incidō* 244  
*incipiō* 277, co. 526, 543, 591 n.  
*inclūdō* 243  
*incolō* 242

**incorporation of anteced. and**

quisque 684

increase 237

Incredibilis, co. 587

increpō 232

incumbō 242

inde 178

*indeclinables* 13, 14, 53, 72, 175 n., 382*indefinite pron.* 156 sqq., 648;– *position of i. p.* 399; *i. subject* 384**independent tenses** 60 ) sqq.**indicative defined** 625;– *uses* 626 sqq.;– *in declar. cl.* 627 sqq.;– *in dir. quest.* 630 sqq.;– *independent clauses* 665, *i. cl.* 601

indicō, indicō 243

indidem 178

indigeō 236, co. 486

indignor, co. 552

indignus, co. 513, 677

**indirect question** 548, 605, 666 n.*i. discourse* 758 sqq., 666 n.;– *change of i. disc. to direct d.* 763

induce 237

inducō, co. 570

*indulgent*, be *i.* 237

indulgeō 237, w. dat. 462

induō 249

ineō 293, co. 418, 420

inferō 287, co. 461

infimus 100, 400

*infinite number* 120**infinitive** 538, 540 sqq.– *as subject* 540 sqq.;– *as object* 543;– *w. subj. acc.* 544 sqq.;– *w. subj. nom.* 561 sqq.;– *as pred. noun* 565;– *historical and descript.* 595 n.*inflection* 10 sqq.infrā 315; *as adv.* 324, co. 515

ingrātus, co. 481

ingravēscō 258

inhabit 242

iniciō, co. 461

inimicus, co. 481

iniūcundus, co. 481

iniussū 76, 510

inliciō 252

inquam 277

inscribo, co. 521

inseulpō 243, co. 521

inserō 241, 242

*insert* 242*inserted cl.* 606

insimulō, co. 452, 551

instar, *position* 438

instituō, co. 503, 543

*instruct*, co. 503

insuetus, co. 502

insum 280, co. 282

intellegō 247, 563

*intend*, co. 543

inter 321, 455, 583

intercludō 243, co. 486

interdicō, co. 486, 700

intereā 351

intereō 292

**interest** 274; co. 459, 641

interficiō 254

**interjections** 334**interrogative pron.** 151 sqq.

633, 642, 649

interrogō, co. 425, 426

intersum 280, co. 282

intrā 315

**intransitive verbs** 212, 229, 352,

385, 462, 580

– *passive* 275, 466– *defined* 361 sqq.*introductory cl.* 606*intrust* 243

intueor 266

*invade* 243

invādō 243, co. 418

*inveigle* 252

inveniō 263

inventū 587

*invest* 239  
*inveterāscō* 257  
*inveterātus* 223  
*invideō* 239, co. 462  
*iō* 334  
*iocus* 78  
**ipse** 143, 144; *as indir. reflex.* 767  
*irāscō* 269  
*irrēpō* 243  
*irrideō* 237  
**is** 142, 143, 133, 326, 677, 705  
*— instead of reflexive* 768  
*islands, co.* 518, 524, 527  
*iste* 140, 141  
*istāc, istīc, istinc, istūc* 178  
**it** (*indef. subj.*) 384  
*ita* 182, 636; *i. ut* 705  
*ita nōn* 770  
*itaque* 330  
*item, itidem* 182  
*iubeō* 237, co. 549, 561  
*iūcundus, co.* 587, 588  
*iūdicō, co.* 514, 561  
*iūgerum* 78  
*iungō* 243  
*Iuppiter* 80  
*iūrō* 222, co. 547, 553  
*iussū* 76, 510  
*iuvat* 274, co. 416  
*iuvenis, as appos.* 408  
*iūniōrēs* 104  
*iuvō* 234, co. 462  
*iūxtā* 312

## J.

*jeer* 243  
*join* 242, 243; *j. battle* 243  
**jussive subj.** 661

## K.

*keep off* 236; *k. secret* 236  
*kill* 244, 254  
*kindle* 248  
*knock down* 246  
*know* 256, 259, co. 543

## L.

*lābor* 267  
*labōrō, co.* 508  
*laccēsō* 241, co. 502  
*lacking, be l.* 280  
*lacking participles* 574 sqq.  
*laedō* 243; *w. acc.* 462  
*laetor, co.* 422, 508, 552  
*laetus, co.* 508  
*land* 242, 244, co. 528  
*largior* 270  
*last* 100, 102, 103, 400  
*lateō* 236, co. 528  
*Latīnus, position* 399  
*laugh* 237  
*lavō* 234  
*lay* 242, *l. hold* 248;  
*— l. oneself* 242  
*lead* 243; *l. forth* 243  
*lean* 267  
*leap* 260  
*learn* 256; *l. by hearsay* 277  
*leave off* 245; *l. behind* 247  
*left, be l.* 280  
*lēgātus as appos.* 408  
*legō* 247  
*let* 241  
*letters, tenses in* 599  
*levō, co.* 486  
*levy* 243  
*liber, co.* 487  
*liberō, co.* 486  
*libet* 273  
*liceor* 266

licet 273, co. 542, 728  
*lie* = *recline* 236; = *tell a lie* 270  
*lift* 287  
*light, be l.* 237  
*like* = *ut* 410; = *instar* 438  
   - *similis* 450  
*likely* 647  
*liquet* 274  
*live* 250  
**locative** 66, 518  
*locō*, co. 521, 583  
*locus* 78, co. 520  
*lodge* 220  
*long for* 236, 251  
*longē* w. *superl.* 105  
*longius* 493  
**look** at 266; *l. for* 241;  
   - *l. to* 266; *l. up to* 251  
*loose* 249  
*loquor* 267, co. 502  
*lose* 243, *l. courage* 244  
*lūceō* 237  
*lūcēscit, lūcet* 273  
*lūdō* 243, co. 502  
*lūgeō* 237, co. 422  
*lūō* 249  
*lure forth* 251  
*lūxuria* 77

## M.

*maereō* 236, co. 422, 508  
*magis* 94, 95, 112, 113  
*magnam partem* 414  
*magnus*, used w. *gen.* of *qual.* 441 n.  
*māior* 104, 494  
**make** 254, co. 428  
   - *be made* 295, co. 387  
   - *m. war* 287; *m. a contract* 220  
*male dicō*, co. 462  
*mālim, māllem* 656, 659  
*mālō* 288, 289, co. 543, 550  
*maneō* 237, co. 387  
*manifest, be m.* 274  
*marry* 243

*master w. gen.* 449  
*māteria* 77  
*mātūrēscō* 258  
*mātūrō* w. *inf.* 543  
*maximē* 94, 112, 113  
*measure* 270  
*medeor* 266, co. 462  
*meditor* 219, w. *inf.* 543  
*medius* 400  
*mē dīus fidius* 334  
*meet* 268  
*memini* 287, co. 451, 616, 620 n.  
*mend* 261  
*mentior* 270  
*mereor* 220  
   - *met* 135  
*mētior* 270, co. 514  
*metō* 243  
*metuō* 249, co. 473, 701  
*meus* 35, 136, 436  
*micō* 232  
**might** 627  
*mīles as appos.* 408  
*mīlia* 116, co. 117  
*mīllēnsimus, mīlliēns* 120  
*mindful, co.* 451  
*minimē* 636  
*ministrō*, w. *dat.* 462  
*minitor, minor* 265, co. 461, 547, 553  
*minor (nātū)* 104, 494  
*minuō* 249  
*minus* 493  
*mīrābilis* 587  
*mīror*, co. 422, 552  
*misceō* 236  
*misereor* 266  
*miseret* 272, co. 415  
*miseror* 266  
*misuse* 267  
*mittō* 243, co. 478, 583, 585  
*mix* 236  
*mōbilia* 15, 388  
*mock* 243  
*moderor*, co. 473

**modes of verb** 625 sqq.  
 – in indir. discourse 760 sqq.  
*modō* 498, 499  
*modo* 331, 740, 741; m. – m. 331  
*moisten* 249  
*mōlior* 270  
*molō* 242  
*moneō*, co. 426, 548  
*months* 60  
*mordeō* 238  
*more, most* 87, 105, 111, 112  
*mōre* 510  
*mrior* 268  
*moror* 265  
*mould* 243  
*mount* 248  
*mourn* 236, 237  
*move* 239  
*moveō* 239, locō m. 486  
*mow* 243  
*multiplication table* 126  
*multiplicatives* 127  
*multō* (v.), co. 453  
*multō* (adv.), 105, 515, 537  
*multus* 98  
*must*, co. 543

## N.

*nam, namque* 329  
*name*, co. 428, be n. 387  
*nanciācor* 269  
**narrative tenses** 590, 594  
*nāscor* 269  
*nātū* 76  
*nātus*, co. 489, 494  
 – **ne** 9, 141, 635, 645, 649;  
 – **ne** – **an** 637  
**nē** 657, 660, 661, 663, 695, 697, 699,  
 701, 740, 770; *nē nōn* 701  
*nē* (interj.) 334  
*nec* – *nec* 331  
*necesāriō longius* 492  
*necessārius ad* 483

*necesse est*, co. 546  
*necne* 638, 649  
*nēdum* 664  
*need* 236  
**negatives** 770: *nōn*, *nē*, *nēmō*,  
 n. *nōn*, *nihil* &c.  
 – w. *haud sciō an* 647;  
 – w. *fut. im.* 653;  
 – in *declar. subj.* 656, 657;  
 – in *volit. subj.* 659, 660, 662, 663;  
 – in *rel. cl.* 673;  
 – in *correl. cl.* 682;  
 – continuation of *neg.* 696, 697;  
 – in *cl. of result* 704; See 722, 727, 740  
*neglect* 247  
*neglegō* 247, w. *inf.* 543  
*negō*, co. 547, 560  
*nēmō* 161, 162, 647  
*nēmō nōn* 770  
*neō* 235  
*neque* 326, 661 n., 696 n. – n. 331;  
 n. *quisquam* 770  
*nequeō* 294  
*nē* – *quidem* 326  
*nesciō* 259; n. *quis* 648  
*nescius*, w. *gen.* 449  
*neuter* 5, 161, 169, 172  
**neuter pron. as obj.** 413;  
 – *as subj.* 415  
**neutral passive verbs** 224  
*nēve* 660, 661, 696, 697  
*nī* 751; *nihil* 161, 414, 647, 661 n.  
*nihil nōn* 770; n. *umquam* &c. 770  
*ningit* 273  
**nisi** 156, 732, 739, 751;  
 – n. *forte* 629; n. *after alius* 732  
 – n. *vērō* 629; *quod nisi* 690  
*niteō* 236  
*nītor* 267, co. 504, 697  
*noceō* 236, w. *dat.* 462  
*nod assent* 249  
**nōlī** 661  
*nōlim, nōllem* 656, 659  
*nōlō* 288, 289, 543, 550, 560



- nōmen est, co. 468  
**nominative** 18, 24; syntax 380 sqq.  
 - double n. 387, 428, 583 n.  
 - **w. inf.** 561 sqq.  
 nōmine 454, 511  
**nōn** 647, 656, 657, 662, 673, 727;  
 n. nihil 770, 414;  
 n. quia, n. quō, n. quod 667;  
 n. iam, n. nēmō, n. ita, n. nūllus  
 etc. 770  
 nōndum 724  
 nōne 635, 645  
 nōs omnēs 132, 448  
 nōscō 256  
*noun* 10  
*noun forms of verb* 538 sqq.  
*nourish* 242  
 nōvī 256, 616, 547 n.  
 nūbō 243, co. 462  
 nūdō, co. 486  
 nūdiustertius 351  
 nūdus, co. 487  
 nūllus 161, 169, 647  
 nūllus nōn 770  
**num** 156, 160, 635, 645, 650  
 n. quis 160  
*numbers of decl.* 17  
*numerals* 114 sqq.  
*numeral adj.* w. ex, dē 447  
 - as inner obj. 413  
*numeral adv.* 114 sqq.  
 numerō 411  
 numerō (v.), co. 521  
 numquam 180, 647, 770  
 n. nōn 770  
 nunc 180  
 nūntiō, co. 547, 563  
 nūpta 223  
 nusquam 178, w. gen. 444
- O.**
- ob 313, 323, 509 n., 583  
 obdormiscō 257  
 obdūrēscō 258  
 obeō 293  
 obey 236, co. 462  
**object** 360 sqq.  
 - direct o. 362, 386, 412  
 - indir. o. 363, 460 sqq.  
 - inner o. 362, 413, 414  
 - outer o. 362, 415 sqq.  
*objective genitive* 439  
 - complement 367  
 oblinō 241  
 obliviscor 269, co. 451, 616  
 obmūtēscō 258  
 obruō 249  
 obsecrō, co. 697  
 obsequor, co. 419 n., 462  
*observe* 248  
 obsideō 239  
 obsolēscō 257; obsolūtus 223  
 obstō, co. 699  
 obsum 280, co. 282, 462  
*obtain* 267  
 obtemperō, w. dat. 462  
 obtēstor, co. 697  
 obtineō 236  
 obtrectō, co. 462  
 obtundō 246  
 occidō, occidō 244  
 occultō, co. 528  
*occupy* 248  
 o'clock 121  
 ōdī 277  
*offend* 243  
*offer* 236, 243, 287  
 offerō 287  
 ohē 334  
 old 104, 494, 536  
 oleō 236  
 ōlim 181  
 omittō, w. inf. 543  
**one**, indef. subj. 384  
 onerō, co. 503  
 opem ferō, w. dat. 462  
*open* 254, 260  
 operiō 260, 352

opinātus 219  
 opīniōne celerius 492  
 opitulus 265  
 oportet 272, co. 546  
 opperit 270  
 opprimō 243  
 (ops) 76  
**optative subj.** 659  
 optimus 587; o. quisque 164  
 optō, co. 543, 697  
**opus est**, co. 506, 507  
 or 639  
 ōrātiō oblīqua, *see indirect disc.*  
 or not 638, 649  
 orbō, co. 486  
 ordinals 114 sqq., 118, 121  
 - w. gen. 416  
 - position 399  
 ōrdior 270, 526  
 orior 270, co. 526  
 ōrnō, co. 503  
 ōrō, co. 426, 697  
 ortus, co. 489  
 ostendō 244, 563  
**ought** 236, 272, 627  
 outlaw 243  
 overhang 238  
 overturn 248  
 overwhelm 248  
 owe 236

## P.

paciscor 220  
 paenitet 272, co. 415  
 paint 243  
 pandō 248  
 pār, w. ger. 582  
 - atque 738  
 parātus, co. 543, 583  
 parcō 244, co. 462, 473  
 pārēō 236, w. dat. 462  
 pariō 253  
 parisyllables 41  
 parō, co. 419, 543  
 part 243

particeps w. gen. 419  
 particip. coniūctum, 572 sqq.  
**participles** decl. 63;  
 - compared 88;  
 - used as subst. 49;  
 - used as adj. 223;  
 - w. gen. 449;  
 - fut. pass p. 469 sqq.;  
 - perf. pass. p. 469 sqq.;  
 - p. a noun form 538;  
 - uses 566 sqq.; lacking p. 574 sq.  
 - **appos.** p. 570, 572 sqq.;  
 - transl. of p. 572 sqq  
 particles 10  
 partior 270, 219  
 partitive gen. 442 sqq.  
 parum w. gen. 444  
 pāscō 256  
**passive of deponents** 218, 265 sqq.  
 - of intrans. v. 364, 466, 275;  
 - impersonal p. 364;  
 - personal p. 364;  
 - p. of doceō 423;  
 - p. of transport 424;  
 - p. part. 222, 223, 575  
**past perfect** 591  
 patefaciō 254  
 pateō 236  
 patet 274  
 patior 268, co. 549  
 paulō 105, 515, 537  
 paulum 111  
 pay 244, 249  
 pelliciō 252  
 pellō 244  
 pendeō 238, co. 526  
 pendō 244  
 penes 311  
 people, indef. subj. 384  
 per 320, 501  
 peragō 247  
 peragrō, co. 418  
 perceive, co. 547, 548  
 percellō 246  
 pererēbrēscō 258

- percutiō 252  
 perdō 292  
 pereō 224, 292  
*perfect (to)* 242  
**perfect (tense)** 596 sqq., 574  
 perficiō 254, 295 n.  
*perform* 267  
 perfruo 267  
 pergō 243, w. inf. 543  
*perhaps* 639  
 perhorrēscō 257  
 periculum est, co. 701  
 perinde ac 738  
**period** 778  
**periphrastic conj.** 211, 591  
*perish* 292  
 peritus w. gen. 449  
 perlegō 247  
*permit*, co. 697  
 permittō, co. 697  
 permulcēō 237  
 perpetio 268  
 perseverō, w. inf. 543  
 persolvō 249  
**personal pron.** 130 sqq.;  
 – *partitive gen. of p. p.* 443;  
 – *possess. gen.* 435;  
 – *not expressed* 383  
 persuādeō 237, co. 462, 548;  
 – *passive* 466  
 pertimēscō 257  
 pertineō 236  
 perveniō 263, co. 528  
 petō 241, co. 425, 697  
*phonetic changes* 347 n.  
*phonology* 1 sqq.  
*pierce* 252  
 piget 272, co. 415  
 pingō 243  
*pity* 266, 272  
**place** 242, co. 518 sqq.  
 – *p in authority* 254;  
 – *p. oneself* 245; *p. upon* 242  
 placeō 236, w. dat. 462  
 placet 274, co. 698  
*plant* 241  
 plaudō 243  
*play* 243  
*please* 236, 274; w. dat. 462  
 plēbs 79  
 plēnus w. gen. 449, 503  
 plērique 99  
 – *plex, adj. in*, 127  
*pluck* 243, 248  
 pluit 273  
*plunder* 251  
**pluperfect** 591, 592, 599, 613, 616  
*plural* 17, 70 n.  
 plurālia tantum 74, 75, 123, 173  
 plus 99, 493  
*point out* 243  
 polleō 236  
 polliceor 266, co. 547, 553  
*polysyndeton* 326  
 pōnō 242, co. 521  
 porrigō 243  
*portray* 243  
 poscō 256, co. 425  
**position of prep.** 322  
 – *of enclit.* 523  
 – *of attrib.* 399 sqq.  
 – *of possess. pron.* 399  
 – *of apos.* 404 sqq.  
 – *of clauses* 776  
 – See word – order and sentence – structure)  
*possess* 239  
*possessive gen.* 435 sqq.  
*possessive pron.* 136 sqq.  
 – *appos. to p. p.* 389, 406  
 possideō 239  
 possidō 248  
 possum 283  
 – *expr. subsequ. act.* 553, co. 543, 619 n.  
 post 317, 324, 537, 736  
 postea 180  
 posteaquam 602, 726  
 posthac 180  
 postquam 602, 622, 726

- postulō co. 425, 455, 697  
*potent, be p.* 236  
 potior 270, co. 504, 580  
 pōtō 231; pōtus 222  
 potius quam 705 n.  
*pour* 247  
 prae 306, 509  
 praebeō 236, co. 431  
 praecipio, co. 697  
 praedicō, praedicō 243  
 praeditus, co. 503  
 praeferō 287, co. 543  
 praeficiō 254, co. 461, 582  
 praesēns 280  
 praesertim cum 715  
 praestat 274  
 praestō 233, co. 420, 431, 515  
 praesum 280, co. 282, 465, 582  
 praeter 306, 317, in cpds. 417  
 praetereō 293  
 praeterit 274, co. 416  
 praeteritus 223  
 praetermittō, w. inf. 543  
 praetor as appos. 403  
*praise* 721, *praising attr.* 403  
 prandeō 240, prānsus 222  
 precor 265, co. 697  
**predicate** 356, 385 sqq.  
 – *agreem.* 391, 393, 394; *p. noun* 387  
 – *part. used as p.* 569  
*prefer* 242, 287, 288  
 prehendō 248  
 premō 243  
*prepare, co.* 543  
**prepositions** 296 sqq.  
 – *place of p.* 322, 299 n.  
 – *used as adv.* 324  
*prepositional phrases as attr.* 401  
*present, be p.* 280  
**present tense** 590 sqq. 604, 616.  
**present perfect** 591, 592, 596, 604, 605, 616  
*press* 237, 243  
*prevent, co.* 699 n.  
**previous action** 539, 600, 610, 618  
 (prex) 76  
 primō, primum 129; primus 400  
*principal parts* 192, 193  
**principal tenses** 592, 616 sqq.  
 priusquam 726  
 privō, co. 486  
 prō (prep.) 305, 411, 430, 584  
 prō (interj.) 334  
 prō nihilō 457  
*probably* 647  
*proceed* 243  
*proclaim* 243  
 prōcumbō 242  
 prōdeō 292  
 prō eō ac 738  
 profectō 351  
 proficiscor 269, co. 585  
 prōfligō 243  
 prohibeō 236, co. 486, 551, 561, 699 n.  
*prohibitive subj.* 661  
 prōiciō 254  
 proinde 330; p. ac 728; p. ac sī 731  
*promise* 238, 266, co. 553  
 prōmō 247  
*pronominal adj.* 169 sqq.; – *p. adv.* 178 sqq.  
**pronouns** 130 sqq.  
 – *personal p.* 130 sqq.  
 – *possessive p.* 136 sqq.  
 – *demonstrative p.* 140 sqq.  
 – *determinative p.* 142 sqq.  
 – *relative p.* 146 sqq, 673  
 – *interrogative p.* 151 sqq.  
 – *indefinite p.* 156 sqq.  
 – *correlative p.* 175 sqq.  
 – *p. as subj. or obj.* 396, 397  
 – *agreem. of p.* 397, 398  
 – *acc. of neuter p.* 413  
 – *neuter sing. w. gen.* 444  
 – *in indir. discourse* 759  
**pronunciation** 4, 5  
*prop up* 261  
*prope* 312; as adv. 324  
 properō, co. 543, 585  
 propior 312  
 proprius 437

propter 312, 509 n.  
 propterea 330 n., 695  
**prosody** 779 sqq.  
 prōspiciō, co. 473  
 prōsternō 241  
*prostrate* 241; *p. oneself* 242  
 prōsum 280, 281;  
 – w. dat. 282, 462  
**protasis** 742, 744, 746, 749  
*protect* 243, co. 486  
*prove* 249  
*provide* 239  
 prōvideō 239, co. 473, 557  
*provoke* 241  
 proximus 312  
 proximum est ut 708  
 – pte 190  
 pudet 272, co. 415  
*puer as appos.* 408  
*puncture* 244  
 pungō 244  
*punish* 248  
**purpose** 199, 460, 483, 548, 585, 586,  
 619, 693 sqq. 711  
*push* 244  
**put** 242; *p. away* 244; *p. into* 242;  
*p. off* 249, 287; *p. on* 249; *p. out*  
 250; *p. to shame* 272  
 putō, co. 457, 547, 560  
 putor, co. 387, 561

## Q.

quā 178, 676  
 quaerō 241, co. 425, 645  
 quaesō 277, 654  
 quābis 175, 673  
 quālisumque, co. 629  
**quality**, *gen. and abl. of* 441  
 quam 105, 182, 732, 735 sqq.;  
 – *abl. instead of quam* 491  
 quam diū 180, 607, 726  
 quam nōn 770  
 quam ob rem 330 n.  
 quam possum 737

quamquam 728, 729  
 quamvis 728, 729  
 quandō 180  
 quandōquidem 715  
**quantity of syll. and vowels** 8, 779  
 sqq.  
 quantō – tantō 682  
 quantum 175, 177  
 quantus 175, 673  
 quantuscumque, co. 629  
 quāpropter 330 n.  
 quasi 410 n., 731  
 – que 9, 323, 326  
 quem ad modum 732, 733  
 queō 294  
 queror 267, co. 422, 552  
**questions** 378, 630 sqq.  
 – **direct** *qu.* 631 sqq.;  
 – *real* 631; *rhetorical* 632;  
 – *word qu.* 633; *sentence qu.* 634 sqq.;  
 – *mode* 626, 656, 657, 662  
 – **indirect** *qu.* 377, 548, 640 sqq.  
 – *word qu.* 642 sqq.; *sentence qu.* 645;  
 – *after dubitō* 650;  
 – *tenses* 605, 619; *mode* 641:  
 – *relat. cl. and indir. qu.* 643  
**quī** (rel.) 146, 673  
 – *in cl. of purpose* 586;  
 – *is quī, sunt quī* 677  
 quī (interr.) 151, 152  
 quī (indef.) 156, 715  
 quī 155  
 quia 668, 715; quod qu. 690  
 quicquam 162 n.  
 quicumque 150, co. 629  
 quidam 163; w. ex, dē 447; 677  
 quiescō 256  
**quīn**, *atter nōn dubitō* 650;  
 = *pray* 654;  
 – *after neg. refuse etc.* 699 n.;  
 = *why not* 709; = *that* 710;  
 = *nē or quōminus* 711;  
 = *quī nōn* 712; = *ut nōn* 713  
 quīn – clauses 666, 709 sqq.



quīnam 154  
 quippe cum 715; qu. quī 678  
**quis** (*interr.*) 151  
     (*indef.*) 156, 656; (*correl.*) 175  
 quisnam 154  
 quispiam 159, 656  
 quisquam 161, 656  
**quisque** 164, 167, 684, *w. gen.* 446.  
 quisquis 150, co. 629  
*quiver* 232  
 quīvis 168  
 quō 178, 676, 695  
     quō-eō 515, 682, 683  
 quoad 607, 726  
 quōcircā 330 n.  
 quōcumque 178  
 quod (*correl.*) 175  
 quod (*conj.*) 607, 715  
 - *w. subj.* 608  
 - est quod 677  
 - quod sciam 680  
 - quod sī 690, 751  
 quōminus 699  
 quondam 181  
 quoniam 715; quod qu. 690  
 quōquam 178  
 quoque 326  
 quot 175, 673  
 quotiēns 180, 610  
 quotiēnscumque, co. 629  
 quotquot 176, co. 629  
 quotus quisque 164

## R.

rādō 243  
*rain* 273  
*raise* 287  
 rapiō 251  
*rather* 89, 327  
*ratify* 261  
*reach* 244, 263  
*read* 247  
*reap* 243  
*rebuke* 232  
*rebut* 244  
*receive* 254  
 recidō 244

**reciprocals** 769

*recline* 232  
*recordor* 277, co. 451  
*recurrō* 244  
*recūsō*, co. 699  
*redarguō* 249  
*reddō* 244, co. 429, 461  
*redeō* 292, co. 502  
*redundō*, co. 503  
*refellō* 244  
*referciō* 261  
*referō* 287  
*rēfert* 272, co. 459, 641  
*refertus*, co. 503  
*reficiō* 264  
**reflexive pron.** 130, 138, 144  
 - *verbs* 352  
 - *direct & indirect reflexives* 764 sqq.  
 - **ipse and is instead of r.** 768  
*refōrmidō*, co. 421  
*refrain* 239; co. 711  
*refuse* 249, co. 699  
*refute* 249  
*regain health* 257  
*regard*, co. 428, 430; *be r.* 387  
*regō* 243  
*reject* 249  
*rejoice* 220  
**relative cl.** 673 sqq.  
 - *force of r. cl.* 674  
 - *indicative cl.* 675  
 - *subj. cl.* 676  
 - *conditional r. cl.* 676 n.  
 - *expr. cause* 678  
 - *expr. concession, opposition* 679  
 - *expr. restriction* 680  
 - *result* 681  
 - *combination of r. cl.* 686  
 - *coordination* 687  
 - *subordination* 688  
 - *replacing subst., part., phrases* 691  
 - *r. cl. and indir. questions* 643  
**relative pron.** 146 sqq., 607, 610  
 - *in inserted cl.* 685  
 - *as connectives* 374, 689  
**relative time** 589

relinquo 247, co. 478, 583  
 rely 220  
 remain 237, co. 274, 280, 387  
 remember 269, 277  
 remind 235, co. 451  
 reminiscor 269, 277  
 rend 247  
 render 243  
 rent 243  
 reor 266, 620 n.  
 repair 261  
**repeated action** 595, 610, 612, 613  
 repellō 244, co. 486  
 repent 272  
 reperio 262, co. 547, 563  
 report 287  
 repositō 256, co. 425  
 repose 256  
 represent, co. 570  
 repuerascō 253  
 requies 79  
 resign 292  
 resist 245  
 resistō 245, w. dat. 463  
 rescindō 246  
 respondeō 238, co. 465, 547  
 respuō 249  
 restat 274; r. ut 708  
 restore 254  
**result, cl. of r.** 199, 604, 619, 681, 702  
 retain 236  
 retard 265  
 reticeō 236  
 retineō 236  
 retundō 246  
 return 220; r. *thanks* 287  
 rē vērā 511  
 revere 266  
 revertor 220, 221  
 revive 257  
 reviviscō 257  
 reward 254  
 rēx, *position* 465  
 rhetorical word – order 774  
 rhetorical question 632

rhythm 775  
 ride 243  
 rīdeō 237, co. 421  
 rise 243, 270  
 rivers in a, *gender* 16 n.  
 rob 251  
 rōdō 243  
 rogō, co. 425, 426, 697  
 – sententiam r. 427  
 roll 249  
 Rōmānus, *position*, 399  
 rouse 235  
 rout 245  
**route**, co. 523  
 rub 241  
 ruin 292  
 rule 243  
**rules of gender** 12, 13, 28, 38, 46, 67, 71  
 rumble 242  
 run 244  
 ruō 249  
 rūs 529  
 rush 249

## S.

sacer, co. 437  
 saepiō 261  
 saliō 260  
 salvē 277  
 sancio 261  
 sānē 636  
 sapiō 251  
 sarcio 261  
 satis w. *gen.* 444  
 savor of 251  
**say** 243, co. 547, 548  
 scalpō 243  
 scandō 248  
 scilicet 351  
 sciundō 246  
**sciō** 259; *im.* 227; co. 543, 547;  
 haud sciō an 647  
 sciscō 257  
 scorch 243  
 scrape 243

- scribō 243; co. 461, 547, 563  
 secō 232  
**secondary tenses** 592, 616 sqq.  
 secundum 317  
*secure possession* 236  
 secus atque 738  
 sed 328; sed sī 751  
 sedeō 239  
*seduce* 252  
*see* 239; *see into* 247  
*seek* 241  
*seem*, co. 387  
 sēiungō, co. 486  
*seize* 241, 254  
*self* 144  
*sell* 292, cō. 458  
**semideponents** 220, 221  
*send* 243; *send for* 241  
 senex as appos. 408  
 senior 104  
**sentence, syntax** 354 sqq.  
 – *simple s.* 369  
 – *cpd. s.* 370; *complex s.* 373  
 – *s. question* 634 sqq.  
 – **structure** 775 sqq.  
 sentiō 261, co. 547  
*separate* 243, 247  
*separation of syllables* 7  
 sēparō, co. 486  
 sepeliō 259  
**sequence of tenses** 607 sqq.  
 – *in depend. indic. cl.* 607 sqq.  
 – *in depend. subj. el.* 616 sqq.  
 – *after inf.* 620 sqq.  
 – *in depend. congr., postquam* – and  
 simulac - cl. 622 sqq.  
 – *in cl. depend. on depend. cl.* 624 sqq.  
 sequitur ut 708  
 sequor 267, 620 n., co. 419  
 serō 241  
 serpō 243  
 serve 274  
 serviō, w. dat. 462  
 sescenti = *infinite* 120  
**set** 242; *set about* 270;  
 – *set in motion* 270; *set on fire* 248  
 – *set on shore* 242; *set out* 269  
 – *set sail* 250; *set straight* 243  
 – *set up* 249  
*shake* 252  
*share* 270  
*sharing, w. gen.* 449  
*sharpen* 249  
*shave* 238, 243  
*shine* 236  
*should* 627  
*shove* 243  
*show* 244  
*shudder* 236  
*shut up* 243  
 sī 607, 610, 613, 646, 690, 729, 751, 752  
 – sī forte 751; sī minus 751, 752  
 – sī nōn 751, 752  
 sic 182, 730; w. consec. cl. 705  
 sicut 732, 733  
*side with, co.* 526  
*sigh* 242  
*silent, be s.* 236  
 sileō 236  
 similis, c. 450; s. ac 738  
 simulac, simul atque 602, 610, 622, 726  
 simulō, co. 547  
 sīn 752  
*since* 410  
 sine 303  
*sing* 244  
*singular* 17  
 singulāria tantum 73  
 singulī 124  
*sink* 243  
 sinō 241, co. 549, 561  
 siquidem 715  
 sīs 289, 654  
*sit* 239; *sit down* 248  
 sive 327; s. – s. 331, co. 629  
*skilled, w. gen.* 449

slay 244  
 slight 247  
 slope 248  
 smile 237  
 snatch 251  
 snow 273  
 so-called 568  
 sōdcs 654  
 soleō 220, co. 543, 596  
**sōlus** 169, as *appos.* 409  
 – *w. cl. of charact.* 677  
 solvō 249, co. 486  
 sonō 232  
 soothe 237  
 sortior 270  
 sound 232, 244  
 sow 241  
**space, relations of** 518 sqq.  
 spare 244  
 spargō 243  
 speak 267  
 spend 242, 247  
 spernō 241  
 spērō, co. 419, 547, 553  
 spin 235  
 splendeō 236  
 split 246  
 spoil 247  
 spoliō, co. 486  
 spondeō 238  
 sponte 76, 510  
 spread out 248  
 spurn 241, 249  
 stab 254  
**stand** 233; *st. around* 233;  
 – *st. open* 236; *st. out* 236;  
 – *st. up* 243  
 statuō 249, co. 521, 698; *statuī* 596  
**stem** 21; *of verbs* 187  
 step 268  
 sternō 241  
 sting 244  
 stīpātus, co. 505  
 etō 233, co. 458, 522, 526, 699  
 strengthened *pron.* 135, 139, 141, 154

strengthening of degrees 105  
 strepō 242  
 stretch 244, 248  
 strew 243  
 strike 252, 264; *s. down* 243  
 stringō 243  
 strip off 243  
 strive 267  
 strong, *be s.* 236  
 struō 250  
 studeō 236, co. 462, 543, 582  
 studiōsus *w. gen.* 449  
 stuff 261  
 stupeō 236  
 suādēō 237, co. 697  
**sub** 298, 323  
 subeō 293, co. 418  
 subigō 247  
**subject** 201, 355;  
 – *s. nom.* 360, 380 sqq.  
 – *indef. s.* 384;  
 – *agreem.* 391 sqq.  
 – *s. complement* 366  
 subjective *genitive* 439  
 subjugate 247  
**subjunctive** 199; *defined* 625  
 – *s. of future* 212, 213  
 – *s. instead of fut. im.* 227;  
 – *s. in independ. cl.* 655 sqq.  
 – *declarative s.* 655 sqq.  
 – *expr. certainty, likelihood, possibility* 656; *propriety, oblig.* 657  
 – *volitive s.* 658  
 – *optative s.* 659  
 – *hortatory s.* 660  
 – *jussive, prohibitive s.* 661  
 – *expr. delib., surprise, indign.* 662  
 – *concessive s.* 663  
 – *s. in depend. cl.* 665 sqq.  
 – *expr. another's thought* 666;  
 – *by attraction* 670 sqq.  
**subordinate conj.** 325, 332 sqq.  
**subsequent action** 539, 600, 615, 619  
 subsist 269

## XXVIII

## INDEX

subsum 280, co. 282  
 subveniō 263, w. dat. 462  
 succēdō, co. 463  
 succendō 248  
 succurrō 244, w. dat. 462  
*suffer* 268, 287  
 sufferō 287  
 suī, sibi, sē, 134, 144, 759, 764, 766  
*suit* 273  
**sum** 278 sqq.; *as copula* 387  
 - *with adv.* 387 n.  
 - *=am worth* 457  
 - *w. (double) dat.* 477  
 - *=have* 467  
*summon* 235, 241  
*summum* 414  
*summus* 100, 400, w. *gen.* 441  
*sūmō* 247  
*super* 319  
**superlative** 68 sqq.; w. *gen.* 446  
*supersedē* 239, co. 486  
*supersum* 280, co. 282  
**supine** 200, 538  
 - *in um* 585, *in ū* 587  
*supplicō*, co. 462  
*supposing* 265  
*suprā* 315, 319  
 - *as adv.* 324; co. 515 n.  
*surgō* 243  
*surnames* 403  
*surprise* 248  
*surrender* 244  
*surround* 233, 245  
*sūs* 80  
*suscēnseō* 236  
*suscipiō* 254; w. *ger.* 580, 583  
*suspect* 251  
*suspendō* 244, co. 526  
*suspiciō* 251  
*suspikor* 251  
*sustineō* 236  
**suus & cius** 138 sqq., 764 sqq.  
*stick* 237  
*style* 258  
*swear*, co. 553  
**syllables** 6, 7, 779 sqq.  
*synopsis of pres. system* 197  
 - *of perfect s.* 195

- *of partic. s.* 193  
 - *of sequence of t.* 332  
*syntax* 353 sqq.

## T.

*taceō* 236  
*taedet* 272, co. 415  
**take** 247, 254, co. 428  
 - *away* 247, co. 474  
 - *care* 239, 242  
 - *out* 247  
 - *pains* 236  
 - *up* 254  
*tālis* 175, 677; w. *consec. cl.* 705  
*talk* 267  
*tam* 184, 677; w. *consec. cl.* 705  
 - *tam diū* 180  
*tame* 232  
*tamen* 328, 727  
 - *is tamen=quī* 689  
*tametsi* 728  
*tamquam* 410 n.  
*tandem* 154  
*tangō* 244  
*tantopere*, w. *consec. cl.* 705  
*tantum* 175, 177  
 - *t. abest ut* 706  
*tantundem* 176  
*tantus* 175, 177; w. *gen.* 441  
 - *w. consec. cl.* 705  
*tarry* 265  
*teach* 236, co. 423  
*tear asunder* 246  
 - *t. down* 246  
 - *t. out* 248  
*tegō* 243  
*temperō*, co. 473  
*temptō*, co. 646  
*tendō* 244  
*teneō* 236, co. 523, 571  
**tenses, of noun forms of verb** 539  
 sqq.  
 - *defined* 589  
 - *aoristic t.* 590  
 - *descriptive t.* 591  
 - *principal & second. t.* 592, 616  
 - *uses of t.* 594 sqq.



- *epistolary t.* 599;  
 - *in depend. cl.* 600 sqq.;  
 - **independ. t.** 332, 601 sqq.;  
 - *sequence of t.* 607 sqq.  
 - *in indir. discourse* 760 sqq.  
**tenus** 307  
**ternī** 124, 125  
**terō** 241  
**terrā marīque** 523  
**terreō** 236  
**terrify** 254  
**test** 270  
**texō** 242  
**thank** 721  
**the - the** 682  
**therefore** 330  
*they (indef. subj.)* 384  
*threaten* 238, 265, co. 553  
*throw* 254; *th. about* 243  
 - *th. away* 254; *th. up* 242  
*thrust* 243  
*thunder* 232, 273  
*tie together* 243  
**time, relations of,** 534 sqq.  
**timeō** 236, co. 473, 543, 701  
**tinge** 243  
**tingō** 243  
**tollō** 287  
**tonat** 273  
**tondeō** 238  
**tonō** 232  
**too** 87, 108, 111  
**tope** 231  
**torqueō** 237  
**torture** 237  
**tot** 175  
**totidem** 176  
**totiēns** 180  
**tōtus** 169; *as appos.* 409  
 - *w. names of places* 520  
**touch** 244  
**towns** co. 518 sqq.  
**trāditur, trāduntur** 561  
**trādō** 244, co. 583  
**trahō** 243

**trāns** 316, *in cpds.* 417  
**trāseō** 293  
*transition, phrases of,* 708  
**transitive verbs, def.** 360, 362 n.  
 - *passive of t. v.* 212, 364  
 - *t. v. as predic.* 386  
 - *syntax* 413 sqq.  
 - *w. gerund & gerundive* 580  
**translate** 243  
**transmit** 244  
*transport, co.* 424  
*travel over* 293  
**tremble** 242  
**tremō** 242  
**tribuō** 249, co. 477  
**trīnī** 124, 125  
**trīstis, co.** 503  
*trouble* 243, 248, 254  
**trūdō** 243  
*trust* 220, 244  
*try* 270, co. 646  
**tueor** 266, co. 486  
**tum** 180; **tum - tum** 331  
**tunc** 180  
**turn** 248  
**turpis** 587  
**tūtus, co.** 487  
**twist** 237

## U.

**ubi (adv.)** 178; *w. gen.* 444  
**ubi (conj.)** 602, 610, 622, 673, 676, 726  
**ubi primum** 602  
**ubicumque** 178  
**ubique** 178  
 - **ubus** instead of - **ibus** 65  
**uleīscor** 269, co. 419  
**ūllus** 161, 169  
**ultrā** 316; *as adv.* 324; co. 515 n.  
*unbecoming, be u.* 273  
**uncover** 260  
**unde** 178, 676  
**undecumque** 178  
**undergo** 293  
**undertake, co.** 583

undique 178  
 ungō, unguō 250  
 ūni 124, 125  
*unlearn* 256  
 unquam 180  
**ūnus** 116, 119 n.; decl. 169;  
 – as appos. 403;  
 – w. ex, dē 447;  
 – w. cl. of charact. 677  
 ūnusquisque 165  
 urbs, *position* 405  
*urge* 237, co. 697  
 urgeō 237  
*use* 236, 237; *use up* 267  
*useful, be u.* 274, 280  
 usquam 178  
 ūsque eō, 705  
**ut** (*adv.*) 182, 410  
**ut** (*conj.*) *in cl. of purpose* 586, 695, 697;  
 – *in cl. of result* 604, 704, 705;  
 – = *as soon as* 602, 622;  
 – *in questions and exclam.* 662 n.;  
 – *in relat. cl.* 673, 678;  
 – *in cl. of fear* 701  
 – *in other cl.* 726, 728, 732, 734  
 – *omitted* 705 n.  
 ut nōn 695  
 ut primum 202  
 ut quisque 683  
 uter 153, 169, 171, 172, 173  
 uterlibet 168  
 uterque 153, 166, 167, 172, 173  
 – w. *gen.* 446  
 utervis 168  
 ūtilis, co. 483, 587  
 utinam 659; quod utinam 690  
 ūtor 267, 620 n., co. 504, 580  
 utpote cum 715  
 utrum – an 637, 649  
 utut, *howsoever*, co. 629

## V.

vacō, co. 486  
 vacuēfāciō 254  
 vacuus, co. 487

vādō 243  
 vae 334, co. 432 n.  
 valde 105  
 valē 277  
 valeō 236, co. 543  
*value little* 243  
 vanish 258  
 vās 79  
 – ve 9, 327  
 vehō 243, co. 502  
 vel = *perhaps* 105  
 = *or* 327; vel – vel 331  
 velim, vellem 656, 659  
 vellō 248  
 velut sī 731  
 vēndō 292, co. 458  
 vēneō 224, 292  
 veniō 263, co. 478, 585  
 venit in mentem 451  
 venture 220  
**verbs** 184 sqq.  
 – *impersonal v.* 271 sqq.  
 – *defective v.* 277;  
 – *syntax* 360 sqq.  
 – *transitive v.* 360 sqq.  
 – *intrans. v.* 361 sqq.  
 – *v. of motion* 460 n., 585  
 – *noun forms* 538 sqq.  
 – *tenses* 539 sqq., 589 sqq.  
 – *v. of saying and perceiving* 547 sqq., 669  
 vērē 110  
**vereor** 266, 620 n., co. 543, 701  
 vergo 248  
 vērō 110, 328, 636  
 versor 265  
 vertō 248, co. 477  
 vērum, v. enim vērō 328  
**very** 87, 105, 111  
 vēscor 269, co. 504, 580  
 vesper 78  
**vetō** 232, co. 549, 560, 561  
 rex 236  
**videō** 239, co. 547, 570  
 videor, co. 387, 561  
 view 248

*vigēō* 236  
*vigorous, be v.* 236  
*vinciō* 261  
*vincō* 247, co. 502  
*- viri*, co. 582  
*vīs* 76  
*visit* 248  
*vīsō* 248  
*vīsū* 587  
*vīvō* 250  
*vix* 724  
**vocative** 19, 35  
*vocō*, co. 428  
*volō* 288, 289, 543, 550, 553, 571,  
 619 n.  
*volvō* 249  
*vomō* 242  
*vouch for* 233  
*oveō* 239  
*row* 239  
*vowels, quantity of*, 784 sqq.

## W.

*wage war* 243  
*wait* 270, co. 646  
*want* 288  
*ward off* 248  
*warm, be w.* 236

*wash* 234; *w. off* 249  
*waste* 242  
*we (indef. subj.)* 384  
*weave* 242  
*weep* 235  
*weigh* 244  
*welcome* 277  
**what - clauses** 644  
**when ?** 534 sqq.  
**whence ?** 524, 525  
**where ?** 518, 525, 528  
**which - clauses** 644  
**whither ?** 527, 528  
**who - clauses** 644  
*will* 288, co. 543  
*wipe off* 237  
*wise, be w.* 251  
*wish* 288  
*withdraw* 243  
**within what time ?** 534  
**without** 572, 714; *be w.* 236  
*wont, be w.* 220  
**word - order** 771 sqq.  
*word questions* 633, 642 sqq.  
*world (indef. subj.)* 384  
*worth, co.* 457  
*would* 595, 627  
*wrap about* 264  
*write* 243, co. 521

# CORRIGENDA

PAGE	LINE	READ	INSTEAD OF
2	2	from below	is
3	2	" above	words
4	6	" "	but both
16	2	" below	lāc
17	14	" above	home
17	24	" "	lāc
27	18	" "	luxuria = lūxuriēs... luxuria = luxurēis
27	14	" below	fīliābus
31	8	" above	from
47	7	" below	amicus
59	15	" "	quandōcumque
74	18	" above	had heard
80	15	" "	mereor
84	16	" below	coercere
85	14	" "	(acc.)
89	10	" "	educare
89	6	" above	of
108	15	" "	participial,
140	1	" below	furtim
169	6	" above	subject
185	7	" "	sēiungō
191	14-15	" "	stipātus
201	1	" "	comitiis
231	2	" below	narrativum
236	15	" "	negaverit
261	9	" above	:
261	10	" "	:
267	11	" "	interdicere
285	15	" "	classes
298	8	" below	utrique
IV Index	13	" "	attain 269, co. 707 attain 269, 697; co. 707

Other mistakes will be easily corrected by the reader.





AUG 5 1908



